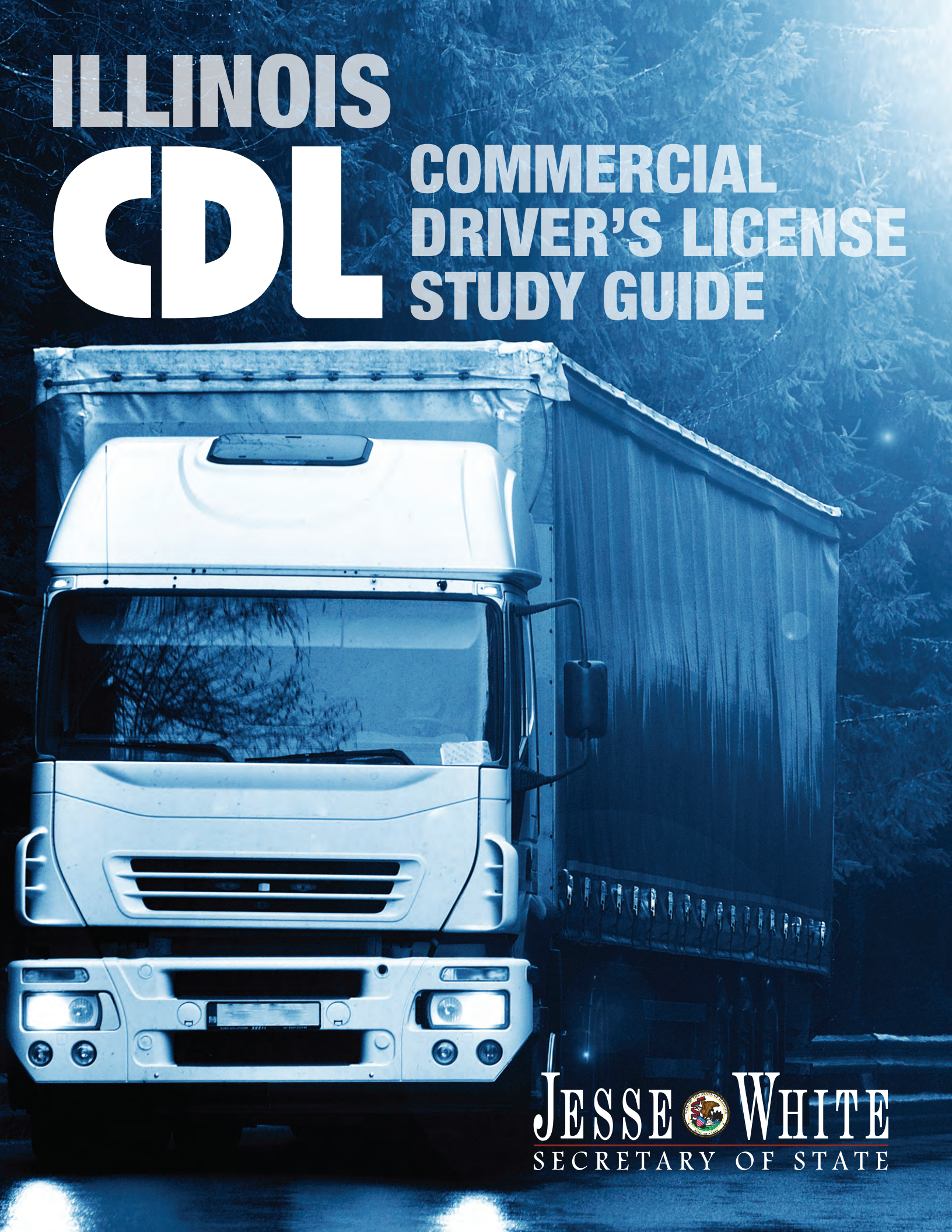
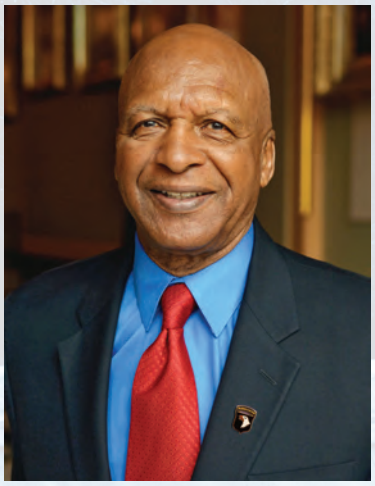
ILLINOIS CDL

COMMERCIAL DRIVER'S LICENSE STUDY GUIDE



JESSE WHITE
SECRETARY OF STATE



The commercial motor vehicle industry is the backbone of our transportation system to ensuring goods are transported throughout Illinois and the entire country. Truck drivers are integral to the process and growth of our state's economy.

Illinois' Commercial Driver's License (CDL) program is credited as one of the best in the nation by the U.S. Department of Transportation. The CDL program, including Commercial Learner's Permits (CLP), has been overhauled during my administration to ensure that truck drivers licensed in Illinois are held to the highest possible standards. Federal laws require any person applying for a CLP/CDL or current CDL holders to certify his/her commercial driving medical status. All CLP/CDL holders who operate in non-excepted interstate commerce are also required to keep a current DOT medical certificate on file with the Secretary of State's office. The law strengthens the CDL program by requiring truckers meet minimum health and safety standards before getting behind the wheel. For details on CDL/CLP medical certification, see Section 15.

This year, my office initiated a law allowing for an exemption from the CDL written knowledge test for qualified current or former military personnel who participated in military heavy-vehicle programs. I am pleased to help make it easier for our military veterans to find employment based on their previous military driving service.

CDL applicants may schedule pre-trip, skills and on-road exams online at www.cyberdriveillinois.com. The Illinois Fast Pass program allows residents to schedule appointments online in minutes for CDL testing purposes at the CDL facility of their choice. Illinois Fast Pass can be accessed 24 hours a day, seven days a week and makes scheduling CDL appointments quick and convenient. CDL applicants may also schedule appointments by calling 217-785-3013 from 8 a.m. to 4:30 p.m., Monday-Friday.

I encourage you to study this CDL Study Guide thoroughly prior to scheduling and taking the required exams. My goal as Secretary of State is to ensure that our roads are the safest and that we license safe, qualified drivers to operate commercial vehicles in the state of Illinois.

Sincerely,

Jesse White

Jesse White
Secretary of State

ILLINOIS CDL/CLP GUIDE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Section 1:	Introduction to Illinois' CDL	2-18
Section 2:	Driving Safely	19-63
Section 3:	Transporting Cargo Safely	64-67
Section 4:	Transporting Passengers Safely	68-71
Section 5:	Air Brakes	72-81
Section 6:	Combination Vehicles	82-93
Section 7:	Doubles and Triples	94-98
Section 8:	Tank Vehicles	99-101
Section 9:	Hazardous Materials	102-124
Section 10:	School Bus	125-138
Section 11:	Charter Bus	139
Section 12:	Pre-Trip Vehicle Inspection Test	140-149
Section 13:	Basic Vehicle Control Skills Test	150-152
Section 14:	On-Road Driving Test	153-157
Section 15:	Special CDL/CLP Information & Programs	158-170

Printed by authority of the State of Illinois. April 2019 — 1 — DSD CDL 10.21

SECTION 1
INTRODUCTION TO ILLINOIS' CDL

This Section Covers:

- Commercial Motor Vehicle (CMV)
- CDL/CLP Classifications, Endorsements and Restrictions
- CDL/CLP Standards and Requirements
- Commercial Driver's License Tests
- CDL/CLP Disqualifications
- Other CDL/CLP Rules
- Mechanical Safety Tests
- Electronic Devices
- Vehicle Size Limitations
- Special Lighting Equipment
- Vehicle Registration
- IRP/International Fuel Tax Agreement

Illinois' Commercial Driver's License (CDL) program is designed to improve safety on our roads by meeting federal requirements for testing and licensing commercial drivers. On October 26, 1986, Congress passed the Commercial Motor Vehicle Safety Act of 1986. This law sets minimum standards for the licensing of drivers of commercial motor vehicles (CMV).

To obtain a CDL, you must pass all necessary knowledge and skills tests. This manual will help you pass the tests; however, it is not a substitute for a truck driver training class or program. Formal training is the most reliable way to learn the many special skills required for safely driving a large commercial vehicle and becoming a professional driver in the trucking industry.

1.1 — Commercial Motor Vehicle (CMV)

A driver must obtain a Commercial Driver's License (CDL) to operate any of the following CMVs (unless he/she is driving these vehicles for exempted uses as noted in Subsection 1.1.2 below):

- Any combination of vehicles with a gross combination weight rating (GCWR)** of 26,001 or more pounds, provided the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR)* of the vehicle being towed is in excess of 10,000 pounds.
- Any single vehicle with a GVWR of 26,001 or more pounds or any such vehicle towing another not in excess of 10,000 pounds.

- Any vehicle, regardless of size, designed to transport 16 or more persons, including the driver.
- Any vehicle required by federal regulations to be placarded while transporting hazardous materials.

***GVWR —** Value specified by the manufacturer as the maximum loaded weight of a single vehicle or combination of vehicles.
****GCWR —** Value specified by the manufacturer as the GVWR of the power unit plus the GVWR of the towed unit or units.

Note: For testing purposes only, the GCWR/GVWR means the value specified by the manufacturer as the maximum loaded weight of a single vehicle or combination of vehicles. The GVWR/GCWR tags must be present and legible on the pulling unit (truck) and the trailer (if combination testing). For the skills/drive testing, a proper class representative vehicle is required. Truck-tractors of a tractor and trailer combination are not allowed for Class B testing. When appearing for the skills/drive testing, please bring all documentation for the vehicle, such as the insurance card/certificate and registration documents, into the facility.

1.1.2 — *Exemptions*

Under state and federal law, certain drivers are not subject to the requirements of the CDL program. The Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration has determined that these exemptions will not diminish the safe operation of commercial vehicles on the highways. However, these drivers are still required to possess the proper class license for the vehicle they are operating.

Drivers of the following vehicles are exempt from the CDL requirement:

- **Farm Vehicle/Equipment**. This exemption covers farming operations (as noted below) and does not apply to commercial grain haulers or other types of non-farm use. This exemption only applies when farm vehicles are:
  — Controlled and operated by a farmer, the farmer's family or an employee;
  — Used to transport farm products, equipment or supplies to or from a farm (including nurseries and aquacultures);
  — Used within 150 air miles of the farm; and
  — Not used in the operations of a common or contract carrier or for other commercial purposes.

Note: Operators of Class A, truck-tractor and semi-trailer combination vehicles used expressly for farming purposes and who meet the above criteria are also exempted from holding a CDL. These drivers must still possess a Class A non-CDL with the a J50 or J51 restriction. Drivers must be of qualifying age and must be qualified as a Farm Vehicle Driver (FVD) or the vehicle(s) must meet the Covered Farm Vehicle (CFV) designation. Drivers are still required to take the appropriate CDL written and skills/drive testing. For more information and definition, visit the Cyberdriveillinois.com, Commercial section.

- **Emergency Equipment/Vehicle**. Because most emergency organizations have extensive initial training and retraining requirements for their equipment operators, Illinois waives CDL requirements for operators of emergency equipment vehicles when responding to or returning from an emergency necessary to preserve life and property.
- **Military Vehicle**. Military vehicles operated by active duty military personnel.
- **Recreational Vehicle**. Recreational vehicles operated primarily for personal use.

1.1.3 — *Special Requirements for Certain Vehicles*

To operate the following vehicles, a driver must meet special requirements established by the Illinois Secretary of State and/or other governmental agencies:

- School buses and other vehicles transporting school children for curriculum-related activities: Requires an Illinois School Bus Permit (SBP) and may require a CDL with P and S endorsements. Contact the local school district/bus company for which you plan to drive.
- Religious organization vehicles: Requires a J02, J03 or J04 restriction.
- Vehicles exclusively for transporting senior citizens: Requires a J05, J06 or J07 restriction.
- Non-profit ride sharing or child care vehicles.

These vehicles may or may not require a CDL, depending on the number of passengers the vehicle is designed to transport or the GVWR of the vehicle. For more information on operating these types of vehicles, drivers should check with their employer, a local Driver Services facility or call the Safe Ride Section at 217-785-2543.

1.2 — Commercial Driver's License (CDL) and Commercial Learner's Permit (CLP) Classifications, Endorsements and Restrictions

CDL and CLP classifications, endorsements and restrictions are based on the type of CMV driven. The type of CMV is determined by the manufacturer's GVWR/GCWR, construction or use.

1.2.1 — *Driver's License Classifications (CDL and NON-CDL)*

- **Class A** — Combination vehicles with a GCWR** of 26,001 or more pounds, provided the GVWR* of the vehicle being towed is in excess of 10,000 pounds.
- **Class B** — Single vehicle with a GVWR* of 26,001 or more pounds or any such vehicle towing another not in excess of 10,000 pounds.
- **Class C** — Single vehicle with a GVWR* of at least 16,001 pounds but less than 26,001 pounds.
- **Class D** — Single vehicle with a GVWR* of less than 16,001 pounds.

GCWR** — Gross Combination Weight Rating
GVWR* — Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

1.2.2 — *CLP and CDL Endorsements*

- **P** — Passenger Vehicles: CLP & CDL.
- **N** — Tank Vehicles: CLP & CDL.
- **S** — School Bus: CLP & CDL.
- **H** — Hazardous Materials: CDL only.
- **X** — Combined Hazardous Materials & Tank Vehicle: CDL only.
- **T** — Double & Triple Trailers: CDL Class A only.
- **C** — Charter Bus: Illinois CDL only.

1.2.3 — *CLP and CDL Type Restrictions*

- **B** — Corrective lenses required (CLP & CDL).
- **E** — Automatic Transmission only in CDL/CMV (CDL only).
- **F** — Outside Mirrors and/or hearing aid (CLP & CDL).
- **K** — CDL Intrastate Only (CLP & CDL).
- **L** — Air Brakes not allowed (CLP & CDL).
- **M** — Class B or C Passenger vehicles only (CDL only).
- **N** — Class C Passenger vehicles only (CDL only).
- **O** — No Tractor Trailer CDL/CMV (CDL only).
- **P** — No Passengers in CDL/CMV bus (CLP only).
- **V** — FMCSA (federal) medical variance (CLP & CDL).
- **X** — No cargo in a CDL/CMV Tank vehicle (CLP only).
- **Z** — No full Air Brakes equipped CDL/CMV vehicles (CDL only).
- **J10** — CDL vehicles with GVWR 16,000 lbs or less (Illinois Class C CDL only).
- **J50/J51** — Farm waived truck tractor-semi trailer vehicles (visit cyberdriveillinois.com for definition and eligibility – Illinois Non-CDL Class A only).

A driver's DL, CLP or CDL may contain other restrictions not listed above based on specific conditions for each driver.

1.3 — CDL and CLP Standards and Requirements

To get an Illinois CDL or CLP, you must comply with the following standards and requirements.

1.3.1 — *Documentation Required for a CLP/CDL*

As is required for any driver's license, all new or transferring CDL applicants are required to show documentation verifying their identity, date of birth, Illinois residency, signature and Social Security number. For the most up-to-date list of acceptable documents, please visit www.cyberdriveillinois.com.

Effective July 1, 2015, federal law requires all new CDL and CLP applicants to provide proof of citizenship or lawful presence. Existing CDL holders wishing to renew or upgrade their CDL will also be required to provide proof of citizenship or lawful presence to the driver facility staff to be able to renew or upgrade. Refer to the above website for acceptable citizenship (certified birth certificate or valid passport) and lawful presence documents.

1.3.2 — *CDL/CMV Medical Program Requirements*

Most operators of commercial vehicles with a gross motor vehicle weight of 10,001 pounds or more are required to carry a Medical Examiner's Certificate at all times while operating a second division vehicle. All non-excepted interstate drivers are required to submit their medical examiner's certificate to the Secretary of State. For additional medical examiner reporting requirements and information, please refer to Section 15.

Do I Need a DOT Medical Card?

Yes, if you are a non-excepted driver who will:

- Operate a commercial vehicle with a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) or a gross combination weight rating (GCWR) of 10,001 pounds or more in the furtherance of a commercial enterprise (private or for hire).
- Operate a passenger carrying vehicle designed to transport eight or more passengers, including the driver.
- Operate any vehicle transporting hazardous materials of a quantity that would require placarding.

CDL Medical Certification
Initial medical certification with the Secretary of State's office can only be processed at one of the 47 CDL Driver Services facilities (see Pages 8 and 9). After your original certification in person, you may visit any Driver Services facility to obtain a duplicate/corrected CDL or renew your license when only a vision test is required.

If you are a non-excepted interstate (NI) driver, upon expiration of your current medical examiner's certificate, you must present an updated certificate at a CDL facility or mail it to the CDL Medical Unit in Springfield. A reminder letter is sent to all NI drivers 90 days prior to the expiration of the current medical examiner's certificate. If the certificate is presented to a CDL facility, your medical status will be updated immediately. If mailing the new certificate, please do so 30 days prior to the expiration of your current certificate. If you allow your medical examiner's certificate to expire and have not changed your medical certification category status with the Secretary of State, your CDL driving privileges will be canceled. If you have any questions involving the CDL Medical Program, please call 217-785-3002.

The Secretary of State's office is not responsible for regulating or enforcing these federal or state medical program regulations (other than recording the self-certification of CLP/CDL holders and the medical information for NI drivers) and may not have the forms necessary for compliance with these regulations. Enforcement is the responsibility of the Illinois State Police and/or IDOT.

All required medical forms and informational material are available at cyberdriveillinois.com or FMCSA.gov or the following organizations:

J.J. Keller & Associates, Inc.
3003 W. Breezewood
Neenah, WI 54956
800-327-6868

Mid-West Truckers Association
2727 N. Dirksen Pkwy.
Springfield, IL 62702
217-525-0310

Illinois Trucking Association
932 S. Spring St.
Springfield, IL 62704
217-789-6017

Illinois Trucking Association
7000 S. Adams, Ste. 130
Willowbrook, IL 60527
630-654-0884

1.3.3 — *Additional Requirements*
In addition, commercial vehicle drivers must:

- Maintain and have in their possession a file that contains their written exam verification, driving exam verification and other records.
- Be at least age 21 to drive a commercial motor vehicle involved in interstate commerce or transport passengers.
- Be at least age 18 to obtain a CLP/CDL and/or to transport hazardous materials intrastate (within Illinois only).
- Certify that they do not have more than one driver's license and that their driving privileges are not suspended, revoked, canceled or disqualified.
- Certify that they meet the medical requirements of the Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations or that they are not subject to the regulations.

For more information regarding the Motor Carrier Safety Regulations, see Table C in Section 15, visit fmcsa.dot.gov or contact:

Illinois Department of Transportation
Commercial Vehicle Safety Section
Motor Carrier Safety Unit
3215 Executive Park Dr.
Springfield, IL 62703
217-785-1181

1.3.4 — *CDL Transfer and CLP Requirements*

- CDL applicants who transfer their CDL to Illinois from another state must pass all applicable CDL knowledge and skills/drive tests to obtain an Illinois CDL and any endorsements, regardless if they held an Illinois CDL previously.
- An initial Commercial Learner's Permit (CLP) must be held for at least 14 days before skills/drive testing can be conducted. Any changes to the initial CLP will require a new 14-day waiting period.
- A CLP issued to an applicant to upgrade to a higher class CDL, remove the air brakes restriction, or add a passenger endorsement or a School Bus endorsement must be held for at least 14 days before the skills/drive testing can be conducted.
- A CLP expires 180 days from the date of initial issuance or renewal. A CLP can be renewed for an additional 180 days without additional written testing if renewed within five calendar days from the date of expiration. A CLP can be renewed up to 30 days in advance of expiration for an additional 180 days. All CLP renewals will require the full CLP fee.
- Upon renewal of a CLP, any completed skills/drive testing must be re-taken.
- A CLP may not be renewed a second time. An applicant who wishes to retain a CLP more than 360 days after initial issuance is required to pay a new CLP fee and complete all applicable testing.

1.3.5 — *MCSIA Rule*

All CDL holders are required by federal law to submit to a one-time 10-year driving history check on renewal or surrender of an out-of-state license to obtain an Illinois CDL. CDL holders applying for a corrected or duplicate license also are required to submit to a one-time 10-year driving history check.

1.3.6 — *CDL/CLP Fees*

- **The renewal and out-of-state transfer fee (18-69 years of age) for a CDL is $60.** This includes $10 for the basic driver's license, $24 for the CDL, $6 to cover the cost of the nationwide CDLIS program and $20 for the Motor Carrier Safety Inspection Fund. After age 69, CDL holder renewal fees decrease due the driver's age.
- **The fee for a CLP is $50** for all non-CDL license holders or to renew an initial CLP.
- **The fee to upgrade an existing CLP/CDL class or to add/remove any endorsement/restriction is $5.**

1.4 — Commercial Driver's License Tests

1.4.1 — *Computerized Written Knowledge Testing*

You will have to take one or more computerized knowledge tests, depending on the class of license and endorsements you want. Figure 1.2 shows the sections of this manual you should study for each class of license and each endorsement.

WHAT SECTIONS SHOULD YOU STUDY?

Section to Study	License Type			Endorsement					
	Class A	Class B	Class C	Hazardous Materials	Double Triple	Tank Vehicles	Passenger	School Bus	Charter Bus
1	✓	✓	✓						
2	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
3	✓	✓	✓						
4							✓	✓	✓
5*	✓	✓	✓		✓				
6	✓				✓	✓			
7					✓				
8						✓			
9**				✓					
10								✓	
11									✓
12	✓	✓	✓				✓	✓	
13	✓	✓	✓				✓	✓	
14	✓	✓	✓				✓	✓	

Figure 1.2

**Study Section 5 if you plan to operate vehicles equipped with air brakes.*

***TSA Hazardous Material Endorsement approval is also required prior to testing.*

All CDL applicants are required to pass the general CDL (core) knowledge written test, with a minimum score of 80 percent. This exam consists of 30 standardized multiple-choice questions. Written knowledge tests are valid for the maximum of one year.

Additional knowledge and endorsement exams include:

- **Combination:** Required for applicants to operate a Class A combination/articulated vehicle (20 questions).
- **Air Brakes:** Required for applicants to operate a vehicle equipped with a full or partial air brakes (air-over-hydraulic) system (25 questions).
- **Passenger endorsement (P):** Required for applicants to operate a vehicle that is designed to transport 16 people or more (20 questions).
- **Tank Vehicle endorsement (N):** Required for applicants to operate any commercial motor vehicle that is designed to transport any liquid or gaseous material within a tank(s) that is/are either permanently or temporarily attached to the vehicle or the chassis, where each tank has a individual rating capacity in excess of 119 gallons, and where all tanks have an aggregate total of 1,000 gallons or more (20 questions).
- **School Bus endorsement (S):** Required for applicants to operate a yellow school bus in any state to transport school children grades 12 and under in any state for school-sponsored activities (20 questions). Note: This test is also required for a driver to obtain a School Bus Permit (SBP), which is required for a driver to operate any vehicle on behalf of a school transporting Illinois school children grades 12 and under for curriculum-related activities. If the driver requires both the S endorsement and the SBP, then only one school bus knowledge test will be required. Note: Neither the S endorsement nor the SBP is required to operate an empty yellow school bus, but a P endorsement is required for any bus designed to transport 16 or more people.
- **Hazardous Materials endorsement (H):** Required for applicants to operate a vehicle transporting hazardous materials requiring placards, as defined in 49 CFR 383.5 (30 questions). Prior to this test, the applicant must submit to a Transportation Security Administration (TSA) background check (separate/additional fee required) and receive an approval letter. For more information, contact 855-DHS-UES1 (855-347-8371) or visit https://universalenroll.dhs.gov/#hme-home.
- **Doubles/Triples endorsement (T):** Required for drivers to operate a vehicle pulling double or triple trailers (20 questions).
- **Charter Bus endorsement (C):** Required for Illinois applicants to operate a charter-type bus when transporting school children grades 12 and under on behalf of an Illinois school district for school activities of any type. If the driver already holds both an S endorsement and an SBP for the same class as the charter bus, no C endorsement is required (20 questions).

1.4.2 — *Skills/Drive Testing*

After successfully passing the required written test(s), most applicants will be required to pass the skills/drive testing. There are three general skills that will be tested: pre-trip vehicle inspection, basic vehicle control and on-road driving. An applicant who has successfully passed one part but then fails a subsequent part is not required to retake the part passed. For example, a driver who successfully completes the pre-trip inspection, but then fails the basic control skills is not required to retake the pre-trip inspection. If applicants fail a part of the skills/drive testing (ex: pre-trip inspection), they must perform the entire pre-trip inspection during their next exam.

1) The pre-trip inspection test is conducted to determine whether the applicant knows how to properly inspect the vehicle to determine if it is safe to drive. Applicants will be asked to conduct a pre-trip inspection of a representative vehicle they will operate on the job. The examiner will inquire about a certain area on the vehicle(s), and the applicant must explain what is to be inspected and why. Applicants will be scored section by section of the vehicle, and an applicant who accumulates a predetermined amount of points for a particular section will fail the pre-trip inspection. Applicants will not be tested on any component or area that is not present on the vehicle used for the test nor will they be required to get under the vehicle to examine any components; however, they must point out these components and explain why it is necessary to inspect those components. If a component of the vehicle examined during the pre-trip inspection fails to work properly through no fault of the applicant, the test may be discontinued, but the vehicle component failure will not be scored against the applicant. If the driver will be operating a vehicle with air brakes while on the job, the test vehicle must be equipped with air brakes. See Sections 2.1 and 12 of this study guide for additional information regarding the pre-trip inspection.

2) The basic vehicle control skills test is conducted to evaluate an applicant's ability to use basic skills to control the vehicle. All applicants must complete three exercises on the facility course/road marked by lines, traffic cones or similar boundaries. These exercises test the applicant's ability to move the vehicle forward, park the vehicle, move backward and reverse dock the vehicle. Applicants are scored on how well they stay within the boundaries outlined by the examiner, how many pull-ups and looks are used and how well they maneuver the vehicle into its final position. Applicants should avoid contact with any cones or boundary lines and should not cause a dangerous action within the testing area or exceed the accumulated overall point limit.

3) The on-road driving test is conducted to evaluate the applicant's ability to drive safely in a variety of on-road situations. The road test route will include left and right turns, intersections, railway crossings, curves, upgrades, downgrades, rural or semi-rural routes, multilane city streets and/or expressway driving. Applicants will be scored on each of these driving maneuvers and conditions and must not exceed a predetermined number of points assigned to the driving exam, cause any dangerous action or violate any laws during the exam. Any driver who fails the road test six times will be required to submit an Illinois medical report before attempting any additional road exams.

Three-time Fail Rule. CDL applicants who fail any particular CDL test three times are required to wait 30 days from the date of the third failed test before taking the particular test again. Three additional failures (six total failures) of the same exam will result in a 90-day waiting period. Three more additional failures (nine total failures) of the same test after the 90-day waiting period will result in a one-year waiting period from the date of the last failed test. The waiting periods apply only to the particular exam failed three times. Applicants are allowed three attempts to pass each required exam per fee paid. If an applicant fails any particular test three times, the original fee paid to start the testing will be required to be repaid to resume testing if the applicant needs to pass the failed test to have the CDL issued.

Cheating/Unauthorized Items in the Testing Area/Bribery. Any person found cheating on any portion of a written exam will be given an automatic fail for that exam. In addition, the person will be prohibited from retaking the particular test for a period of 30 days. "Cheating" is defined as receiving or using unauthorized assistance in the taking of any portion of a test, including, but not limited to, the use of technology, notes, books or written information.

Cellphones or other electronic devices are not permitted to be powered on nor are any written items to be present within the testing area. Anyone who does not adhere to this testing policy will be considered attempting to utilize unauthorized assistance, and the penalties will apply.

Any person convicted of offering a bribe to any examiner or anyone authorized by law to provide driving instructions or administer driver's license exams may have his/her driving privileges suspended or withheld for 120 days. The offense is a Class 2 felony, which carries a three- to seven-year prison sentence and fines of up to $25,000.

1.4.3 — *Illinois Fast Pass*

Applicants can schedule CDL exams online 24 hours a day, seven days a week at www.cyberdriveillinois.com. Applicants who need to cancel a CDL appointment are asked to provide a 24-hour notice by calling 217-785-3013.

1.4.4 — *Secretary of State CDL Facilities*

Written/knowledge and skills/drive testing are available at the following facilities:

Bradley
1111 Blatt St.
Bradley, IL 60915
815-933-1713

Charleston
1010 E. St.
Charleston, IL 61920
217-345-7401

Danville/Tilton*
#5 Southgate
Tilton, IL 61833
217-442-1564

DeKalb
1360 Oakwood St.
DeKalb, IL 60115
815-756-7781

East St. Louis
8750 Church Ln.
East St. Louis, IL 62203
618-397-9488

Elk Grove Village
650 Roppolo Dr.
Elk Grove Village, IL 60007
847-981-7447

Marion
1905 Rendleman St.
Marion, IL 62959
618-993-2587

Moline/Silvis
2001 Fifth St., Ste. #10
Silvis, IL 61282
309-796-0934

Olney
1302 S. West St.
Olney, IL 62450
618-395-1702

Peoria
3311 N. Sterling Ave., #12
Peoria, IL 61604
309-686-6040

Princeton*
225 Backbone Rd. East
Princeton, IL 61356
815-875-2617

Quincy
2512 Locust St.
Quincy, IL 62301
217-222-4550

Rantoul
421 S. Murray Rd.
Rantoul, IL 61866
217-892-8773

Salem
1375 W. Whittaker St.
Salem, IL 62881
618-548-2381

Springfield
2701 S. Dirksen Pkwy.
Springfield, IL 62723
217-782-6030

Rockford
4734 Baxter Rd.
Rockford, IL 61109
815-873-0134

South Holland
41 W. 162nd St.
South Holland, IL 60473
708-210-3540

West Chicago
1280 Powis Rd.
West Chicago, IL 60185
630-293-1191

* Class B and C CDL drives only.

Written/knowledge testing is available at the following facilities:

Belleville
400 W. Main St.
Belleville, IL 62220
618-236-8450

Bethalto
20 Terminal Dr., Ste #103
East Alton, IL 62024
618-258-0600

Bloomington
1510 W. Market St.
Bloomington, IL 61701
309-827-3531

Carbondale
2516 W. Murphysboro Rd.
Carbondale, IL 62901
618-457-0488

Carmi
1128 W. Oak St.
Carmi, IL 62821
618-383-8349

Champaign
2012 Round Barn Rd.
Champaign, IL 61821
217-278-3344

Decatur
3149 N. Woodford St.
Decatur, IL 62526
217-875-1650

Edwardsville
1502A Troy Rd.
Edwardsville, IL 62025
618-656-8956

Effingham
444 S. Willow St.
Effingham, IL 62401
217-347-7728

Fairfield
307 N. Market Ave.
Fairfield, IL 62837
618-842-9548

Freeport
1054 N. Riverside Dr., Ste. C
Freeport, IL 61032
815-235-4164

Galesburg
1066 E. Losey St.
Galesburg, IL 61401
309-342-1154

Hillsboro
2010 School St.
Hillsboro, IL 62049
217-532-5823

Jacksonville
901 W. Morton, Ste. 13
Lincoln Square Shopping Center
Jacksonville, IL 62650
217-243-4327

Jerseyville
710 County Rd.
Jerseyville, IL 62052
618-498-5751

Lake Zurich
951 S. Rand Rd.
Lake Zurich, IL 60047
847-847-0247

Macomb
466 Deer Rd.
Macomb, IL 61455
309-833-5661

Mattoon
2020 Charleston Ave.
Mattoon, IL 61938
217-234-4040

Metropolis
1112 W. 10th St.
Metropolis, IL 62960
318-524-7451

Morris
425 E. Route 6
Morris, IL 60450
815-705-9022

Nashville
480 N. Kaskaskia St.
Nashville, IL 62263
618-327-4184

Pekin
200 S. Second St.
Pekin, IL 61554
309-346-6186

Plano
230 Mitchell Dr.
Plano, IL 60545
312-793-1010

Pontiac
507 Crane St.
Pontiac, IL 61764
815-844-5766

Roanoke
106 W. Broad St.
Roanoke, IL 61561
309-923-6381

Robinson
1411 E. Main St.
Robinson, IL 62454
618-544-8118

Rockford Central
3720 E. State St.
Rockford, IL 61108
815-394-0179

Sparta
202 W. Jackson St.
Sparta, IL 62286
618-443-3834

Springfield – Klein & Mason
316 N. Klein St.
Springfield, IL 62702
217-782-4850

Sterling
1224 W. 4th St.
Sterling, IL 61081
815-626-2825

1.5 — CDL/CLP Disqualifications

You may not drive a commercial motor vehicle if you are disqualified for any reason.

1.5.1 — *Alcohol/Drug Regulations and Disqualifications*

Illinois law provides that drivers operating a commercial motor vehicle (CMV) or a non-commercial motor vehicle (non-CMV) on highways have impliedly consented to submit to chemical tests to determine blood-alcohol concentration (BAC). A school bus driver may not operate a school bus with a BAC of more than .00 percent. A CDL holder may not operate a commercial vehicle with a BAC of .04 percent or more. A school bus driver or a CDL holder may not drive any other vehicle with a BAC of .08 percent or more. The following offenses will lead to disqualification:

- Any driver operating a CMV or non-CMV who refuses to submit to chemical testing or submits to a test with results in excess of the legal limit is disqualified for a minimum of 12 months.
- Any driver convicted of DUI (regardless of BAC) is disqualified for a minimum of 12 months.

- If either violation directly above takes place while transporting placarded hazardous materials, the driver is disqualified for a minimum of three years.
- Any driver who commits two of the above violations, arising from two or more incidents, is disqualified for life.
- Any CDL holder operating a CMV who is found to have any alcohol in his/her system is placed out of service for a minimum of 24 hours.
- Any driver convicted of driving a commercial motor vehicle with any amount of drug, substance or compound resulting from unlawful use or consumption of cannabis (marijuana) listed in the Cannabis Control Act or controlled substance listed in the Controlled Substance Act is disqualified for a minimum of 12 months.

1.5.2 — *Additional Offenses Leading to Disqualification*

The following offenses will also lead to CDL/CLP disqualification:

- Knowingly and willfully leaving the scene of an accident while operating a CMV or non-CMV results in disqualification for a minimum of 12 months.
- Committing a felony while operating a CMV or non-CMV results in disqualification for a minimum of 12 months.
- A conviction for either offense above while carrying placarded hazardous materials results in disqualification for a minimum of three years.
- The use of a CMV or non-CMV in the commission of any felony involving manufacturing, distributing or dispensing a controlled substance, or possession with intent to manufacture, distribute or disperse a controlled substance results in a lifetime disqualification.
- Any driver providing fraudulent documentation for the issuance of a CLP or a CDL will lead to disqualification.
- Operating a commercial motor vehicle in violation of regulations pertaining to railroad-highway grade crossings: first conviction — 60-day disqualification; second conviction within a three-year period —120-day disqualification; and third and subsequent conviction within a three-year period — one-year disqualification. These violations include violation of a federal, state or local law or regulation pertaining to one of the following six offenses at a railroad-highway grade crossing:
  - — For drivers who are not required to always stop, failing to stop before reaching the crossing if the tracks are not clear.
  - — For drivers who are not required to always stop, failing to slow down and check that the tracks are clear of an approaching train.
  - — For drivers who are always required to stop, failing to stop before driving onto the crossing.
  - — For all drivers failing to have sufficient space to drive completely through the crossing without stopping.
  - — For all drivers failing to obey a traffic control device or the directions of an enforcement official at the crossing.
  - — For all drivers failing to negotiate a crossing because of insufficient undercarriage clearance.

1.5.3 — *Serious Traffic Violations*

Two serious traffic violations within a three-year period will result in a 60-day disqualification. Three serious traffic violations in the same period will result in a 120-day disqualification. These include the following.

Excessive Speeding. Excessive speeding involving any single offense for any speed of 15 mph or more above the posted speed limit.

- Failure to reduce speed to avoid an accident.
- Driving too fast for conditions.
- Exceeding the speed limit in a school zone.

Reckless Driving. Operating a CMV or non-CMV in a manner that exhibits a willful, wanton or reckless disregard of the safety of persons or property.

- Passing a vehicle stopped for a pedestrian in a crosswalk.
- Driving on a sidewalk.
- Passing a school bus receiving or discharging passengers or displaying a warning not to pass.

No Valid CDL. Operating a CMV without a valid CDL.

- Operating a CMV with an improper classification or restriction.
- Violation of a learner's permit.

Following Too Closely. Following the vehicle ahead too closely.

- Failure of a truck to leave sufficient distance for being overtaken by another vehicle.

Improper Lane Usage. Improper or erratic traffic lane changes.

- Improper lane changing, lane usage and/or center lane usage.
- Improper passing.
- Passing on a hill or curve or when prohibited.
- Passing on wrong side of the road.
- Improper passing on shoulder, left or right.
- Driving wrong way on a one-way street or highway.
- Driving on the left side of the roadway.
- Passing in a school zone.

Conviction Involving a Fatal Accident. A violation of any state law or local ordinance relating to motor vehicle traffic control (other than parking violations) arising in connection with a fatal traffic accident will result in a minimum 12-month disqualification.

Multiple Licenses. A violation relating to a CMV driver having multiple driver's licenses.

Cellphone and Communication Device Use. A violation relating to a CMV driver texting or using a hand-held cellphone while driving a CMV.

1.5.4 — *Violation of Out-of-Service Orders*

You will lose your CDL:

- For at least 90 days if you have committed your first violation of an out-of-service order.
- For at least one year if you have committed two violations of an out-of-service order within a 10-year period.
- For at least three years if you have committed three or more violations of an out-of-service order within a 10-year period.

1.5.5 — *Hazardous Materials Endorsement Background Check and Disqualifications*

Applicants who need a hazardous materials endorsement will be required to submit to a fingerprint-based nationwide background check. Applicants will be denied or have the hazardous materials endorsement canceled if they:

- Are not a permanent resident of the United States or are unable to provide proof of lawful status.
- Renounce their United States citizenship.
- Are wanted or under indictment for certain felonies.
- Have a conviction in military or civilian court for certain felonies.
- Have been adjudicated as mentally incompetent or involuntarily committed to a mental institution.
- Are deemed to pose a security threat as determined by the Transportation Security Administration.

Any CDL holder or CLP applicant who wishes to obtain a Hazardous Materials Endorsement (HME/H) must call 855-DHS-UES1 (855-347-8371) or visit https://universalenroll.dhs.gov/#hme-home to enroll with the Transportation Security Administration for a background check. The Secretary of State must receive TSA approval prior to any testing for this endorsement. This process must be completed at every CDL renewal if the driver needs to maintain the Hazardous Materials endorsement.

1.5.6 — *Traffic Violations in a Personal Vehicle*

- The Motor Carrier Safety Improvement Act (MCSIA) of 1999 requires CDL holders to be disqualified from operating a commercial motor vehicle if they have been convicted of certain types of moving violations in their personal vehicle.
- If a CDL holder's privilege to operate a non-CMV is revoked, canceled or suspended due to violations of traffic control laws (other than parking violations), the CDL will also be disqualified.
- If a CDL holder's privilege to operate a non-CMV is revoked, canceled or suspended due to alcohol, controlled substance or felony violations, the CDL will be disqualified for one year. If a CDL holder's privilege to operate a non-CMV is revoked, canceled or suspended due to a second alcohol, controlled substance or felony violation, the CDL will be disqualified for life.

- If a CDL holder's privilege operate a non-CMV is revoked, canceled or suspended, no "hardship" license, such as a restricted driving permit or monitoring device driving permit, may be issued to operate a CMV.

1.6 — Other CDL/CLP Rules

There are other federal and state rules that affect drivers operating CMVs in all states. Among them are:

- Drivers cannot have more than one license. If this rule is broken, a court may impose a fine of up to $5,000 or jail time and keep the home state license and return any others.
- Drivers must notify their employer within 30 days of conviction for any traffic violations (except parking). This is true no matter what type of vehicle was driven.
- Drivers must notify their employer within two business days if their license is suspended, revoked or canceled, or disqualified.
- When applying for a commercial driving job, drivers must provide employer information on all driving jobs held in the past 10 years.
- No one can drive a commercial motor vehicle without a CDL. A court may impose a fine up to $5,000 or jail time for breaking this rule.
- Drivers with a hazardous materials endorsement must notify and surrender their Hazardous Materials endorsement to the state that issued the CDL within 24 hours if they are convicted or indicted in any jurisdiction, civilian or military, or found not guilty by reason of insanity of a disqualifying crime listed in 49 CFR 1572.103; they are adjudicated as mentally incompetent or committed to a mental institution as specified in 49 CFR 1572.109; or they renounce their U.S. citizenship.
- Employers may not let an employee drive a commercial motor vehicle if the employee has more than one license or if the CDL is suspended or revoked. A court may fine the employer up to $5,000 or impose jail time for breaking this rule.
- All states are connected to one computerized system to share information about CDL drivers. The states will check on drivers' accident records to be sure that drivers do not have more than one CDL.
- Drivers must be properly restrained by a safety belt at all times while operating a commercial motor vehicle. The safety belt design holds the driver securely behind the wheel during a crash, helping the driver to control the vehicle, and reduces the chance of serious injury or death. Drivers who do not wear a safety belt are four times more likely to be fatally injured if thrown from the vehicle.
- CDL holders must notify the Secretary of State's office within 10 days of a name/address change and must obtain a corrected driver's license within 30 days of a name/address change.

1.7 — Mechanical Safety Tests

Most second division and medical transport vehicles must have a Certificate of Safety before being driven on Illinois highways. Safety inspections are required every six (6) or twelve (12) months depending on the type of commercial vehicle.

The following vehicles are subject to safety inspection semi-annually:

- Trucks registered with a gross weight of more than 8,000 pounds; trucks that pull a trailer with a gross weight of more than 8,000 pounds; trailers with a gross weight of more than 5,000 pounds; motor buses; and religious organization buses.
- Buses registered as charitable vehicles; senior citizen transport vehicles; school buses; medical transport vehicles; tow trucks; and limousines.

A valid CVSA decal or a Federal annual decal per 49 CFR 396.17 and 49 CFR 396.23 is acceptable in lieu of the Illinois six-month Safety Sticker.

Garages or service stations licensed by IDOT may make safety inspections. Second division vehicles not required to pass safety inspections include:

- Vehicles with a gross weight of 8,000 pounds or less.
- Farm tractors, machinery and other implements.
- Vehicles owned or operated by the city of Chicago, which display proof of ownership.
- Vehicles owned or operated by the federal government, which display proof of ownership.
- Vehicles registered as recreational vehicles, which display proper plates.

- Properly licensed antique vehicles.
- Specialized vehicles as defined by statute.
- Vehicles properly registered in another state.

When a vehicle passes inspection, the driver is issued a Certificate of Safety windshield decal and an inspection report. The decal must be displayed on any vehicle using public roadways.

1.8 — Electronic Devices

1.8.1 — *Cellphone and Communication Devices*

Illinois law prohibits the use of hand-held cellphones, texting or using other communication devices while operating a motor vehicle. Hands-free devices or Bluetooth technology is allowed for persons over age 18. Even using hands-free technology is considered a distraction while driving and can be dangerous. If you must make a phone call, even with hands-free technology, it is recommended that you pull off to the side of the road before making the call. Illinois drivers are exempt from using a cellphone or text messaging while driving only when:

- Reporting an emergency situation.
- Using the device hands-free or in voice-activated mode.
- Parked on the shoulder of a highway.
- Stopped due to normal traffic being obstructed and the vehicle is in neutral or park.

DRIVERS WHO ARE IN A CRASH RESULTING FROM DISTRACTED DRIVING MAY FACE CRIMINAL PENALTIES AND JAIL TIME.

1.8.2 — *Radar Detectors*

Illinois law prohibits CMVs from being equipped with any instrument designed to detect the presence of, or interfere with, microwaves at frequencies used by police radar for the purpose of monitoring vehicle speed. The term “equipped” means and includes possession or use within a CMV.

A motorist shall not be in violation if the device is contained in a locked, opaque box or similar container or the device is not in the passenger compartment of the vehicle and in operation.

Violation of this law is a petty offense with a minimum fine of $50 for a first offense and a minimum of $100 for a second or subsequent offense.

1.8.3 — *GPS Devices*

Commercial vehicle drivers using GPS (Global Position Services) devices for assistance with routing and navigation should employ a device designed specifically for truck navigation. A truck-enabled GPS device contains information about truck-restricted roadways and designated routes, as well as takes into consideration the size of the truck (length, weight, height and load types) as it routes. Unlike regular car GPS devices, truck-enabled GPS units provide a safer tool for ensuring that commercial vehicles are not mistakenly routed on non-truck roads, through low bridges or other hazards. Traffic and safety laws, road conditions and street signs always take priority when navigating.

1.9 — Vehicle Size Limitations

Drivers must obey all posted signs regarding maximum truck width, length, height and weight limits. They must be aware that some highways prohibit truck travel entirely. Others allow truck travel on a limited basis. For example, only very small trucks may cross certain township bridges as well as the highways leading to and from these bridges. Higher limits are allowed on state highways designated by the Illinois Department of Transportation (IDOT) and on local streets and highways designated by local government officials. Maps showing state highways on which these vehicles may operate from are available from IDOT at www.gettingaroundillinois.com/gai.htm?mt=dtr. For additional size and weight information, see IDOT form OPER 753 at www.dot.il.gov/Forms/oper%20753.pdf.

Width. The maximum width for all vehicles is 8 feet, 6 inches. Exemptions to maximum widths are:

- Loads of farm products or implements of husbandry being transported during the period from a half-hour after sunrise to a half-hour before sunset in times of good visibility. See IDOT form OPER 2279 at www.dot.state.il.us/Forms/OPER%202279.pdf.

- Buses operating within the limits of cities and villages located in counties with populations of 500,000 or more. Maximum widths may be up to 9 feet. However, no vehicle wider than 8 feet, 8 inches may be operated on the interstate highways in those counties.

Length. No vehicle with or without a load, other than a semitrailer, shall exceed a length of 42 feet. Semitrailers may have an overall length of 53 feet, including the load being carried.

- On Class I and Class II designated state and local highways there is no overall length limit. However, for semitrailers more than 48 feet in length, the maximum allowable distance from the kingpin to the rear axle is 45 feet, 6 inches. The maximum length of either the semitrailer or trailer in a truck tractor-semitrailer-trailer (double-bottom) combination is 28 feet, 6 inches.
- On Class III designated state and local highways, including other non-designated state highways, the maximum allowable length for tractor-semitrailer combinations is 65 feet overall length (bumper to bumper). However, for semitrailers more than 48 feet in length, the maximum allowable distance from the kingpin to the rear axle is 42 feet, 6 inches. All other types of vehicle combinations are limited to an overall length of 60 feet, including load.
- On non-designated local streets including preferred truck routes, the maximum overall length is 55 feet (bumper to bumper), including loads for truck tractor-semitrailer combinations, and 60 feet for all other types of vehicle combinations, including load.

Exceptions to **LENGTH** requirements:

- Length limits do not apply to vehicles operating in the daytime except on Saturdays, Sundays or legal holidays when transporting poles, pipes, machinery or other objects of structural nature which cannot be readily dismembered, provided the length of the object being transported does not exceed 80 feet and the overall length of vehicle and load does not exceed 100 feet.
- Stinger-steered vehicles specifically designed to transport motor vehicles or boats may have an overall length of 80 feet plus overhang of 4 feet in front and 6 feet in the rear on Class I and II highways.
- Conventional auto transporters are vehicles specifically designed to transport motor vehicles or boats and may have an overall length of 65 feet plus overhang on these highways. The maximum overall length on all other streets and highways is 60 feet.

General exceptions to **LENGTH** requirements:

- All large vehicles operating on Class I highways shall have access for a distance of 1 mile on any street or highway to points of loading and unloading, and facilities for food, fuel, rest and repair.
- Large vehicles operating on designated state highways shall have access for a distance of 5 highway miles on any other state highway and on designated local streets and highways, to points of loading and unloading, and facilities for food, fuel, rest and repair. (This applies only on local streets and highways specifically designated and posted by local officials.)
- Streets or highways are designated by the Department of Transportation or local officials having jurisdiction.

Height. The maximum height for all vehicles on all highways is 13 feet, 6 inches, including load from the underside of the tire to the top of the vehicle.

Weight. The maximum weight limits on both designated and non-designated state and local streets and highways are:

- 20,000 pounds on a single axle;
- 34,000 pounds on a tandem; and
- up to 80,000 pounds on a five-axle combination, depending upon axle spacing.

However, any single axle of a two-axle motor vehicle weighing 36,000 pounds or less and not a part of a combination of vehicles may carry an axle load of up to 20,000 pounds. Exceptions for certain vehicles are allowed by the statutes and by local city ordinances.

1.10 — Special Lighting Equipment

Second division or combination vehicles longer than 25 feet or wider than 80 inches (excluding mirrors, bumpers and other safety devices) must have special lighting equipment. The following lighting equipment is required on vehicles operated outside the limits of cities, towns or villages between sunset and sunrise:

- Two yellow or amber lights on the front of the vehicle. One light must be on each upper-front corner and visible for 500 feet.
- Three red lights on the rear of the vehicle in a horizontal line and visible for 500 feet.
- Two yellow or amber reflectors on the front of the vehicle. One reflector must be on each lower corner.
- Two red reflectors on the rear of the vehicle. One reflector must be not more than 12 inches from each lower corner.

Second division or combination vehicles longer than 20 feet and weighing more than 3,000 gross pounds must have special reflectors when operated outside the limits of cities, villages or towns between sunset and sunrise. The required reflectors, which must be approved by IDOT include:

- Two amber reflectors on each side of the vehicle, not more than 5 feet above the road and placed at approximately one-third the length of the side of the vehicle.
- One amber reflector on each side of the vehicle not more than 12 inches from the front and not more than 5 feet above the road.
- One red reflector on each side of the vehicle not more than 12 inches from the rear and not more than 5 feet above the road.

Special lighting equipment required on trailers and semitrailers with a gross weight of 3,000 pounds or less include:

- Two red reflectors on the rear of the vehicle. Reflectors must not be more than 12 inches from each lower corner and visible for 300 feet in headlight beams.
- Electric turn signals. Vehicles must have right and left signals on the front and rear. They must be visible from 300 feet.

1.11 — Vehicle Registration

Registration ID Cards. Registration identification cards for second division vehicles, except pole trailers or semitrailers, must be in the vehicle, carried by the driver or carried by the person in control of the vehicle at all times. Vehicles weighing over 12,000 pounds that are registered in another state must carry an Illinois Fleet Reciprocity ID Permit, Apportionment ID Card or Prorate ID Card (for Prorate Decals) in place of the registration ID card.

Motor Fuel Tax ID Card. When required by the Motor Fuel Tax Law, a valid Motor Fuel Tax Identification Card or an authorized reproduction must be carried in the cab of the vehicle or carried by the driver. The driver must display or surrender the card upon request of a police officer or other agent of the Department of Revenue. Second division registration fees are based on the type of operation and the gross weight of the vehicle and load. The fee schedule is printed on the application, which may be obtained from the Secretary of State's office.

License Plates. All vehicles except motorcycles, motorized pedal cycles, trailers, semitrailers, truck tractors and vehicles registered under the International Registration Plan (IRP) must display two license plates (front and rear) on the vehicle. Trailers must display one on the rear, and truck tractors must display one on the front. Buses registered under the IRP must display one apportioned plate on the rear of the bus.

The IRP is a reciprocity agreement between the states and the Canadian provinces, providing for the payment of license fees to a specific jurisdiction based on the number of fleet-miles driven in that jurisdiction. A license plate and an Illinois Apportionment Identification Card listing the jurisdictions for which the fees have been paid are issued for each vehicle by the base state of the applicant. The gross weight at which the vehicle has been registered also is listed. Vehicles with a maximum gross weight over 26,000 pounds are required to display IRP plates. Lighter vehicles that conduct interstate commerce may choose to display these plates, while those that conduct intrastate commerce must have IRP plates.

Apportioned Plates. Specific kinds of license plates are issued for second division vehicles. License plates for second division vehicles are issued for the fiscal year beginning July 1 and ending June 30. Apportioned plates are issued for the registration year beginning April 1 and ending March 31. Semitrailer plates are permanent plates.

Intrastate carriers may not operate any motor vehicle on Illinois highways unless there is a sign painted on or affixed to both sides of the vehicle. The trade name, permit number and registration number of the carrier must be shown.

The letters on the sign must be a minimum of 2-inches high with a 1/2-inch brush stroke. Interstate carrier vehicles must show the registration or authority number of the carrier on both sides of the unit.

All tow trucks except those owned by governmental agencies must display a sign on each side. The sign must have letters not less than 2-inches high, which contrast with the background. The sign must state the name, address and telephone number of the owner or operator.

Movement Documents. A movement document ensures that only vehicles in Illinois do intrastate business within the boundaries of Illinois. All trucks, truck tractors and buses registered in another state must carry one or more movement documents that show:

- The vehicle's point of origin and destination and its cargo or passengers.
- Whether the trip is for-hire or not-for-hire.
- Whether the trip is interstate or intrastate as defined by the Illinois Vehicle Code.

1.12 — International Registration Plan/International Fuel Tax Agreement

If a driver operates a vehicle that requires a CDL in interstate commerce, the vehicle, with few exceptions, is required to be registered under the International Registration Plan (IRP) and the International Fuel Tax Agreement (IFTA). These federally mandated programs provide for the equitable collection and distribution of vehicle license fees and motor fuels taxes for vehicles traveling throughout the 48 contiguous United States and 10 Canadian provinces.

Under the IRP, jurisdictions must register apportioned vehicles, which include issuing license plates and cab cards or proper credentials; calculating, collecting and distributing IRP fees; auditing carriers for accuracy of reported distance and fees; and enforcing IRP requirements.

Registrant responsibilities under the plan include applying for IRP registration with base jurisdiction, providing proper documentation for registration, paying appropriate IRP registration fees, properly displaying registration credentials, maintaining accurate distance records and making records available for jurisdiction review.

The basic concept behind IFTA is to allow a licensee (motor carrier) to license in a base jurisdiction for the reporting and payment of motor fuel use taxes.

Under the IFTA, a licensee is issued one set of credentials that will authorize operations through all IFTA member jurisdictions. The fuel use taxes collected pursuant to the IFTA are calculated based on the number of miles (kilometers) traveled and the number of gallons (liters) consumed in the member jurisdictions. The licensee files one quarterly tax return with the base jurisdiction by which the licensee will report all operations through all IFTA member jurisdictions. It is the base jurisdiction's responsibility to remit the taxes collected to other member jurisdictions and to represent the other member jurisdictions in the tax collection process, including the performance of audits.

An IFTA licensee must retain records to support the information reported on the IFTA quarterly tax return.

The IRP registrant and the IFTA licensee may be the vehicle owner or the vehicle operator.

The requirement for acquiring IRP plates for a vehicle and IFTA license for a motor carrier is determined by the definitions from the IRP and the IFTA for Qualified Vehicle and Qualified Motor Vehicle.

For purposes of IRP:
A Qualified Vehicle is (except as provided below) any Power Unit that is used or intended for use in two or more Member Jurisdictions and that is used for the transportation of persons for hire or designed, used or maintained primarily for the transportation of property and:

- **(i) Has two axles and a gross vehicle weight or registered gross vehicle weight in excess of 26,000 pounds (11,793.401 kilograms); or**
- **(ii) Has three or more Axles, regardless of weight; or**
- **(iii) Is used in combination, when the gross vehicle weight of such combination exceeds 26,000 pounds (11,793.401 kilograms).**

While similar, the Qualified Motor Vehicle in IFTA means a motor vehicle used, designed or maintained for transportation of persons or property and:

- **(i) Having two axles and a gross vehicle weight or registered gross vehicle weight exceeding 26,000 pounds or 11,797 kilograms; or**
- **(ii) Having three or more axles regardless of weight; or**
- **(iii) Is used in combination, when the weight of such combination exceeds 26,000 pounds or 11,797 kilograms gross vehicle or registered gross vehicle weight. Qualified Motor Vehicle does not include recreational vehicles.**

If the vehicle you operate is registered under IRP and you are a motor carrier licensed under IFTA, then you are required to comply with the mandatory record-keeping requirements for operating the vehicle. A universally accepted method of capturing this information is through the completion of an Individual Vehicle Distance Record (IVDR), or Driver Trip Report. This document reflects the distance traveled and fuel purchased for a vehicle that operates interstate under apportioned (IRP) registration and IFTA fuel tax credentials.

Although the actual format of the IVDR may vary, the information that is required for proper record-keeping does not. In order to satisfy the requirements for Individual Vehicle Distance Records, these documents must include the following information:

Distance
Per Article IV of the IRP Plan:

- **(i) Date of trip (starting and ending).**
- **(ii) Trip origin and destination – city and state or province.**
- **(iii) Route(s) of travel.**
- **(iv) Beginning and ending odometer or hub odometer reading of the trip.**
- **(v) Total distance traveled.**
- **(vi) In-Jurisdiction distance.**
- **(vii) Power unit number or vehicle identification number.**

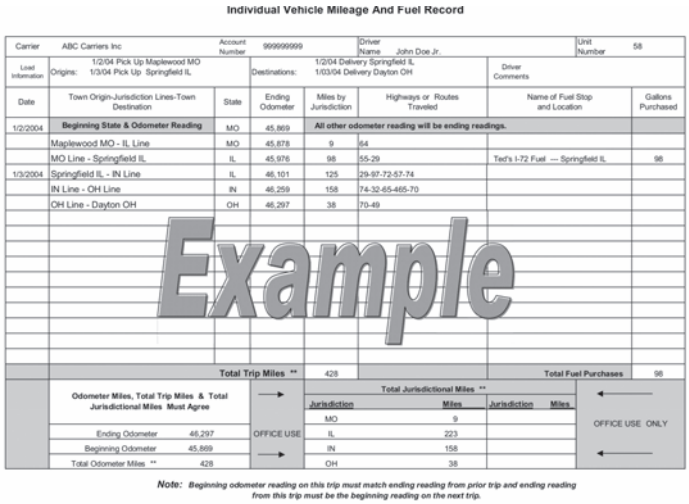
Fuel
Per Section P560 of the IFTA Procedures Manual:

- **.300 An acceptable receipt or invoice must include, but shall not be limited to, the following:**
- **.005 Date of purchase.**
- **.010 Seller's name and address.**
- **.015 Number of gallons or liters purchased.**
- **.020 Fuel type.**
- **.025 Price per gallon or liter or total amount of sale.**
- **.030 Unit number or other unique vehicle identifier.**
- **.035 Purchaser's name.**

An example of an IVDR that must be completed in its entirety for each trip can be found in **example right.** Each individual IVDR should be filled out for only one vehicle. The rules to follow when trying to determine how and when to log an odometer reading are the following:

- At the beginning of the day.
- When leaving the state or province.
- At the end of the trip/day.

Not only do the trips need to be logged, but the fuel purchases need to be documented as well. You must obtain a receipt for all fueling and include it with your completed IVDR.



Individual Vehicle Mileage And Fuel Record

Carrier	ABC Carriers Inc	Account Number	999999999	Driver Name	John Doe Jr.	Unit Number	58
Load Information	Origins: 1/2/04 Pick Up Maplewood MO; 1/3/04 Pick Up Springfield IL	Destinations:	1/2/04 Delivery Springfield IL; 1/03/04 Delivery Dayton OH	Driver Comments			

Date	Town Origin-Jurisdiction Lines-Town Destination	State	Ending Odometer	Miles by Jurisdiction	Highways or Routes Traveled	Name of Fuel Stop and Location	Gallons Purchased
1/2/2004	**Beginning State & Odometer Reading**	MO	45,869	**All other odometer reading will be ending readings.**			
	Maplewood MO - IL Line	MO	45,878	9	64		
	MO Line - Springfield IL	IL	45,976	98	55-29	Ted's I-72 Fuel --- Springfield IL	98
1/3/2004	Springfield IL - IN Line	IL	46,101	125	29-97-72-57-74		
	IN Line - OH Line	IN	46,259	158	74-32-65-465-70		
	OH Line - Dayton OH	OH	46,297	38	70-49		
	Total Trip Miles **		428			**Total Fuel Purchases**	98

Odometer Miles, Total Trip Miles & Total Jurisdictional Miles Must Agree		OFFICE USE	Total Jurisdictional Miles **				OFFICE USE ONLY
			Jurisdiction	Miles	Jurisdiction	Miles	
Ending Odometer	46,297		MO	9			
Beginning Odometer	45,869		IL	223			
Total Odometer Miles **	428		IN	158			
			OH	38			

Note: *Beginning odometer reading on this trip must match ending reading from prior trip and ending reading from this trip must be the beginning reading on the next trip.*

Make sure that any trips that you enter are always filled out in descending order and that your trips include all state/provinces that you traveled through on your route.

There are different routes that a driver may take, and most of the miles may be within one state or province. Whether or not the distance you travel is primarily in one jurisdiction or spread among several jurisdictions, all information for the trip must be recorded. This includes the dates, the routes, odometer readings and fuel purchases.

By completing this document in full and keeping all records required by both the IRP and the IFTA, you will have ensured that you and your company are in compliance with all state and provincial laws surrounding fuel and distance record-keeping requirements.

The IVDR serves as the source document for the calculation of fees and taxes that are payable to the jurisdictions in which the vehicle is operated, so these original records must be maintained for a minimum of four years.

In addition, these records are subject to audit by the taxing jurisdictions. Failure to maintain complete and accurate records could result in fines, penalties and suspension or revocation of IRP registrations and IFTA licenses.

For additional information on the IRP and the requirements related to the IRP, contact your base jurisdiction motor vehicle department or IRP Inc., the official repository for the IRP. Additional information can be found on the IRP, Inc. website at www.irponline.org. There is a training video on the website's home page available in English, Spanish and French.

For additional information on IFTA and the requirements related to IFTA, contact the appropriate agency in your base jurisdiction. You will also find useful information about the agreement at the official repository of IFTA at http://www.iftach.org/index.php.

Human trafficking is modern-day slavery. Traffickers use force, fraud and coercion to control their victims. Any minor engaged in commercial sex is a victim of human trafficking. Trafficking can occur in many locations, including truck stops, restaurants, rest areas, hotels/motels, strip clubs, private homes, etc. Truckers are the eyes and the ears of our nation's highways. If you see a minor working any of those areas or suspect that the person selling sex is under someone else's control in order to make a quota, call the National Hotline and report your tip:

1-888-3737-888 (US) ▪ 1-800-222-TIPS (Canada)
01800-5533-000 (Mexico) ▪ Text INFO or HELP to BeFree (233733)

For law enforcement to open an investigation on your tip, they need "actionable information," and as many details as you can provide. Specific tips helpful when reporting to the hotline would include:

- Descriptions of cars (make, model, color, license plate number, etc.) and people (height, weight, hair color, eye color, age, etc.) Take a picture if you can.
- Specific times and dates (When did you see the event in question take place? What day was it?)
- Addresses and locations where suspicious activity took place

Make the Call, Save Lives.

Questions to Ask:

Do you keep your own money? If not, who does?
Do your parents/siblings/relatives know where you are? If not, why not?
When was the last time you saw your family?
Are you physically or sexually abused? Are you or your family threatened? What is the nature of the threats?

Trafficking Red Flags to Look For:

-Lack of knowledge of their community or whereabouts
-Restricted or controlled communication-not allowed to speak for self
-CB chatter about "commercial company" or flashing lights signaling "buyer" location
-Not in control of own identification documents (ID/passport)
-Any acknowledgement that she/he has a pimp and is making a quota
-Signs of branding or tattooing of trafficker's name (often on the neck)

National Hotline: 1-888-3737-888 (Multi-Lingual)
1-800-222-TIPS (Canada)
01800-5533-000 (Mexico)
Text INFO or HELP to BeFree (233733)
Report by Email: help@humantraffickinghotline.org

Warning: Please do not approach traffickers. Call the hotline, and if instructed, the local police (911). Allow law enforcement to deal with traffickers and recover victims. Approaching traffickers is not only dangerous for you and their victims but could lead to problems in the eventual prosecution of traffickers. Also, if at a truck stop/travel plaza, please notify the manager-on-duty of the suspicious activity; she/he needs to be aware of what is taking place on the lot and assist in ending it.

If you have seen the TAT Training DVD and reviewed this wallet card, please register as TAT Trained on our website at truckersagainsttrafficking.org.

10.16 BT02

SECTION 2
DRIVING SAFELY

This Section Covers:

- Vehicle Inspection
- Basic Control of Your Vehicle
- Shifting Gears
- Seeing
- Communicating
- Controlling Speed
- Managing Space
- Seeing Hazards
- Distracted Driving
- Aggressive Drivers/Road Rage
- Driving at Night
- Driving in Fog
- Driving in Winter
- Driving in Very Hot Weather
- Railroad-highway Crossings
- Mountain Driving
- Driving Emergencies
- Antilock Braking Systems (ABS)
- Skid Control and Recovery
- Crash Procedures
- Fires
- Alcohol, Other Drugs and Driving
- Staying Alert and Fit to Drive
- Hazardous Materials Rules for All Commercial Drivers

This section contains knowledge and safe driving information that all commercial drivers should know. Applicants must pass a test on this information to obtain a CDL. This section does not include specific information on air brakes, combination vehicles, doubles or passenger vehicles. When preparing for the pre-trip inspection test, you must review the material in Section 12 in addition to the information in this section. This section also includes basic information on hazardous materials (HazMat) that all drivers should know. If a HazMat endorsement is required, study Section 9.

2.1 – Vehicle Inspection

2.1.1 – *Why Inspect*

Safety is the most important reason for completing a vehicle inspection. A vehicle defect found during an inspection could prevent problems later, such as a breakdown on the road that will cost time and dollars, or even worse, a crash caused by the defect.

Federal and state laws require that drivers inspect their vehicles. Federal and state inspectors also may inspect your vehicles. If they judge the vehicle to be unsafe, they will put the vehicle “out of service” until it is repaired.

2.1.2 – *Types of Vehicle Inspection*

Pre-trip Inspection. A pre-trip inspection will help you find problems that could cause a crash or breakdown.

During a Trip. For safety drivers should:

- Watch gauges for signs of trouble.
- Use their senses to check for problems (look, listen, smell, feel).
- Check critical items when stopping:
  - — Tires, wheels and rims.
  - — Brakes.
  - — Lights and reflectors.
  - — Brake and electrical connections to trailer.
  - — Trailer coupling devices.
  - — Cargo securement devices.

After-trip Inspection and Report. Conduct an after-trip inspection at the end of the trip, day or tour of duty on each vehicle operated. This may include filling out a vehicle condition report listing any problems found. The inspection report helps a motor carrier know when the vehicle needs repairs.

2.1.3 – *What to Look For*

Tire Problems

- Too much or too little air pressure.
- Bad wear. At least 4/32-inch tread depth is required in every major groove on front tires. A 2/32-inch tread depth is required on other tires. No fabric should show through the tread or sidewall.
- Cuts or other damage.
- Tread separation.

- Dual tires that come in contact with each other or parts of the vehicle.
- Mismatched sizes.
- Radial and bias-ply tires used together.
- Cut or cracked valve stems.
- Regrooved, recapped or retreaded tires on the front wheels of a bus are prohibited.

Wheel and Rim Problems

- Damaged rims.
- Rust around wheel/lug nuts may mean the nuts are loose — check tightness. After a tire has been changed, stop a short while later and re-check tightness of nuts.
- Missing clamps, spacers, studs or lugs means danger.
- Mismatched, bent or cracked lock rings are dangerous.
- Wheels or rims that have had welding repairs are not safe.

Bad Brake Drums or Shoes

- Cracked drums.
- Shoes or pads with oil, grease or brake fluid on them.
- Shoes worn dangerously thin, missing or broken.

Steering System Defects

- Missing nuts, bolts, cotter keys or other parts.
- Bent, loose or broken parts, such as steering column, steering gear box or tie rods.
- If power steering equipped, check hoses, pumps and fluid level; check for leaks. (See Figure 2.1.)
- Steering wheel play of more than 10 degrees (approximately 2 inches movement at the rim of a 20-inch steering wheel) can make it hard to steer.

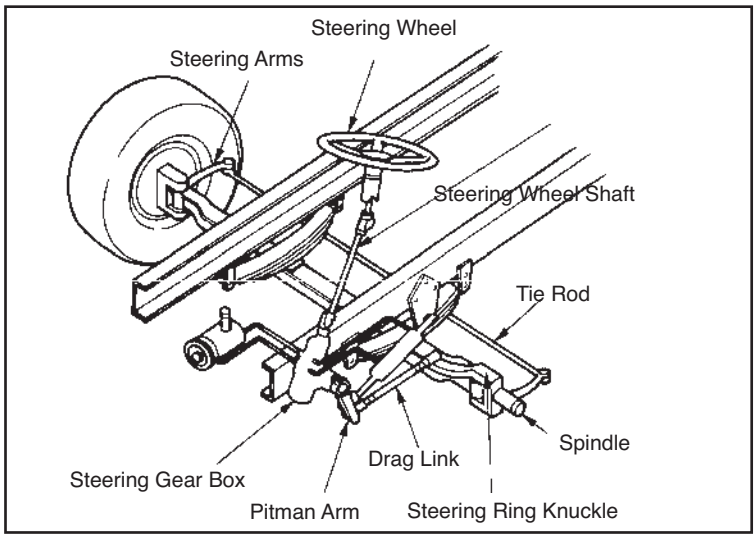


Figure 2.1
Steering System

Suspension System Defects. The suspension system holds up the vehicle and its load. It keeps the axles in place. Therefore, broken suspension parts can be extremely dangerous. Look for the following:

- Spring hangers that allow movement of the axle from proper position. (See Figure 2.2.)
- Cracked or broken spring hangers.
- Missing or broken leaves in any leaf spring. If one-fourth or more is missing, it will put the vehicle “out of service,” but any defect could be dangerous. (See Figure 2.3.)
- Broken leaves in a multileaf spring or leaves that have shifted so they might hit a tire or other part.
- Leaking shock absorbers.
- Torque rod or arm, U-bolts, spring hangers or other axle positioning parts that are cracked, damaged or missing.
- Air suspension systems that are damaged and/or leaking. (See Figure 2.4.)
- Any loose, cracked, broken or missing frame members.

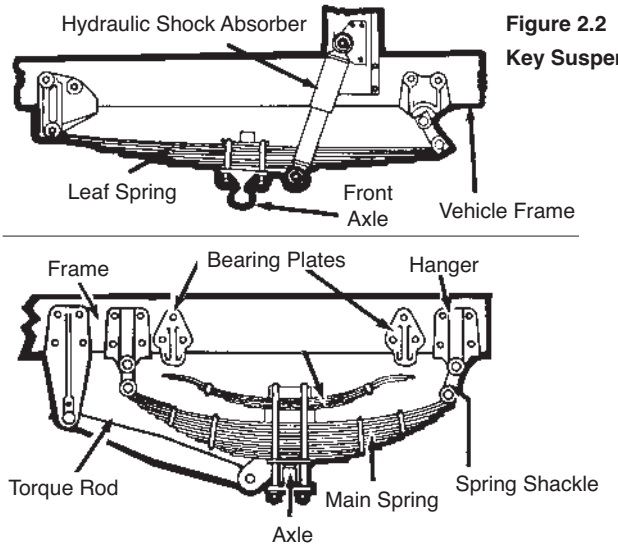


Figure 2.2
Key Suspension Parts

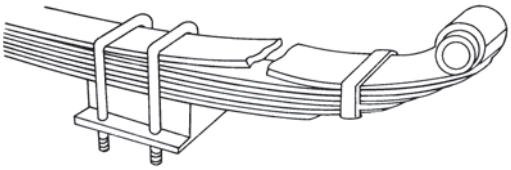
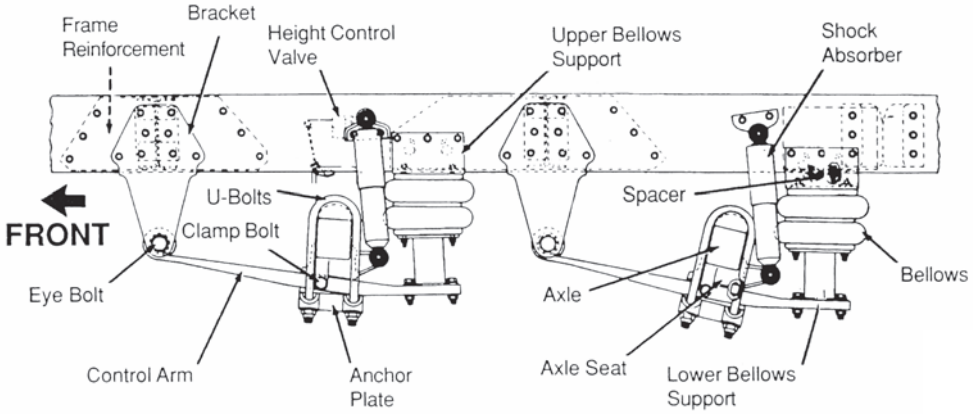


Figure 2.3
Safety Defect Broken Leaf in Leaf Spring

Figure 2.4
Air Suspension Parts



Exhaust System Defects. A broken exhaust system can let poison fumes into the cab or sleeper berth. Look for the following:

- Loose, broken or missing exhaust pipes, mufflers, tailpipes or vertical stacks.
- Loose, broken or missing mounting brackets, clamps, bolts or nuts.
- Exhaust system parts rubbing against fuel system parts, tires or other moving parts of vehicle.
- Exhaust system parts that are leaking.

Emergency Equipment. Vehicles must be equipped with emergency equipment. Look for the following:

- Fire extinguisher(s).
- Spare electrical fuses (unless equipped with circuit breakers).
- Warning devices for parked vehicles (for example, three reflective warning triangles, six fuses or three liquid burning flares).

Cargo (Trucks). Make sure the truck is not overloaded and the cargo is balanced and secured before each trip. If the cargo contains hazardous materials, you must inspect for proper papers and placarding.

2.1.4 – *CDL Pre-trip Vehicle Inspection Test*

In order to obtain a CDL, you will be required to pass a pre-trip vehicle inspection test. You will be tested to see if you know whether your vehicle is safe to drive. You will be asked to do a pre-trip inspection of your vehicle and explain to the examiner what you would inspect and why. The following seven-step inspection method should be useful.

2.1.5 – *Seven-step Inspection Method*

Method of Inspection. A pre-trip inspection should be conducted the same way each time so the driver will learn all the steps and be less likely to forget something.

Approaching the Vehicle. Notice general condition. Look for damage or vehicle leaning to one side. Look under the vehicle for fresh oil, coolant, grease or fuel leaks. Check the area around the vehicle for hazards to vehicle movement (people, other vehicles, objects, low-hanging wires, limbs, etc.).

Vehicle Inspection Guide

STEP 1: Vehicle Overview

Review last vehicle inspection report. Drivers may have to make a vehicle inspection report in writing each day. The motor carrier must repair any items in the report that affect safety and certify on the report that repairs were made or were unnecessary. Drivers must sign the report only if defects were noted and certified to be repaired or not needed to be repaired.

STEP 2: Check Engine Compartment

Check that the parking brakes are on and/or wheels chocked. Drivers may have to raise the hood, tilt the cab (secure loose items so they do not fall and break something) or open the engine compartment door. Check the following:

- Engine oil level.
- Coolant level in radiator; condition of hoses.
- Power steering fluid level; hose condition (if so equipped).
- Windshield washer fluid level.
- Battery fluid level, connections and tie downs (battery may be located elsewhere).
- Automatic transmission fluid level (may require engine to be running).
- Check belts for tightness and excessive wear (alternator, water pump, air compressor) — learn how much "give" the belts should have when adjusted right and check each one.
- Leaks in the engine compartment (fuel, coolant, oil, power steering fluid, hydraulic fluid, battery fluid).
- Cracked, worn electrical wiring insulation.

Lower and secure hood, cab or engine compartment door.

STEP 3: Start Engine and Inspect Inside the Cab

Get In and Start Engine

- Make sure parking brake is on.
- Put gearshift in "neutral" (or "park" if automatic).
- Start engine; listen for unusual noises.
- If equipped, check the Antilock Braking System (ABS) indicator lights. Light on dash should come on and then turn off. If it stays on, the ABS is not working properly. For trailers only, if the yellow light on the left rear of the trailer stays on, the ABS is not working properly.

Look at the Gauges

- **Oil pressure**. Should come up to normal within seconds after engine is started. (See Figure 2.5.)
- **Air pressure**. Pressure should build from 50 to 90 psi within three minutes. Build air pressure to governor cut-out (usually around 120-140 psi). Know your vehicle's requirements.
- **Ammeter and/or voltmeter**. Should be in normal range(s).
- **Coolant temperature**. Should begin gradual rise to normal operating range.
- **Engine oil temperature**. Should begin gradual rise to normal operating range.
- **Warning lights and buzzers**. Oil, coolant, charging circuit warning and antilock brake system lights should go out right away.

Figure 2.5

OIL PRESSURE

- **Idling — 5-20 PSI**
- **Operating — 35-75 PSI**

- **Low, dropping, fluctuating:**
  STOP IMMEDIATELY!
  Without oil, the engine can be destroyed rapidly.

Check Condition of Controls. Check all of the following for looseness, sticking, damage or improper setting:

- Steering wheel.
- Clutch.
- Accelerator (gas pedal).
- Brake controls.
  - — Foot brake.
  - — Trailer brake (if equipped).
  - — Parking brake.
  - — Retarder controls (if equipped).
- Transmission controls.
- Interaxle differential lock (if equipped).
- Horn(s).
- Windshield wiper/washer.
- Lights.
  - — Headlights.
  - — Dimmer switch.
  - — Turn signal.
  - — Four-way flashers.
  - — Parking, clearance, identification and marker switch(es).

Check Mirrors and Windshield. Inspect mirrors and windshield for cracks, dirt, illegal stickers or other obstructions to your vision. Clean and adjust as necessary.

Check Emergency Equipment

- Check for safety equipment:
  - — Spare electrical fuses (unless vehicle has circuit breakers).
  - — Three red reflective triangles, six fuses or three liquid burning flares.
  - — Properly charged and rated fire extinguisher.
- Check for optional items:
  - — Chains (where winter conditions require).
  - — Tire changing equipment.
- List of emergency phone numbers.
- Accident reporting kit (packet).

Check Safety Belt. Check that the safety belt is securely mounted, adjusts, latches properly and is not ripped or frayed.

STEP 4: Turn Off Engine and Check Lights

Make sure the parking brake is set, turn off the engine and take the key with you. Turn on headlights (low beams) and four-way emergency flashers and get out of the vehicle.

- Go to front of vehicle and check that low beams are on and both of the four-way flashers are working.
- Push dimmer switch and check that high beams work.
- Turn off headlights and four-way emergency flashers.
- Turn on parking, clearance, side-marker and identification lights.
- Turn on right-turn signal and start walk-around inspection.

STEP 5: Perform Walk-around Inspection

General

- Walk around and inspect.
- Clean all lights, reflectors and glass as you go along.

Left Front Side

- Driver's door glass should be clean.
- Door latches or locks should work properly.
- Left front wheel:
  — Condition of wheel and rim — missing, bent, broken studs, clamps, lugs or any signs of misalignment.
  — Condition of tires — properly inflated, valve stem and cap OK, no serious cuts, bulges or tread wear.
  — Use wrench to test rust-streaked lug nuts, indicating looseness.
  — Hub oil level OK, no leaks.
- Left front suspension:
  — Condition of spring, spring hangers, shackles and U-bolts.
  — Shock absorber condition.
- Left front brake:
  — Condition of brake drum or disc.
  — Condition of hoses.

Front

- Condition of front axle.
- Condition of steering system:
  — No loose, worn, bent, damaged or missing parts.
  — Must grab steering mechanism to test for looseness.
- Condition of windshield:
  — Check for damage and clean if dirty.
  — Check windshield wiper arms for proper spring tension.
  — Check wiper blades for damage, “stiff” rubber and securement.
- Lights and reflectors:
  — Parking, clearance and identification lights clean, operating and proper color (amber at front).
  — Reflectors clean and proper color (amber at front).
  — Right-front turn signal light clean, operating and proper color (amber or white on signals facing forward).

Right Side

- Right front: Check all items as done on left front.
- Primary and secondary safety cab locks engaged (if cab-over-engine design).
- Right fuel tank(s):
  — Securely mounted, not damaged or leaking.
  — Fuel crossover line secure.
  — Tank(s) contain enough fuel.
  — Cap(s) on and secure.
- Condition of visible parts:
  — Rear of engine — not leaking.
  — Transmission — not leaking.
  — Exhaust system — secure, not leaking, not touching wires, fuel or air lines.
  — Frame and cross members — no bends or cracks.
  — Air lines and electrical wiring — secured against snagging, rubbing and wearing.
  — Spare tire carrier or rack not damaged (if so equipped).
  — Spare tire and/or wheel securely mounted in rack.
  — Spare tire and wheel adequate (proper size, properly inflated).
- Cargo securement (trucks):
  — Cargo properly blocked, braced, tied, chained, etc.
  — Header board adequate, secure (if required).

— Side boards, stakes strong enough, free of damage, properly set in place (if so equipped).
— Canvas or tarp (if required) properly secured to prevent tearing, billowing or blocking of mirrors.
— If oversize, all required signs (flags, lamps and reflectors) safely and properly mounted and all required permits in driver's possession.
— Curbside cargo compartment doors in good condition, securely closed, latched/locked and required security seals in place.

Right Rear

- Condition of wheels and rims — no missing, bent or broken spacers, studs, clamps or lugs.
- Condition of tires — properly inflated, valve stems and caps OK, no serious cuts, bulges, tread wear, tires not rubbing each other and nothing stuck between them.
- Tires same type, e.g., not mixed radial and bias types.
- Tires evenly matched (same sizes).
- Wheel bearing/seals not leaking.
- Suspension:
  — Condition of spring(s), spring hangers, shackles and U-bolts.
  — Axle secure.
  — Powered axle(s) not leaking lube (gear oil).
  — Condition of torque rod arms, bushings.
  — Condition of shock absorber(s).
  — If retractable axle equipped, check condition of lift mechanism. If air powered, check for leaks.
  — Condition of air ride components.
- Brakes:
  — Brake adjustment:
  — Condition of brake drum(s) or discs.
  — Condition of hoses — look for any wear due to rubbing.
- Lights and reflectors:
  — Side-marker lights clean, operating and proper color (red at rear, others amber).
  — Side-marker reflectors clean and proper color (red at rear, others amber).

Rear

- Lights and reflectors:
  — Rear clearance and identification lights clean, operating and proper color (red at rear).
  — Reflectors clean and proper color (red at rear).
  — Taillights clean, operating and proper color (red at rear).
  — Right rear turn signal operating and proper color (red, yellow or amber at rear).
  — License plate(s) present, clean and secured.
  — Splash guards present, not damaged, properly fastened, not dragging on ground or rubbing tires.
  — Cargo secure (trucks).
  — Cargo properly blocked, braced, tied, chained, etc.
  — Tailboards up and properly secured.
  — End gates free of damage and properly secured in stake sockets.
  — Canvas or tarp (if required) properly secured to prevent tearing, billowing or blocking of either the rearview mirrors or rear lights.
  — If over length or over width, make sure all signs and/or additional lights/flags are safely and properly mounted and all required permits are in driver's possession.
  — Rear doors securely closed, latched/locked.

Left Side

- Check all items as done on right side, plus:
  — Battery(ies) (if not mounted in engine compartment).
  — Battery box(es) securely mounted to vehicle.
  — Box has secure cover.
  — Battery(ies) secured against movement.

— Battery(ies) not broken or leaking.
— Fluid in battery(ies) at proper level (except maintenance-free type).
— Cell caps present and securely tightened (except maintenance-free type).
— Vents in cell caps free of foreign material (except maintenance-free type).

STEP 6: Check Signal Lights
Get In and Turn Off Lights

- Turn off all lights.
- Turn on stop lights (apply trailer hand brake or have a helper put on the brake pedal).
- Turn on left turn signal lights.

Get Out and Check Lights

- Left front turn signal light clean, operating and proper color (amber or white on signals facing the front).
- Left rear turn signal light and both stop lights clean, operating and proper color (red, yellow or amber).

Get In Vehicle

- Turn off lights not needed for driving.
- Check for all required papers, trip manifests, permits, etc.
- Secure all loose articles in cab (they might interfere with operation of the controls or hit you in a crash).
- Start the engine.

STEP 7: Start the Engine and Check
Test for Hydraulic Leaks. If the vehicle has hydraulic brakes, pump the brake pedal three times. Then apply firm pressure to the pedal and hold for five seconds. The pedal should not move. If it does, there may be a leak or other problem. Get it fixed before driving.

Brake System

Test Parking Brake(s)

- Fasten safety belt.
- Set parking brake (power unit only).
- Release trailer parking brake (if applicable).
- Place vehicle into a low gear.
- Gently pull forward against parking brake to make sure the parking brake holds.
- Repeat the same steps for the trailer with trailer parking brake set and power unit parking brakes released (if applicable).
- If it does not hold vehicle, it is faulty; have it repaired.

Test Service Brake Stopping Action

- Go about 5 mph.
- Push brake pedal firmly.
- “Pulling” to one side or the other can mean brake trouble.
- Any unusual brake pedal “feel” or delayed stopping action can mean trouble.

If you find anything unsafe during the pre-trip inspection, have it repaired immediately. Federal and state laws forbid operating an unsafe vehicle.

Test Electric Trailer Brakes (if so equipped)

- Set electric brake on trailer.
- Release truck brake.
- Place vehicle into a low gear.
- Gently pull forward against electric brake to make sure the brake holds.

Test Surge Brakes (if so equipped — trailer only)

- Set power/pulling unit parking brake.
- Pull on surge brake cable to make sure the actuator arm moves.

For vehicles equipped with full air brakes or air-over-hydraulic brakes, see Sections 5 and 6.

2.1.6 – *Inspection During a Trip*

Check Vehicle Operation Regularly. You should check:

- Instruments.
- Air pressure gauge (if you have air brakes).
- Temperature gauges.
- Pressure gauges.
- Ammeter/voltmeter.
- Mirrors.
- Tires.
- Cargo, cargo covers.
- Lights.

If you see, hear, smell or feel anything that might mean trouble, check it out.

Safety Inspection. Drivers of trucks and truck tractors transporting cargo must inspect the securement of the cargo within the first 50 miles of a trip and every 150 miles or every three hours (whichever comes first) after.

2.1.7 – *After-trip Inspection and Report*

Drivers may have to make a written report each day on the condition of the vehicle(s) driven. Report anything affecting safety or possibly leading to mechanical breakdown.

Subsection 2.1
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What is the most important reason for doing a vehicle inspection?
2. What things should you check during a trip?
3. Name some key steering system parts.
4. Name some suspension system defects.
5. What three kinds of emergency equipment must you have?
6. What is the minimum tread depth for front tires? For other tires?
7. Name some things you should check on the front of your vehicle during the walk-around inspection.
8. What should wheel bearing seals be checked for?
9. How many red reflective triangles should you carry?
10. How do you test hydraulic brakes for leaks?
11. Why put the starter switch key in your pocket during the pre-trip inspection?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsections 2.1.

2.2 – Basic Control of Your Vehicle

To drive a vehicle safely, you must be able to control its speed and direction. Safe operation of a commercial vehicle requires skill in:

- Accelerating.
- Steering.
- Stopping.
- Backing safely.

Fasten your seat belt when on the road. Apply the parking brake when you leave your vehicle.

2.2.1 – *Accelerating*

Do not roll back when you start. You may hit someone behind you. If you have a manual transmission vehicle, partly engage the clutch before you take your right foot off the brake. Put on the parking brake whenever necessary to keep from rolling back. Release the parking brake only when you have applied enough engine power to keep from rolling back. On a tractor-trailer equipped with a trailer brake hand valve, the hand valve can be applied to keep from rolling back.

Speed up smoothly and gradually so the vehicle does not jerk. Rough acceleration can cause mechanical damage. When pulling a trailer, rough acceleration can damage the coupling.

Speed up very gradually when traction is poor, as in rain or snow. If you use too much power, the drive wheels may spin. You could lose control. If the drive wheels begin to spin, take your foot off the accelerator.

2.2.2 – *Steering*

Hold the steering wheel firmly with both hands. Your hands should be on opposite sides of the wheel. If you hit a curb or a pothole (chuckhole), the wheel could pull away from your hands unless you have a firm hold.

2.2.3 – *Stopping*

Push the brake pedal down gradually. The amount of brake pressure you need to stop the vehicle will depend on the speed of the vehicle and how quickly you need to stop. Control the pressure so the vehicle comes to a smooth, safe stop. If you have a manual transmission, push the clutch in when the engine is close to idle.

2.2.4 – *Backing Safely*

Because you cannot see everything behind your vehicle, backing is always dangerous. Avoid backing whenever you can. When you park, try to park so you will be able to pull forward when you leave. When you have to back, here are a few simple safety rules:

- Start in the proper position.
- Look at your path.
- Use mirrors on both sides.
- Back slowly.
- Back and turn toward the driver's side whenever possible.
- Use a helper whenever possible.

These rules are discussed below.

Start in the Proper Position. Put the vehicle in the best position to allow you to back safely. This position will depend on the type of backing to be done.

Look at Your Path. Look at your line of travel before you begin. Get out and walk around the vehicle. Check your clearance to the sides and overhead, in and near the path your vehicle will take.

Use Mirrors on Both Sides. Check the outside mirrors on both sides frequently. Get out of the vehicle and check your path if you are unsure.

Back Slowly. Always back as slowly as possible. Use the lowest reverse gear so you can more easily correct any steering errors. You also can stop quickly if necessary.

Back and Turn Toward the Driver's Side. Back to the driver's side so you can see better. Backing toward the right side is very dangerous because you cannot see as well. If you back and turn toward the driver's side, you can watch the rear of your vehicle by looking out the side window. Use driver-side backing — even if it means going around the block to put your vehicle in this position. The added safety is worth it.

Use a Helper. Use a helper when you can. There are blind spots you cannot see, so a helper is important. The helper should stand near the back of your vehicle where you can see the helper. Before you begin backing, work out a set of hand signals that you both understand. Agree on a signal for “stop.”

2.3 – Shifting Gears

Correct shifting of gears is important. If you cannot get your vehicle into the right gear while driving, you will have less control.

2.3.1 – *Manual Transmissions*

Basic Method for Shifting Up. Most heavy vehicles with manual transmissions require double clutching to change gears. Below is the basic method:

1. Release accelerator, push in clutch and shift to neutral at the same time.
2. Release clutch.
3. Let engine and gears slow down to the rpm required for the next gear (this takes practice).
4. Push in clutch and shift to the higher gear at the same time.
5. Release clutch and press accelerator at the same time.

Shifting gears using double clutching requires practice. If you remain too long in neutral, you may have difficulty putting the vehicle into the next gear. If so, do not try to force it. Return to neutral, release clutch, increase engine speed to match road speed and try again.

Knowing When to Shift Up. There are two ways of knowing when to shift:

1. **Use Engine Speed (rpm).** Study the driver's manual for your vehicle and learn the operating rpm range. Watch your tachometer and shift up when your engine reaches the top of the range. (Some newer vehicles use “progressive” shifting: the rpm at which you shift becomes higher as you move up in the gears. Find out what's right for the vehicle you will operate.)
2. **Use Road Speed (mph).** Learn what speeds each gear is good for. Then, by using the speedometer, you will know when to shift up.

With either method, you may learn to use engine sounds to know when to shift.

Basic Procedures for Shifting Down. Below is the basic procedure:

1. Release accelerator, push in clutch and shift to neutral at the same time.
2. Release clutch.
3. Press accelerator, increase engine and gear speed to the rpm required in the lower gear.
4. Push in clutch and shift to lower gear at the same time.
5. Release clutch and press accelerator at the same time.

Downshifting, like upshifting, requires knowing when to shift. Use either the tachometer or the speedometer and downshift at the right rpm or road speed. **Special conditions where you should downshift are:**

- **Before Starting Down a Hill.** Slow down and shift down to a speed that you can control without using the brakes hard. Otherwise the brakes can overheat and lose their braking power. Downshift before starting down the hill. Make sure you are in a low enough gear, usually lower than the gear required to climb the same hill.
- **Before Entering a Curve.** Slow down to a safe speed and downshift to the right gear before entering the curve. This lets you use some power through the curve to help the vehicle be more stable while turning. It also allows you to speed up as soon as you are out of the curve.

2.3.2 – *Multi-speed Rear Axles and Auxiliary Transmissions*

Multi-speed rear axles and auxiliary transmissions are used on many vehicles to provide extra gears. You usually control them by a selector knob or switch on the gearshift lever of the main transmission. There are many different shift patterns. Learn the right way to shift gears in the vehicle you will drive.

2.3.3 – *Automatic Transmissions*

Some vehicles have automatic transmissions. You can select a low range to get greater engine braking when going down grades. The lower ranges prevent the transmission from shifting up beyond the selected gear (unless the governor rpm is exceeded). It is important to use this braking effect when going down grades.

2.3.4 – *Retarders*

Some vehicles have “retarders,” which help slow a vehicle and reduce the need for using the brakes. They reduce brake wear and give you another way to slow down. There are four basic types of retarders (exhaust, engine, hydraulic and electric). All retarders can be turned on or off by the driver. On some vehicles the retarding power can be adjusted. When turned “on,” retarders apply their braking power (to the drive wheels only) whenever you let up on the accelerator pedal all the way.

Because these devices can be noisy, be sure you know where their use is permitted.

Caution: When your drive wheels have poor traction, the retarder may cause them to skid. Therefore, you should turn the retarder off whenever the road is wet, icy or snow covered.

Subsections 2.2 and 2.3
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Why should you back toward the driver's side?
2. If stopped on a hill, how can you start moving without rolling back?
3. When backing, why is it important to use a helper?
4. What's the most important hand signal that you and the helper should agree on?
5. What are the two special conditions where you should downshift?
6. When should you downshift automatic transmissions?
7. Retarders keep you from skidding when the road is slippery. True or False?
8. What are the two ways to know when to shift?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsections 2.2 and 2.3.

2.4 – Seeing

To be a safe driver you need to know what's going on all around your vehicle. Not looking properly is a major cause of accidents.

2.4.1 – *Seeing Ahead*

All drivers look ahead, but many do not look far enough ahead.

Importance of Looking Far Enough Ahead. Because stopping or changing lanes can take a lot of distance, knowing what the traffic is doing on all sides of you is important. You need to look well ahead to make sure you have room to make these moves safely.

How Far Ahead to Look. Most good drivers look at least 12 to 15 seconds ahead. That means looking ahead the distance you will travel in 12 to 15 seconds. At lower speeds, it is about one block. At highway speeds, it is about one-quarter of a mile. If you are not looking that far ahead, you may have to stop quickly or make quick lane changes. Looking 12 to 15 seconds ahead does not mean not paying attention to things that are closer. Good drivers shift their attention back and forth, near and far. Figure 2.6 illustrates how far to look ahead.

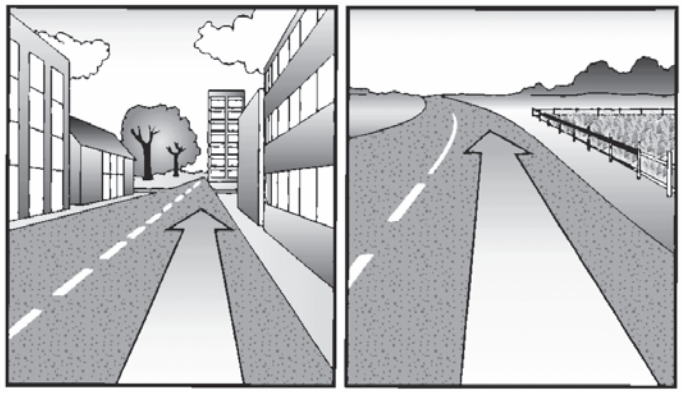


Figure 2.6

Look for Traffic. Look for vehicles coming onto the highway, into your lane or turning. Watch for brake lights from slowing vehicles. By seeing these things far enough ahead, you can change your speed or change lanes if necessary to avoid a problem. If a traffic light has been green for a long time, it will probably change before you get there. Start slowing down and be ready to stop.

2.4.2 – *Seeing to the Side and Rear*

It is important to know what is going on behind and to the sides. Check your mirrors regularly. Check more often in special situations.

Mirror Adjustment. Mirror adjustment should be checked prior to the start of any trip and can only be checked accurately when the trailer(s) are straight. You should check and adjust each mirror to show some part of the vehicle. This will give you a reference point for judging the position of the other images.

Regular Checks. Make regular checks of your mirrors to be aware of traffic and to check on your vehicle.

Traffic. Check your mirrors for vehicles on either side and in back of you. In an emergency, you may need to know whether you can make a quick lane change. Use your mirrors to spot overtaking vehicles. There are "blind spots" that your mirrors cannot show you. Check your mirrors regularly to know where other vehicles are around you, and to see if they move into your blind spots.

Check Your Vehicle. Use the mirrors to keep an eye on your tires. It is one way to spot a tire fire. If you are carrying open cargo, you can use the mirrors to check it. Look for loose straps, ropes or chains. Watch for a flapping or ballooning tarp.

Special Situations. Special situations require more than regular mirror checks. These are lane changes, turns, merges and tight maneuvers.

Lane Changes. Check your mirrors to make sure no one is alongside you or about to pass you. Check your mirrors:

- Before you change lanes to make sure there is enough room.
- After you have signaled to check that no one has moved into your blind spot.
- Right after you start the lane change to double-check that your path is clear.
- After you complete the lane change.

Turns. In turns, check your mirrors to make sure the rear of your vehicle will not hit anything.

Merges. When merging, use your mirrors to make sure the gap in traffic is large enough for you to enter safely.

Tight Maneuvers. Any time you are driving in close quarters, check your mirrors often. Make sure you have enough clearance.

How to Use Mirrors. Use mirrors correctly by checking them quickly and understanding what you see.

- When you use your mirrors while driving on the road, check quickly. Look back and forth between the mirrors and the road ahead. Do not focus on the mirrors for too long. Otherwise, you will travel quite a distance without knowing what is happening ahead.
- Many large vehicles have curved (convex, "fisheye," "spot," "bugeye") mirrors that show a wider area than flat mirrors. This is often helpful, but be aware that everything appears smaller in a convex mirror than it would if you were looking at it directly. Things also seem farther away than they really are. It is important to realize this and to allow for it. Figure 2.7 shows the field of vision using a convex mirror.

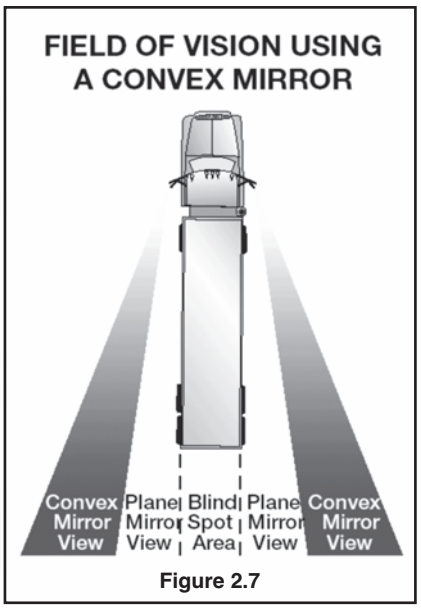


Figure 2.7

2.5 – Communicating

2.5.1 – *Signal Your Intentions*

Other drivers cannot know what you are going to do until you communicate your intentions. Signaling what you intend to do is important for safety. Here are some general rules for signaling.

Turns. There are three rules for using turn signals:

1. Signal early. Signal well before you turn. It is the best way to keep others from trying to pass you.
2. Signal continuously. You need both hands on the wheel to turn safely. Do not cancel the signal until you have completed the turn.
3. Cancel your signal. Do not forget to turn off your turn signal after you have turned (if you do not have self-canceling signals).

Lane Changes. Put your turn signal on before changing lanes. Change lanes slowly and smoothly. A driver you did not see may have a chance to honk his/her horn or avoid your vehicle.

Slowing Down. Warn drivers behind you when you need to slow down. A few light taps on the brake pedal — enough to flash the brake lights — should warn following drivers. Use the four-way emergency flashers for times when you are driving very slowly or are stopped. Warn other drivers in any of the following situations:

- **Trouble Ahead.** The size of your vehicle may make it hard for drivers behind you to see hazards ahead. If you see a hazard that will require slowing down, warn the drivers behind by flashing your brake lights.
- **Tight Turns.** Most car drivers do not know how slowly you have to go to make a tight turn in a large vehicle. Give drivers behind you warning by braking early and slowing gradually.
- **Stopping on the Road.** Truck and bus drivers sometimes stop in the roadway to unload cargo or passengers, or to stop at a railroad crossing. Warn following drivers by flashing your brake lights. Do not stop suddenly.
- **Driving Slowly.** Drivers often do not realize how fast they are catching up to a slow vehicle until they are very close. If you must drive slowly, alert following drivers by turning on your emergency flashers if it is legal. (Laws regarding the use of flashers differ from one state to another. Check the laws of the states where you will drive.)

Do Not Direct Traffic. Some drivers try to help out others by signaling when it is safe to pass. You should not do this. You could cause an accident. You could be blamed and it could cost you many thousands of dollars.

2.5.2 – *Communicating Your Presence*

Other drivers may not notice your vehicle even when it is in plain sight. To help prevent accidents, let them know you are there.

When Passing. Whenever you are about to pass a vehicle, pedestrian or bicyclist, assume that they do not see you. They could suddenly move in front of you. When it is legal, tap the horn lightly or, at night, flash your lights from low- to high-beams and back. Drive carefully enough to avoid a crash even if they do not see or hear you.

When It Is Hard to See. At dawn, dusk, in rain or snow, you need to make yourself easier to see. If you are having trouble seeing other vehicles, other drivers will have trouble seeing you. Turn on your lights. Use the headlights, not just the identification or clearance lights. Use the low beams; high beams can bother people in the daytime as well as at night.

When Parked at the Side of the Road. When you pull off the road and stop, be sure to turn on the four-way emergency flashers. This is important at night. Do not trust the taillights to give warning. Drivers have crashed into the rear of a parked vehicle because they thought it was moving normally. Place your warning devices at the following locations:

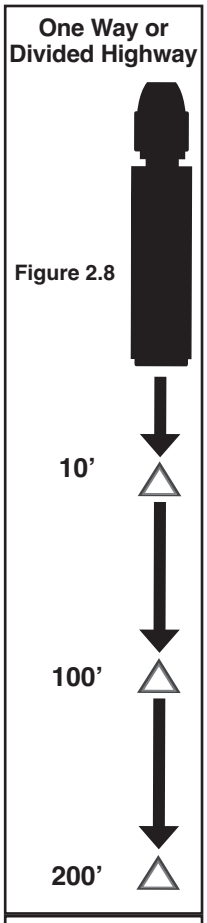


Figure 2.8

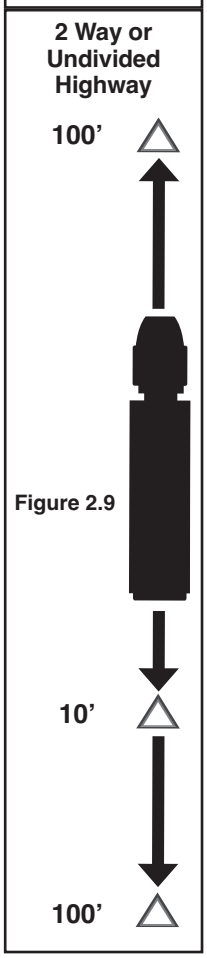


Figure 2.9

- If you must stop on a road or the shoulder of any road, you must put out your emergency warning devices within 10 minutes.
- If you must stop on or by a one-way or divided highway, place warning devices 10 feet, 100 feet and 200 feet toward the approaching traffic. (See Figure 2.8.)
- If you stop on a two-lane road carrying traffic in both directions or on an undivided highway, place warning devices within 10 feet of the front or rear corners to mark the location of the vehicle and 100 feet behind and ahead of the vehicle, on the shoulder or in the lane you stopped in. (See Figure 2.9.)
- Back beyond any hill, curve or other obstruction that prevents other drivers from seeing the vehicle within 500 feet. If line of sight view is obstructed due to hill or curve, move the rear-most triangle to a point back down the road so warning is provided. (See Figure 2.10.)

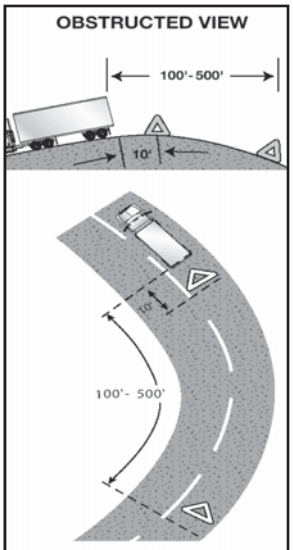


Figure 2.10

When putting out the triangles, hold them between yourself and the oncoming traffic for your own safety. (So other drivers can see you.)

Use Your Horn When Needed. Your horn can let others know you are there. It can help to avoid a crash. Use your horn when needed; however, it can startle others and could be dangerous when used unnecessarily.

2.6 – Controlling Speed

Driving too fast is a major cause of fatal crashes. You must adjust your speed depending on driving conditions. These include traction, curves, visibility, traffic and hills.

2.6.1 – *Stopping Distance*

Perception Distance + Reaction Distance + Braking Distance = Total Stopping Distance

Perception Distance. The distance your vehicle travels, in ideal conditions, from the time your eyes see a hazard until your brain recognizes it. Keep in mind, certain mental and physical conditions can affect your perception distance. It can be affected greatly depending on visibility and the hazard itself. The average perception time for an alert driver is 1 3/4 seconds. At 55 mph, this accounts for 142 feet traveled.

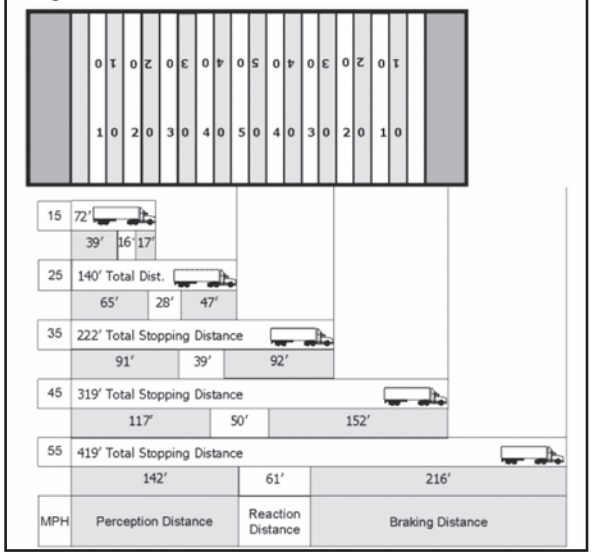
Reaction Distance. The distance you will continue to travel, in ideal conditions; before you physically hit the brakes in response to a hazard seen ahead. The average driver has a reaction time of three-fourths second to one second. At 55 mph this accounts for 61 feet traveled.

Braking Distance. The distance your vehicle will travel, in ideal conditions, while you are braking. At 55 mph on dry pavement with good brakes, it can take about 216 feet.

Total Stopping Distance. The total minimum distance your vehicle has traveled, in ideal conditions, with everything considered (including perception distance, reaction distance and braking distance) until you can bring your vehicle to a complete stop. At 55 mph, your vehicle will travel a minimum of 419 feet. (See Figure 2.11.)

The Effect of Speed on Stopping Distance. The faster you drive, the greater the impact or striking power of your vehicle. When you double your speed from 20 to 40 mph, the impact is four times greater. The braking distance is also four times longer. Triple the speed from 20 to 60 mph and the impact and braking distance is nine times greater. At 60 mph, your stopping distance is greater than the length of a football field. Increase the speed to 80 mph and the impact and braking distance are 16 times greater than at 20 mph. High speeds greatly increase the severity of crashes and stopping distances. By slowing down, you can reduce braking distance.

Figure 2.11



The Effect of Vehicle Weight on Stopping Distance. The heavier the vehicle, the more work the brakes must do to stop it and the more heat they absorb. The brakes, tires, springs and shock absorbers on heavy vehicles are designed to work best when the vehicle is fully loaded. Empty trucks require greater stopping distances because an empty vehicle has less traction.

2.6.2 – *Matching Speed to the Road Surface*

You cannot steer or brake a vehicle unless you have traction. Traction is friction between the tires and the road. There are some road conditions that reduce traction and call for lower speeds.

Slippery Surfaces. It will take longer to stop and be harder to turn without skidding when the road is slippery. Wet roads can double stopping distance. You must drive slower to be able to stop in the same distance as on a dry road. Reduce speed by about one-third (e.g., slow from 55 to about 35 mph) on a wet road. On packed snow, reduce speed by half or more. If the surface is icy, reduce speed to a crawl and stop driving as soon as you can safely do so.

Identifying Slippery Surfaces. Sometimes it is hard to know if the road is slippery. Following are signs of slippery roads:

- **Shaded Areas.** Shady parts of the road will remain icy and slippery long after open areas have melted.
- **Bridges.** When the temperature drops, bridges will freeze before the road will. Be especially careful when the temperature is close to 32 F.
- **Melting Ice.** Slight melting will make ice wet. Wet ice is much more slippery than ice that is not wet.
- **Black Ice.** Black ice is a thin layer that is clear enough that you can see the road underneath it. It makes the road look wet. Any time the temperature is below freezing and the road looks wet, watch out for black ice.
- **Vehicle Icing.** An easy way to check for ice is to open the window and feel the front of the mirror, mirror support or antenna. If there is ice on these, the road surface is probably starting to ice up.
- **Just After Rain Begins.** Right after it starts to rain, the water mixes with oil left on the road by vehicles. This makes the road very slippery. If the rain continues, it will wash the oil away.
- **Hydroplaning.** In some weather, water or slush collects on the road. When this happens, your vehicle can hydroplane. It is like water skiing — the tires lose contact with the road and have little or no traction. You may not be able to steer or brake. You can regain control by releasing the accelerator and pushing in the clutch. This will slow your vehicle and let the wheels turn freely. If the vehicle is hydroplaning, do not use the brakes to slow down. If the drive wheels start to skid, push in the clutch to let them turn freely.

It does not take a lot of water to cause hydroplaning. Hydroplaning can occur at speeds as low as 30 mph if there is a lot of water. Hydroplaning is more likely if tire pressure is low or the tread is worn. (The grooves in a tire carry away the water; if they are not deep, they do not work well.)

Road surfaces where water can collect can create conditions that cause a vehicle to hydroplane. Watch for clear reflections, tire splashes and raindrops on the road. These are indications of standing water.

2.6.3 – *Speed and Curves*

Drivers must adjust their speed for curves in the road. If you take a curve too fast, two things can happen. The tires can lose traction and continue straight ahead, so you skid off the road. Or, the tires may keep their traction and the vehicle rolls over. Tests have shown that trucks with a high center of gravity can roll over at the posted speed limit for a curve.

Slow to a safe speed before you enter a curve. Braking in a curve is dangerous because it is easier to lock the wheels and cause a skid. Slow down as needed. Do not ever exceed the posted speed limit for the curve. Be in a gear that will let you accelerate slightly in the curve. This will help you keep control.

2.6.4 – *Speed and Distance Ahead*

You should always be able to stop within the distance you can see ahead. Fog, rain or other conditions may require that you slow down to be able to stop in the distance you can see. At night, you cannot see as far with low beams as you can with high beams. When you must use low beams, slow down.

2.6.5 – *Speed and Traffic Flow*

When you are driving in heavy traffic, the safest speed is that of other vehicles. Vehicles going the same direction at the same speed are not likely to run into one another. In many states, speed limits are lower for trucks and buses than for cars. It can vary as much as 15 mph. Use extra caution when you change lanes or pass on these roadways. Drive at the speed of the traffic if you can without going at an illegal or unsafe speed. Keep a safe following distance.

The main reason drivers exceed the speed limit is to save time. But, anyone trying to drive faster than the speed of traffic will not be able to save much time. The risks involved are not worth it. If you go faster than the speed of other traffic, you will have to keep passing other vehicles. This increases the chance of a crash and is more tiring. Fatigue increases the chance of a crash. Going with the flow of traffic is safer and easier.

2.6.6 – *Speed on Downgrades*

Your vehicle's speed will increase on downgrades because of gravity. Your most important objective is to select and maintain a speed that is not too fast for the following:

- Total weight of the vehicle and cargo.
- Length of the grade.
- Steepness of the grade.
- Road conditions.
- Weather.

If a speed limit is posted or there is a sign indicating “Maximum Safe Speed,” never exceed the speed shown. Also, look for and heed warning signs indicating the length and steepness of the grade. You must use the braking effect of the engine as the principal way of controlling your speed on downgrades. The braking effect of the engine is greatest when it is near the governed rpms and the transmission is in the lower gears. Save your brakes so you will be able to slow or stop as required by road and traffic conditions. Shift your transmission to a low gear before starting down the grade and use the proper braking techniques. Please read carefully the section on going down long, steep downgrades safely in “Mountain Driving.”

2.6.7 – *Roadway Work Zones*

Speeding traffic is the number one cause of injury and death in roadway work zones. Observe the posted speed limit at all times when approaching and driving through a work zone. Watch your speedometer, and do not allow your speed to creep up as you drive through long sections of road construction. Decrease your speed for adverse weather or road conditions. Decrease your speed even further when a worker is close to the roadway.

Subsections 2.4, 2.5 and 2.6
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. How far ahead does the manual say you should look?
2. What are two main things to look for ahead?
3. What's your most important way to see the sides and rear of your vehicle?
4. What does “communicating” mean in safe driving?
5. Where should your reflectors be placed when stopped on a divided highway?
6. What three things add up to total stopping distance?
7. If you go twice as fast, will your stopping distance increase by two or four times?
8. Empty trucks have the best braking. True or False?
9. What is hydroplaning?
10. What is “black ice”?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsections 2.4, 2.5 and 2.6.

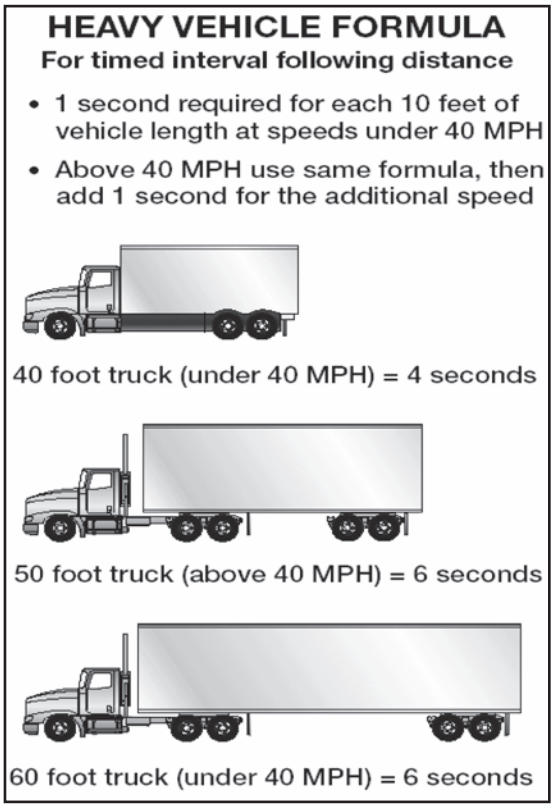


Figure 2.12

2.7 – Managing Space

To be a safe driver, you need space all around your vehicle. When things go wrong, space gives you time to think and to take action. To have space available when something goes wrong, you need to manage space. While this is true for all drivers, it is important for large vehicles. They take up more space and require more space for stopping and turning.

2.7.1 – *Space Ahead*

Of all the space around your vehicle, it is the area ahead of the vehicle — the space you are driving into — that is most important.

The Need for Space Ahead. You need space ahead in case you must suddenly stop. According to accident reports, the vehicle that trucks and buses most often drive into is the one in front of them. The most frequent cause is following too closely. Remember: If the vehicle ahead of you is smaller than yours, it can probably stop faster than you can. You may crash if you are following too closely.

How Much Space? How much space should you keep in front of you? One good rule says you need at least one second for each 10 feet of vehicle length at speeds below 40 mph. At greater speeds, you must add one second for safety. For example, if you are driving a 40-foot vehicle, you should leave four seconds between you and the vehicle ahead. In a 60-foot rig, you will need six seconds. Over 40 mph, you would need five seconds for a 40-foot vehicle and seven seconds for a 60-foot vehicle. (See Figure 2.12.)

To know how much space you have, wait until the vehicle ahead passes a shadow on the road, a pavement marking or some other clear landmark. Then count off the seconds like this: “one thousand- and-one, one thousand-and-two” and so on, until you reach the same spot. Compare your count with the rule of one second for every 10 feet of length. If you are driving a 40-foot truck and only counted up to two seconds, you are too close. Drop back a little and count again until you have four seconds of following distance (or five seconds, if you are going over 40 mph). After a little practice, you will know how far back you should be. Remember: Add one second for speeds above 40 mph. Also remember: When the road is slippery, you need more space to stop.

2.7.2 – *Space Behind*

You cannot stop others from following you too closely, but there are things you can do to make it safer.

Stay to the Right. Heavy vehicles are often tailgated when they cannot keep up with the speed of traffic. This often happens when you are going uphill. If a heavy load is slowing you down, stay in the right lane if you can. Going uphill, you should not pass another slow vehicle unless you can get around quickly and safely.

Dealing with Tailgaters Safely. In a large vehicle, it is often hard to see whether a vehicle is close behind you. You may be tailgated:

- When you are traveling slowly. Drivers trapped behind slow vehicles often follow closely.
- In bad weather. Many car drivers follow large vehicles closely during bad weather, especially when it is hard to see the road ahead.

If you are being tailgated, do the following to reduce the chances of a crash:

- **Avoid quick changes**. If you have to slow down or turn, signal early and reduce speed gradually.
- **Increase your following distance**. Opening up room in front of you will help you avoid having to make sudden speed or direction changes. It also makes it easier for the tailgater to get around you.
- **Do not speed up**. It is safer to be tailgated at a low speed than a high speed.
- **Avoid tricks**. Do not turn on your taillights or flash your brake lights. Follow the suggestions above.

2.7.3 – *Space to the Sides*

Commercial vehicles are often wide and take up most of a lane. Safe drivers will manage what little space they have. You can do this by keeping your vehicle centered in your lane and avoiding driving alongside others.

Staying Centered in a Lane. You need to keep your vehicle centered in the lane to keep safe clearance on either side. If your vehicle is wide, you have little room to spare.

Traveling Next to Others. There are two dangers in traveling alongside other vehicles:

- Another driver may change lanes suddenly and turn into you.
- You may be trapped when you need to change lanes.

Find an open spot where you are not near other traffic. When traffic is heavy, it may be hard to find an open spot. If you must travel near other vehicles, try to keep as much space as possible between you and them. Also, drop back or pull forward so that you are sure the other driver can see you.

Strong Winds. Strong winds make it difficult to stay in your lane. The problem is usually worse for lighter vehicles. This problem can be especially bad coming out of tunnels. Do not drive alongside others if you can avoid it.

2.7.4 – *Space Overhead*

Hitting overhead objects is a danger. Make sure you always have overhead clearance.

- Do not assume that the heights posted at bridges and overpasses are correct. Repaving or packed snow may have reduced the clearances since the heights were posted.
- The weight of a cargo van changes its height. An empty van is higher than a loaded one. Even though you got under a bridge when you were loaded does not mean that you can do it when you are empty.
- If you doubt you have safe space to pass under an object, go slowly. If you are not sure you can make it, take another route. Warnings are often posted on low bridges or underpasses, but sometimes they are not.
- Some roads can cause a vehicle to tilt. There can be a problem clearing objects along the edge of the road, such as signs, trees or bridge supports. Where this is a problem, drive a little closer to the center of the road.
- Before you back into an area, get out and check for overhanging objects such as trees, branches or electric wires. It is easy to miss seeing them while you are backing. (Also check for other hazards at the same time.)

2.7.5 – *Space Below*

Many drivers forget about the space under their vehicles. That space can be very small when a vehicle is heavily loaded. This is often a problem on dirt roads and in unpaved yards. Do not take a chance on getting hung up. Drainage channels across roads can cause the ends of some vehicles to drag. Cross such depressions carefully.

Railroad tracks can also cause problems, particularly when pulling trailers with a low underneath clearance. Do not take a chance on getting hung up halfway across.

2.7.6 – *Space for Turns*

The space around a truck or bus is important in turns. Because of wide turning and off tracking, large vehicles can hit other vehicles or objects during turns.

Right Turns

Following are some rules to help prevent right-turn crashes:

- Turn slowly to give yourself and others more time to avoid problems.
- If you are driving a truck or bus that cannot make the right turn without swinging into another lane, turn wide as you complete the turn. Keep the rear of your vehicle close to the curb. This will stop other drivers from passing you on the right.
- Do not turn wide to the left as you start the turn. A following driver may think you are turning left and try to pass you on the right. You may crash into the other vehicle as you complete your turn.
- If you must cross into the oncoming lane to make a turn, watch out for vehicles coming toward you. Give them room to go by or to stop. However, do not back up for them because you might hit someone behind you. (See Figure 2.13.)

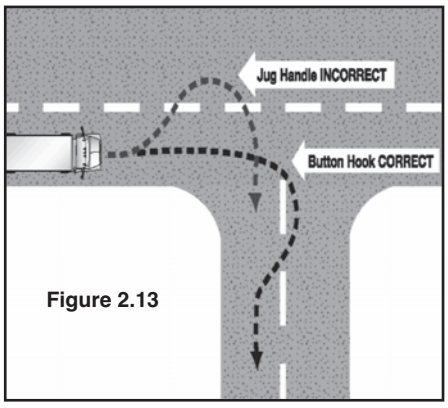


Figure 2.13

Left Turns

- On a left turn, make sure you have reached the center of the intersection before you start the left turn. If you turn too soon, the left side of your vehicle may hit another vehicle because of off tracking.
- If there are two turning lanes, always take the right-turn lane. Do not start in the inside lane because you may have to swing right to make the turn. Drivers on your left can be more readily seen. (See Figure 2.14.)

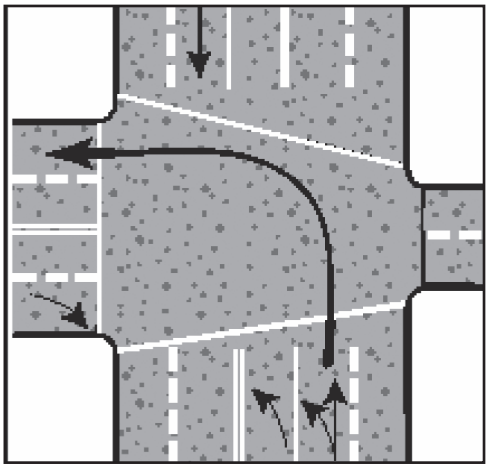


Figure 2.14

2.7.7 – *Space Needed to Cross or Enter Traffic*

Be aware of the size and weight of your vehicle when you cross or enter traffic. Here are some important things to keep in mind:

- Because of slow acceleration and the space large vehicles require, you may need a much larger gap to enter traffic than you would in a car.
- Acceleration varies with the load. Allow more room if your vehicle is heavily loaded.
- Before you start across a road, make sure you can get all the way across before traffic reaches you.

2.8 – Seeing Hazards

2.8.1 – *Importance of Seeing Hazards*

What Is a Hazard? A hazard is any road condition or other road user (driver, bicyclist, pedestrian) that is a possible danger. For example, a car in front of you is headed toward the freeway exit, but its brake lights come on and the driver begins braking hard. This could mean that the driver is uncertain about taking the off-ramp and might suddenly return to the highway. This car is a hazard. If the driver of the car cuts in front of you, it is no longer just a hazard — it is an emergency.

Seeing Hazards Lets You Be Prepared. You will have more time to act if you see hazards before they become emergencies. In the example above, you might make a lane change or slow down to prevent a crash if the car suddenly cuts in front of you. Seeing this hazard gives you time to check your mirrors and signal a lane change. Being prepared reduces the danger. Drivers who do not see the hazard until the slow car pulled back on the highway in front of them would have to do something very suddenly. Sudden braking or a quick lane change is more likely to lead to a crash.

Learning to See Hazards. There are often clues that will help you see hazards. The more you drive, the better you can learn to see hazards. This section will talk about hazards that you should be aware of.

2.8.2 – *Hazardous Roads*

Slow down and be very careful if you see any of the following road hazards:

Work Zones. When people are working on the road, it is a hazard. There may be narrower lanes, sharp turns or uneven surfaces. Other drivers are often distracted and drive unsafely. Workers and construction vehicles may get in the way. Drive slowly and carefully near work zones. Use your four-way flashers or brake lights to warn drivers behind you.

Drop Offs. Sometimes the pavement drops off sharply near the edge of the road. Driving too near the edge can tilt your vehicle toward the side of the road. This can cause the top of your vehicle to hit roadside objects (signs, tree limbs). Also, it can be hard to steer as you cross the drop off, whether going off the road or coming back on.

Foreign Objects. Things that have fallen on the road can be hazards. They can be a danger to your tires and wheel rims. They can damage electrical and brake lines. They can be caught between dual tires and cause severe damage. Some obstacles that appear to be harmless can be very dangerous. For example, cardboard boxes may be empty, but they may also contain some solid or heavy material capable of causing damage. The same is true of paper and cloth sacks. It is important to remain alert for objects of all sorts so you can see them early enough to avoid them without making sudden, unsafe moves.

Off-Ramps/On-Ramps. Freeway and turnpike exits can be particularly dangerous for commercial vehicles. Off-ramps and on-ramps often have speed limit signs posted. Remember: These speeds may be safe for automobiles but may not be safe for larger vehicles or heavily loaded vehicles. Exits that go downhill and turn at the same time can be especially dangerous. The downgrade makes it difficult to reduce speed. Braking and turning at the same time can be a dangerous practice. Make sure you are going slowly enough before you get on the curved part of an off-ramp or on-ramp.

2.8.3 – *Drivers Who Are Hazards*

In order to protect yourself and others, you must know when other drivers may do something hazardous. Some clues to this type of hazard are discussed below.

Blocked Vision. People who cannot see others are a very dangerous hazard. Be alert for drivers whose vision is blocked. Vans, loaded station wagons and cars with the rear window blocked are examples. Rental trucks should be watched carefully. Their drivers are often not used to the limited vision they have to the sides and rear of the truck. In winter, vehicles with frosted, ice-covered or snow-covered windows are hazards.

Vehicles may be partly hidden by blind intersections or alleys. If you only can see the rear or front end of a vehicle but not the driver, then he/she cannot see you. Be alert because the driver may back out or enter into your lane. Always be prepared to stop.

Delivery Trucks Can Present a Hazard. Packages or vehicle doors often block the driver's vision. Drivers of step vans, postal vehicles and local delivery vehicles often are in a hurry and may suddenly step out of their vehicle or drive into the traffic lane.

Parked Vehicles Can Be Hazards. Parked vehicles can become hazards when people start to get out of them. Or they may suddenly start up and drive into your way. Watch for movement inside the vehicle or movement of the vehicle itself that shows people are inside. Watch for brake lights or backup lights, exhaust and other clues that a driver is about to move.

Be careful of a stopped bus. Passengers may cross in front of or behind the bus, and they often cannot see you.

Pedestrians and Bicyclists Can Also Be Hazards. Walkers, joggers and bicyclists may be on the road with their back to the traffic, so they cannot see you. They also may be wearing portable stereos with headsets, so they cannot hear you either. This can be dangerous. On rainy days, pedestrians may not see you because of hats or umbrellas. They may be hurrying to get out of the rain and may not pay attention to the traffic.

Distractions. People who are distracted are hazards. Watch for where they are looking. If they are looking elsewhere, they cannot see you. Be alert even when they are looking at you. They may believe that they have the right of way.

Children. Children tend to act quickly without checking traffic. Children playing with one another may not look for traffic and are a serious hazard.

Talkers. Drivers or pedestrians talking to one another may not be paying close attention to the traffic.

Workers. People working on or near the roadway are a hazard clue. The work creates a distraction for other drivers, and the workers themselves may not see you.

Ice Cream Trucks. Someone selling ice cream is a hazard clue. Children may be nearby and may not see you.

Disabled Vehicles. Drivers changing a tire or fixing an engine often do not pay attention to the dangers of roadway traffic. They are often careless. Jacked-up wheels or raised hoods are hazard clues.

Accidents. Accidents are particularly hazardous. People involved in the accident may not look for traffic. Passing drivers tend to look at the accident. People often run across the road without looking. Vehicles may slow or stop suddenly.

Shoppers. People in and around shopping areas are often not watching traffic because they are looking for stores or into store windows.

Confused Drivers. Confused drivers often change direction suddenly or stop without warning. Confusion is common near freeway or turnpike interchanges and major intersections. Tourists unfamiliar with the area can be very hazardous. Clues to tourists include car-top luggage and out-of-state license plates. Unexpected actions (stopping in the middle of a block, changing lanes for no apparent reason, backup lights suddenly going on) are clues to confusion. Hesitation is another clue, including driving very slowly, using brakes often or stopping in the middle of an intersection. You may also see drivers who are looking at street signs, maps and house numbers. These drivers may not be paying attention to you.

Slow Drivers. Motorists who fail to maintain normal speed are hazards. Seeing slow-moving vehicles early can prevent a crash. Some vehicles, by their nature, are slow and seeing them is a hazard clue (mopeds, farm machinery, construction machinery, tractors, etc.). Some of these will have the “slow-moving vehicle” symbol to warn you. This is a red triangle with an orange center.

Drivers Signaling a Turn May Be a Hazard. Drivers signaling a turn may slow more than expected or stop. If they are making a tight turn into an alley or driveway, they may go very slow. If pedestrians or other vehicles block them, they may have to stop on the roadway. Vehicles turning left may have to stop for oncoming vehicles.

Drivers in a Hurry. Drivers may think your commercial vehicle is preventing them from getting where they want to go on time. Such drivers may pass you without a safe gap in the oncoming traffic, cutting too close in front of you. Drivers entering the road may pull in front of you in order to avoid being stuck behind you, causing you to brake. Be aware of this and watch for drivers who are in a hurry.

Impaired Drivers. Drivers who are sleepy, have had too much to drink, are on drugs or are ill are hazards. Some clues to these drivers include:

- Weaving across the road or drifting from one side to another.
- Leaving the road (dropping right wheels onto the shoulder or bumping across a curb in a turn).
- Stopping at the wrong time (stopping at a green light or waiting for too long at a stop).
- Open window in cold weather.
- Speeding up or slowing down suddenly, driving too fast or too slow.

Be alert for drunk drivers and sleepy drivers late at night.

Driver Body Movement as a Clue. Drivers look in the direction they are going to turn. You may sometimes get a clue from a driver's head and body movements that a driver may be going to make a turn, even though the turn signals aren't on. Drivers making over-the-shoulder checks may be going to change lanes. These clues are most easily seen in motorcyclists and bicyclists. Watch other road users and try to tell whether they might do something hazardous.

Conflicts. You are in conflict when you have to change speed and/or direction to avoid hitting someone. Conflicts occur at intersections where vehicles meet, at merges (such as turnpike on ramps) and where there are needed lane changes (such as the end of a lane, forcing a move to another lane of traffic). Other situations include slow-moving or stalled traffic in a traffic lane and accident scenes. Watch for other drivers who are in conflict because they are a hazard to you. When they react to this conflict, they may do something that will put them in conflict with you.

2.8.4 – *Always Have a Plan*

You should always be looking for hazards. Continue to learn to see hazards on the road. However, do not forget why you are looking for the hazards — they may turn into emergencies. You look for the hazards in order to have time to plan a way out of any emergency. When you see a hazard, think about the emergencies that could develop and figure out what you would do. Always be prepared to take action based on your plans. This way, you will be a prepared, defensive driver who will improve your own safety as well as the safety of all road users.

Subsections 2.7 and 2.8
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. How do you find out how many seconds of following distance space you have?
2. If you are driving a 30-foot vehicle at 55 mph, how many seconds of following distance should you allow?
3. You should decrease your following distance if somebody is following you too closely. True or False?
4. If you swing wide to the left before turning right, another driver may try to pass you on the right. True or False?
5. What is a hazard?
6. Why make emergency plans when you see a hazard?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsections 2.7 and 2.8.

2.9 – Distracted Driving

Whenever you are driving a vehicle and your attention is not on the road, you are putting yourself, your passengers, other vehicles and pedestrians in danger. Distracted driving can result when performing any activity that may shift your full attention from the driving task. Taking your eyes off the road or hands off the steering wheel presents obvious driving risks. Mental activities that take your mind away from driving are just as dangerous. Your eyes can gaze at objects in the driving scene but fail to see them because your attention is distracted elsewhere.

Activities that can distract your attention include: talking to passengers; adjusting the radio, CD player or climate controls; eating, drinking or smoking; reading maps or other literature; picking up something that fell; reading billboards and other road advertisements; watching other people and vehicles, including aggressive drivers; talking on a cellphone or CB radio; using telematic devices (such as navigation systems, pagers, etc.); daydreaming; or being occupied with other mental distractions.

2.9.1 – *Do Not Drive Distracted*

If drivers react a half second slower because of distractions, crashes double. Some tips to follow so you will not become distracted:

- Review and be totally familiar with all safety and usage features on any in-vehicle electronics, including your wireless or cellphone, before you drive.
- Pre-program radio stations.
- Pre-load your favorite CDs or cassette tapes.
- Clear the vehicle of any unnecessary objects.
- Review maps and plan your route before you begin driving.
- Adjust all mirrors for best all-around visibility before you start your trip.
- Do not attempt to read or write while you drive.
- Avoid smoking, eating and drinking while you drive.
- Do not engage in complex or emotionally intense conversations with other occupants.

2.9.2 – *Use In-vehicle Communication Equipment Cautiously*

- When possible, pull off the road in a safe, legal place when making/receiving a call on communication equipment.
- If possible, turn the cellphone off until your destination is reached.
- Position the cellphone within easy reach.
- Pre-program cellphones with commonly called numbers.
- If you have to place a call, find a safe place to pull off the road. Do not place a call while driving.
- Illinois law requires that only hands-free devices be used while driving. Even these devices are unsafe to use when you are moving down the road.
- If you must use your cellphone, keep conversations short. Develop ways to get free of long-winded friends and associates while on the road. Never use the cellphone for social visiting while driving.
- Hang up in tricky traffic situations.
- Do not use the equipment when approaching locations with heavy traffic, road construction, heavy pedestrian traffic or severe weather conditions.
- Do not attempt to type or read messages on your satellite system while driving.

2.9.3 – *Watch Out for Other Distracted Drivers*

You need to be able to recognize other drivers who are engaged in any form of driving distraction. Not recognizing other distracted drivers can prevent you from perceiving or reacting correctly in time to prevent a crash. Watch for:

- Vehicles that may drift over the lane divider lines or within their own lane.
- Vehicles traveling at inconsistent speeds.
- Drivers who are preoccupied with maps, food, cigarettes, cellphones or other objects.
- Drivers who appear to be involved in conversations with their passengers.

Give a distracted driver plenty of room and maintain your safe following distance.

Be very careful when passing a driver who seems to be distracted. The other driver may not be aware of your presence, and they may drift in front of you.

2.10 – Aggressive Drivers/Road Rage

2.10.1 – *What Are They?*

- Aggressive driving and road rage are not new problems. However, in today's world, where heavy and slow-moving traffic and tight schedules are the norm, more and more drivers are taking out their anger and frustration in their vehicles.
- Crowded roads leave little room for error, leading to suspicion and hostility among drivers and encouraging them to take personally the mistakes of other drivers.
- Aggressive driving is the act of operating a motor vehicle in a selfish, bold or pushy manner, without regard for the rights or safety of others.
- Road rage is operating a motor vehicle with the intent of doing harm to others or physically assaulting a driver or his/her vehicle.

2.10.2 – *Do Not Be an Aggressive Driver*

How you feel before you even start your vehicle has a lot to do with how stress will affect you while driving.

- Reduce your stress before and while you drive. Listen to "easy listening" music.
- Give the drive your full attention. Do not allow yourself to become distracted by talking on your cellphone, eating, etc.
- Be realistic about your travel time. Expect delays because of traffic, construction or bad weather.
- If you are going to be later than you expected – deal with it. Take a deep breath and accept the delay.
- Give other drivers the benefit of the doubt. Try to imagine why they are driving that way. Whatever their reason, it has nothing to do with you.
- Slow down and keep your following distance reasonable.
- Do not drive slowly in the left lane of traffic.
- Avoid gestures. Keep your hands on the wheel. Avoid making any gestures that might anger another driver, even seemingly harmless expressions of irritation like shaking your head.
- Be a cautious and courteous driver. If another driver seems eager to get in front of you, say, "be my guest." This response will soon become a habit and you will not be as offended by other drivers' actions.

2.10.3 – *What You Should Do When Confronted by Aggressive Drivers*

- First and foremost, make every attempt to get out of their way.
- Put your pride in the back seat. Do not challenge them by speeding up or attempting to hold-your-own in your travel lane.
- Avoid eye contact.
- Ignore gestures and refuse to react to them.
- Report aggressive drivers to the appropriate authorities by providing a vehicle description, license number, location and, if possible, direction of travel.
- If you have a cellphone, and can do it safely, call the police.
- If an aggressive driver is involved in a crash farther down the road, stop a safe distance from the crash scene, wait for the police to arrive and report the driving behavior that you witnessed.

Subsections 2.9 and 2.10
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What are some tips to follow so you won't become a distracted driver?
2. How do you use in-vehicle communications equipment cautiously?
3. How do you recognize a distracted driver?
4. What is the difference between aggressive driving and road rage?
5. What should you do when confronted with an aggressive driver?
6. What are some things you can do to reduce your stress before and while you drive?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsections 2.9 and 2.10.

2.11 – Driving at Night

2.11.1 – *It Is More Dangerous*

You are at greater risk when you drive at night. Drivers cannot see hazards as quickly as in daylight, so they have less time to respond. Drivers caught by surprise are less able to avoid a crash. The problems of night driving involve the driver, roadway and vehicle.

2.11.2 – *Driver Factors*

Vision. People cannot see as sharply at night or in dim light. Also, their eyes need time to adjust to seeing in dim light. Most people have noticed this when walking into a dark movie theater.

Glare. Drivers can be blinded for a short time by bright light. It takes time to recover from this blindness. Older drivers are especially bothered by glare. Most people have been temporarily blinded by camera flash units or by the high beams of an oncoming vehicle. It can take several seconds to recover from glare. Even two seconds of glare blindness can be dangerous. A vehicle going 55 mph will travel more than half the distance of a football field during that time. Do not look directly at bright lights when driving. Look at the right side of the road. Watch the sidelines when someone coming toward you has very bright lights on.

Fatigue and Lack of Alertness. Fatigue (being tired) and lack of alertness are bigger problems at night. The body's need for sleep is beyond a person's control. Most people are less alert at night, especially after midnight. This is particularly true if you have been driving for a long time. Drivers may not see hazards as soon or react as quickly, so the chance of a crash is greater. If you are sleepy, the only safe cure is to get off the road and get some sleep. If you do not, you risk your life and the lives of others.

2.11.3 – *Roadway Factors*

Poor Lighting. In the daytime there is usually enough light to see well. This is not true at night. Some areas may have bright street lights, but many areas will have poor lighting. On most roads you will probably have to depend entirely on your headlights.

Less light means you will not be able to see hazards as well as in daytime. Road users who do not have lights are hard to see. There are many accidents at night involving pedestrians, joggers, bicyclists and animals. Even when there are lights, the road scene can be confusing. Traffic signals and hazards can be hard to see against a background of signs, shop windows and other lights.

Drive slower when lighting is poor or confusing. Drive slow enough to be sure you can stop in the distance you can see ahead.

Drunk Drivers. Drunk drivers and drivers under the influence of drugs are a hazard to themselves and to you. Be especially alert around the closing times for bars and taverns. Watch for drivers who have trouble staying in their lane or maintaining speed, stop without reason or show other signs of being under the influence of alcohol or drugs.

2.11.4 – *Vehicle Factors*

Headlights. At night your headlights will usually be the main source of light for you to see by and for others to see you. You cannot see nearly as much with your headlights as you see in the daytime. With low beams you can see ahead about 250 feet and with high beams about 350-500 feet. You must adjust your speed to keep your stopping distance within your sight distance. This means going slowly enough to be able to stop within the range of your headlights. Otherwise, by the time you see a hazard, you will not have time to stop.

Night driving can be more dangerous if you have problems with your headlights. Dirty headlights may give only half the light they should. This cuts down your ability to see and makes it harder for others to see you. Make sure your lights are clean and working. Headlights can be out of adjustment. If they do not point in the right direction, they will not give you a good view and can blind other drivers. Have a qualified person make sure they are adjusted properly.

Other Lights. In order for you to be seen easily, the following must be clean and working properly:

- Reflectors.
- Marker lights.
- Clearance lights.
- Taillights.
- Identification lights.

Turn Signals and Brake Lights. At night your turn signals and brake lights are even more important for telling other drivers what you intend to do. Make sure you have clean, working turn signals and stop lights.

Windshield and Mirrors. It is more important at night than in the daytime to have a clean windshield and clean mirrors. Bright lights at night can cause dirt on your windshield or mirrors to create a glare of its own, blocking your view. Most people have experienced driving toward the sun just as it has risen or is about to set, and found that they can barely see through a windshield that seemed to look OK in the middle of the day. Clean your windshield on the inside and outside for safe driving at night.

2.11.5 – *Night Driving Procedures*

Pre-trip Procedures. Make sure you are rested and alert. If you are drowsy, sleep before you drive. Even a nap can save your life or the lives of others. If you wear eyeglasses, make sure they are clean and unscratched. Do not wear sunglasses at night. Do a complete pre-trip inspection of your vehicle. Check all lights and reflectors and clean those you can reach.

Avoid Blinding Others. Glare from your headlights can cause problems for drivers coming toward you. Headlights can also bother drivers going in the same direction you are, when your lights shine in their rearview mirrors. Dim your lights before they cause glare for other drivers. Dim your lights within 500 feet of an oncoming vehicle and when following another vehicle within 500 feet.

Avoid Glare from Oncoming Vehicles. Do not look directly at lights of oncoming vehicles. Look slightly to the right at a right lane or edge marking, if available. If other drivers do not have their high beams on do not try to “get back at them” by putting your own high beams on. This increases glare for oncoming drivers and increases the chance of a crash.

Use High Beams When You Can. Some drivers make the mistake of always using low beams. This seriously cuts down on their ability to see ahead. Use high beams when it is safe and legal to do so. Use them when you are not within 500 feet of an approaching vehicle. Also, do not let the inside of your cab get too bright. This makes it harder to see outside. Keep the interior light off and adjust your instrument lights as low as you can to still be able to read the gauges.

If You Get Sleepy, Stop at the Nearest Safe Place. People often do not realize how close they are to falling asleep even when their eyelids are falling shut. If you can safely do so, look at yourself in a mirror. If you look sleepy or you just feel sleepy, stop driving. You are in a very dangerous condition. The only safe cure is to sleep.

2.12 – Driving in Fog

Fog can occur at any time. Fog on highways can be extremely dangerous. Fog is often unexpected and visibility can deteriorate rapidly. You should watch for foggy conditions and be ready to reduce your speed. Do not assume that the fog will thin out after you enter it.

Do not drive in fog if at all possible. It is preferable that you pull off the road into a rest area or truck stop until visibility is better. If you must drive, be sure to consider the following:

- Obey all fog-related warning signs.
- Slow down before you enter fog.
- Use low-beam headlights and fog lights for best visibility even in daytime and be alert for other drivers who may have forgotten to turn on their lights.
- Turn on your four-way flashers. This will give vehicles approaching you from behind a quicker opportunity to notice your vehicle.
- Watch for vehicles on the side of the roadway. Seeing taillights or headlights in front of you may not be a true indication of where the road is ahead of you. The vehicle may not be on the road at all.
- Use roadside highway reflectors as guides to determine how the road may curve ahead of you.
- Listen for traffic you cannot see.
- Avoid passing other vehicles.
- Do not stop along the side of the road, unless absolutely necessary.

2.13 – Driving in Winter

2.13.1 – *Vehicle Checks*

Make sure your vehicle is ready before driving in winter weather. You should make a regular pre-trip inspection, paying extra attention to the following items:

Coolant Level and Antifreeze Amount. Make sure the cooling system is full and there is enough antifreeze in the system to protect against freezing. This can be checked with a special coolant tester.

Defrosting and Heating Equipment. Make sure the defrosters work. They are needed for safe driving. Make sure the heater is working and that you know how to operate it. If you use other heaters and expect to need them (e.g., mirror heaters, battery box heaters, fuel tank heaters), check their operation.

Wipers and Washers. Make sure the windshield wiper blades are in good condition. Make sure the wiper blades press against the window hard enough to wipe the windshield clean; otherwise, they may not sweep off snow properly. Make sure the windshield washer works and there is washing fluid in the washer reservoir.

Use windshield washer antifreeze to prevent freezing of the washer liquid. If you cannot see well enough while driving (for example, if your wipers fail), stop safely and fix the problem.

Tires. Make sure you have enough tread on your tires. The drive tires must provide traction to push the rig over wet pavement and through snow. The steering tires must have traction to steer the vehicle. Enough tread is especially important in winter conditions. You must have at least 4/32-inch tread depth in every major groove on front tires and at least 2/32 inch on other tires. More is better. Use a gauge to determine if you have enough tread for safe driving.

Tire Chains. You may find yourself in conditions where you cannot drive without chains, even to get to a place of safety. Carry the right number of chains and extra cross links. Make sure they will fit your drive tires. Check the chains for broken hooks, worn or broken cross-links, and bent or broken side chains. Learn how to put the chains on before you need to do it in snow and ice.

Lights and Reflectors. Make sure the lights and reflectors are clean. Lights and reflectors are especially important during bad weather. Check from time to time during bad weather to make sure they are clean and working properly.

Windows and Mirrors. Remove any ice, snow, etc., from the windshield, windows and mirrors before starting. Use a windshield scraper, snow brush and windshield defroster as necessary.

Hand Holds, Steps and Deck Plates. Remove all ice and snow from hand holds, steps and deck plates. This will reduce the danger of slipping.

Radiator Shutters and Winterfront. Remove ice from the radiator shutters. Make sure the winterfront is not closed too tightly. If the shutters freeze shut or the winterfront is closed too much, the engine may overheat and stop.

Exhaust System. Exhaust system leaks are especially dangerous when cab ventilation may be poor (windows rolled up, etc.). Loose connections could permit poisonous carbon monoxide to leak into your vehicle. Carbon monoxide gas will cause you to be sleepy. In large enough amounts it can kill you. Check the exhaust system for loose parts and for sounds and signs of leaks.

2.13.2 – *Driving*

Slippery Surfaces. Drive slowly and smoothly on slippery roads. If it is very slippery, you should not drive at all. Stop at the first safe place.

Start Gently and Slowly. When first starting, get the feel of the road. Do not hurry.

Check for Ice. Check for ice on the road, especially bridges and overpasses. A lack of spray from other vehicles indicates ice has formed on the road. Also, check your mirrors and wiper blades for ice. If they have ice, the road most likely will be icy as well.

Adjust Turning and Braking to Conditions. Make turns as gently as possible. Do not brake any harder than necessary and do not use the engine brake or speed retarder. (They can cause the driving wheels to skid on slippery surfaces.)

Adjust Speed to Conditions. Do not pass slower vehicles unless necessary. Go slowly and watch far enough ahead to keep a steady speed. Avoid having to slow down and speed up. Take curves at slower speeds and do not brake while in curves. Be aware that as the temperature rises to the point where ice begins to melt, the road becomes even more slippery. Slow down more.

Adjust Space to Conditions. Do not drive alongside other vehicles. Keep a longer following distance. When you see a traffic jam ahead, slow down or stop to wait for it to clear. Try hard to anticipate stops early and slow down gradually. Watch for snowplows, as well as salt and sand trucks, and give them plenty of room.

Wet Brakes. When driving in heavy rain or deep standing water, your brakes will get wet. Water in the brakes can cause the brakes to be weak, to apply unevenly or to grab. This can cause lack of braking power, wheel lockups, pulling to one side or the other and jackknife if you pull a trailer.

Avoid driving through deep puddles or flowing water if possible. If not, you should:

- Slow down and place transmission in a low gear.
- Gently put on the brakes. This presses linings against brake drums or discs and keeps mud, silt, sand and water from getting in.
- Increase engine rpm and cross the water while keeping light pressure on the brakes.
- When out of the water, maintain light pressure on the brakes for a short distance to heat them up and dry them out.
- Make a test stop when safe to do so. Check behind to make sure no one is following and then apply the brakes to be sure they work well. If not, dry them out further as described above. (**Caution:** Do not apply too much brake pressure and accelerator at the same time, or you can overheat the brake drums and linings.)

2.14 – Driving in Very Hot Weather

2.14.1 – *Vehicle Checks*

Do a normal pre-trip inspection, but pay special attention to the following items:

Tires. Check the tire mounting and air pressure. Inspect the tires every two hours or every 100 miles when driving in very hot weather. Air pressure increases with temperature. Do not let air out or the pressure will be too low when the tires cool off. If a tire is too hot to touch, remain stopped until the tire cools off. Otherwise the tire may blow out or catch fire.

Engine Oil. The engine oil helps keep the engine cool, as well as lubricating it. Make sure there is enough engine oil. If you have an oil temperature gauge, make sure the temperature is within the proper range while you are driving.

Engine Coolant. Before starting out, make sure the engine cooling system has enough water and antifreeze according to the engine manufacturer's directions. (Antifreeze helps the engine under hot conditions as well as cold conditions.) When driving, check the water temperature or coolant temperature gauge from time to time. Make sure that it remains in the normal range. If the gauge goes above the highest safe temperature, there may be something wrong that could lead to engine failure and possibly fire. Stop driving as soon as safely possible and try to find out what is wrong.

Some vehicles have sight glasses, see-through coolant overflow containers or coolant recovery containers. These permit you to check the coolant level while the engine is hot. If the container is not part of the pressurized system, the cap can be safely removed and coolant added even when the engine is at operating temperature.

Never remove the radiator cap or any part of the pressurized system until the system has cooled. Steam and boiling water can spray under pressure and cause severe burns. If you can touch the radiator cap with your bare hand, it is probably cool enough to open.

If coolant has to be added to a system without a recovery tank or overflow tank, follow these steps:

- Shut engine off.
- Wait until engine has cooled.
- Protect hands (use gloves or a thick cloth).
- Turn radiator cap slowly to the first stop, which releases the pressure seal.
- Step back while pressure is released from cooling system.
- When all pressure has been released, press down on the cap and turn it further to remove it.
- Visually check level of coolant and add more coolant if necessary.
- Replace cap and turn all the way to the closed position.

Engine Belts. Learn how to check V-belt tightness on your vehicle by pressing on the belts. Loose belts will not turn the water pump and/or fan properly. This will result in overheating. Also, check belts for cracking or other signs of wear.

Hoses. Make sure coolant hoses are in good condition. A broken hose while driving can lead to engine failure and even fire.

2.14.2 – *Driving*

Watch for Bleeding Tar. Tar in the road pavement frequently rises to the surface in very hot weather. Spots where tar “bleeds” to the surface are very slippery.

Go Slowly Enough to Prevent Overheating. High speeds create more heat for tires and the engine. In desert conditions the heat may build up to the point where it is dangerous. The heat will increase chances of tire failure or even fire and engine failure.

Subsections 2.11, 2.12, 2.13 and 2.14
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. You should use low beams whenever you can. True or False?
2. What should you do before you drive if you are drowsy?
3. What effects can wet brakes cause? How can you avoid these problems?
4. You should let air out of hot tires so the pressure goes back to normal. True or False?
5. You can safely remove the radiator cap as long as the engine isn't overheated. True or False?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsections 2.11, 2.12, 2.13 and 2.14.

2.15 – Railroad-highway Crossings
Railroad-highway grade crossings are a special kind of intersection where the roadway crosses train tracks. These crossings are always dangerous. Every such crossing must be approached with the expectation that a train is coming.

2.15.1 – *Types of Crossings*
Passive Crossings. This type of crossing does not have any type of traffic control device. The decision to stop or proceed rests entirely in your hands. Passive crossings require you to recognize the crossing, search for any train using the tracks and decide if there is sufficient clear space to cross safely. Passive crossings have yellow circular advance warning signs, pavement markings and crossbucks to assist you in recognizing a crossing.

Active Crossings. This type of crossing has a traffic control device installed at the crossing to regulate traffic at the crossing. These active devices include flashing red lights with or without bells and flashing red lights with bells and gates.

2.15.2 – *Warning Signs and Devices*
Advance Warning Signs. The round, black-on-yellow warning sign is placed ahead of a public railroad-highway crossing. The advance warning sign tells you to slow down, look and listen for the train and be prepared to stop at the tracks if a train is coming. (See Figure 2.15.)

Pavement Markings. Pavement markings mean the same as the advance warning sign. They consist of an "X" with the letters "RR" and a no-passing marking on two-lane roads. (See Figure 2.16.)

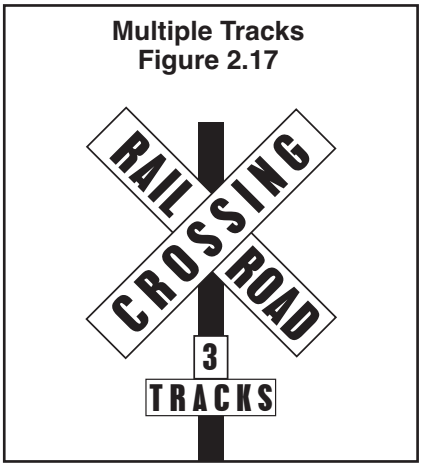
There is also a no-passing zone sign on two-lane roads. There may be a white stop line painted on the pavement before the railroad tracks. The front of the school bus must remain behind this line while stopped at the crossing.

Crossbuck Signs. This sign marks the grade crossing. It requires you to yield the right of way to the train. If there is no white line painted on the pavement, you must stop the bus before the crossbuck sign. When the road crosses over more than one set of tracks, a sign below the crossbuck indicates the number of tracks. (See Figure 2.17.)

Round Yellow Warning Sign
Figure 2.15

Pavement Markings
Figure 2.16

Multiple Tracks
Figure 2.17



Flashing Red Light Signals. At many highway-rail grade crossings, the crossbuck sign has flashing red lights and bells. When the lights begin to flash, stop. A train is approaching. You are required to yield the right-of-way to the train. If there is more than one track, make sure all tracks are clear before crossing. (See Figure 2.18.)

Gates. Many railroad-highway crossings have gates with flashing red lights and bells. Stop when the lights begin to flash and before the gate lowers across the road lane. Remain stopped until the gates go up and the lights have stopped flashing. Proceed when it is safe. (See Figure 2.18.)

Gates/Lights
Figure 2.18

2.15.3 – *Driving Procedures*
Never Race a Train to a Crossing. Never attempt to race a train to a crossing. It is extremely difficult to judge the speed of an approaching train.

Reduce Speed. Speed must be reduced in accordance with your ability to see approaching trains in any direction, and speed must be held to a point which will permit you to stop short of the tracks in case a stop is necessary.

Do Not Expect to Hear a Train. Because of noise inside your vehicle, you cannot expect to hear the train horn until the train is dangerously close to the crossing.

Do Not Rely on Signals. You should not rely solely upon the presence of warning signals, gates or flagmen to warn of the approach of trains. Be especially alert at crossings that do not have gates or flashing red light signals.

Double Tracks Require a Double-Check. Remember: A train on one track may hide a train on the other track. Look both ways before crossing. After one train has cleared a crossing, be sure no other trains are near before starting across the tracks.

Yard Areas and Grade Crossings in Cities and Towns. Yard areas and grade crossings in cities and towns are just as dangerous as rural grade crossings. Approach them with as much caution.

2.15.4 – *Stopping Safely at Railroad-highway Crossings*
A full stop is required at grade crossings whenever:
- The nature of the cargo makes a stop mandatory under state or federal regulations.
- Such a stop is otherwise required by law.

When stopping be sure to:
- Check for traffic behind you while stopping gradually. Use a pullout lane, if available.
- Turn on your four-way emergency flashers.

2.15.5 – *Crossing the Tracks*
Railroad crossings with steep approaches can cause your unit to hang up on the tracks. Never permit traffic conditions to trap you in a position where you have to stop on the tracks. Be sure you can get all the way across the tracks before you start across. It takes a typical tractor-trailer unit at least 14 seconds to clear a single track and more than 15 seconds to clear a double track.

Do not shift gears while crossing railroad tracks.

2.15.6 – *Special Situations*
Be Aware! These trailers can get stuck on raised crossings:
- Low slung units (lowboy, car carrier, moving van, possum-belly livestock trailer).
- Single-axle tractor pulling a long trailer with its landing gear set to accommodate a tandem-axle tractor.

If for any reason you get stuck on the tracks, get out of the vehicle and away from the tracks. Check signposts or signal housing at the crossing for emergency notification information. Call 911 or other emergency number. Give the location of the crossing using all identifiable landmarks, especially the DOT number, if posted.

2.16 – Mountain Driving
In mountain driving, gravity plays a major role. On any upgrade, gravity slows you down. The steeper the grade, the longer the grade and/or the heavier the load — the more you will have to use lower gears to climb hills or mountains. In coming down long, steep downgrades, gravity causes the speed of your vehicle to increase. You must select an appropriate safe speed and then use a low gear and proper braking techniques. You should plan ahead and obtain information about any long, steep grades along your planned route of travel. If possible, talk to other drivers who are familiar with the grades to find out what speeds are safe.

You must go slowly enough so your brakes can hold you back without getting too hot. If the brakes become too hot, they may start to "fade." This means you have to apply them harder and harder to get the same stopping power. If you continue to use the brakes hard, they can keep fading until you cannot slow down or stop at all.

2.16.1 – *Select a "Safe" Speed*
Your most important consideration is to select a speed that is not too fast for the:

- Total weight of the vehicle and cargo.
- Length of the grade.
- Steepness of the grade.
- Road conditions.
- Weather.

If a speed limit is posted or there is a sign indicating "Maximum Safe Speed," never exceed the speed shown. Also, look for and heed warning signs indicating the length and steepness of the grade.

You must use the braking effect of the engine as the principal way of controlling your speed. The braking effect of the engine is greatest when it is near the governed rpms and the transmission is in the lower gears. Save your brakes so you will be able to slow or stop as required by road and traffic conditions.

2.16.2 – *Select the Right Gear Before Starting Down the Grade*
Shift the transmission to a low gear before starting down the grade. Do not try to downshift after your speed has already built up. You will not be able to shift into a lower gear. You may not even be able to get back into any gear, and all engine braking effect will be lost. Forcing an automatic transmission into a lower gear at high speed could damage the transmission and also lead to loss of all engine braking effect.

With older trucks, a rule for choosing gears is to use the same gear going down a hill that you would need to climb the hill. However, new trucks have low friction parts and streamlined shapes for fuel economy. They may also have more powerful engines. This means they can go up hills in higher gears and have less friction and air drag to hold them back going down hills. For that reason, drivers of modern trucks may have to use lower gears going down a hill than would be required to go up the hill. You should know what is right for your vehicle.

2.16.3 – *Brake Fading or Failure*
Brakes are designed so brake shoes or pads rub against the brake drum or disks to slow the vehicle. Braking creates heat, but brakes are designed to take a lot of heat. However, brakes can fade or fail from excessive heat caused by using them too much and not relying on the engine braking effect.

Brake fade is also affected by adjustment. To safely control a vehicle, every brake must do its share of the work. Brakes out of adjustment will stop doing their share before those that are in adjustment. The other brakes can then overheat and fade, and there will not be enough braking available to control the vehicle. Brakes can get out of adjustment quickly, especially when they are used a lot; brake linings wear faster when they are hot. Therefore, brake adjustment must be checked frequently.

2.16.4 – *Proper Braking Technique*
Remember: The use of brakes on a long and/or steep downgrade is only a supplement to the braking effect of the engine. Once the vehicle is in the proper low gear, the following are the proper braking techniques:

1. Apply the brakes just hard enough to feel a definite slowdown.
2. When your speed has been reduced to approximately 5 mph below your “safe” speed, release the brakes.
3. When your speed has increased to your “safe” speed, repeat Steps 1 and 2.

For example, if your “safe” speed is 40 mph, you would not apply the brakes until your speed reaches 40 mph. You now apply the brakes hard enough to gradually reduce your speed to 35 mph and then release the brakes. Repeat this as often as necessary until you have reached the end of the downgrade.

Escape Ramps. Escape ramps have been built on many steep mountain downgrades. Escape ramps are made to stop runaway vehicles safely without injuring drivers and passengers. Escape ramps use a long bed of loose, soft material to slow a runaway vehicle, sometimes in combination with an upgrade.

Know the escape ramp locations on your route. Signs show drivers where ramps are located. Escape ramps save lives, equipment and cargo.

Subsections 2.15 and 2.16
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What factors determine your selection of a "safe" speed when going down a long, steep downgrade?
2. Why should you be in the proper gear before starting down a hill?
3. Describe the proper braking technique when going down a long, steep downgrade.
4. What type of vehicles can get stuck on a railroad-highway crossing?
5. How long does it take for a typical tractor-trailer unit to clear a double track?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsections 2.15 and 2.16.

2.17 – *Driving Emergencies*

Traffic emergencies occur when two vehicles are about to collide. Vehicle emergencies occur when tires, brakes or other critical parts fail. Following the safety practices in this manual can help prevent emergencies. But if an emergency does happen, your chances of avoiding a crash depend upon how well you take action. Actions you can take are discussed below.

2.17.1 – *Steering to Avoid a Crash*

Stopping is not always the safest thing to do in an emergency. When you do not have enough room to stop, you may have to steer away from what is ahead. Remember: You can almost always turn to miss an obstacle more quickly than you can stop. (However, top-heavy vehicles and tractors with multiple trailers may flip over.)

Keep Both Hands on the Steering Wheel. In order to turn quickly, you must have a firm grip on the steering wheel with both hands. The best way to have both hands on the wheel, if there is an emergency, is to keep them there all the time.

How to Turn Quickly and Safely. A quick turn can be made safely if it is done the right way. Here are some points that safe drivers use:

- Do not apply the brake while you are turning. It is very easy to lock your wheels while turning. If that happens, you may skid out of control.
- Do not turn any more than needed to clear whatever is in your way. The more sharply you turn, the greater the chances of a skid or rollover.
- Be prepared to “countersteer,” that is, to turn the wheel back in the other direction, once you have passed whatever was in your path. Unless you are prepared to countersteer, you will not be able to do it quickly enough. You should think of emergency steering and countersteering as two parts of one driving action.

Where to Steer. If an oncoming driver has drifted into your lane, a move to your right is best. If that driver realizes what has happened, the natural response will be to return to his/her own lane. If something is blocking your path, the best direction to steer will depend on the situation.

- If you have been using your mirrors, you will know which lane is empty and can be safely used.
- If the shoulder is clear, going right may be best. No one is likely to be driving on the shoulder, but someone may be passing you on the left. You will know if you have been using your mirrors.
- If you are blocked on both sides, a move to the right may be best. At least you will not force anyone into an opposing traffic lane and a possible head-on collision.

Leaving the Road. In some emergencies, you may have to drive off the road. It may be less risky than facing a collision with another vehicle. Most shoulders are strong enough to support the weight of a large vehicle and, therefore, offer an available escape route. Here are some guidelines, if you do leave the road:

- Avoid braking. If possible, avoid using the brakes until your speed has dropped to about 20 mph. Then brake very gently to avoid skidding on a loose surface.
- Keep one set of wheels on the pavement, if possible. This helps to maintain control.
- Stay on the shoulder. If the shoulder is clear, stay on it until your vehicle has come to a stop. Signal and check your mirrors before pulling back onto the road.

Returning to the Road. If you are forced to return to the road before you can stop, use the following procedure:

- Hold the wheel tightly and turn sharply enough to get right back on the road safely. Do not try to edge gradually back on the road. If you do, your tires might grab unexpectedly and you could lose control.
- When both front tires are on the paved surface, countersteer immediately. The two turns should be made as a single “steer-countersteer” move.

2.17.2 – *How to Stop Quickly and Safely*

If somebody suddenly pulls out in front of you, your natural response is to hit the brakes. This is a good response if there is enough distance to stop and you use the brakes correctly. You should brake in a way that will keep your vehicle in a straight line and allow you to turn if it becomes necessary. You can use the “controlled braking” method or the “stab braking” method.

Controlled Braking. With this method, you apply the brakes as hard as you can without locking the wheels. Keep steering wheel movements very small while doing this. If you need to make a larger steering adjustment or if the wheels lock, release the brakes. Re-apply the brakes as soon as you can.

Stab Braking

- Apply your brakes all the way.
- Release brakes when wheels lock up.
- As soon as the wheels start rolling, apply the brakes fully again. (It can take up to one second for the wheels to start rolling after you release the brakes. If you re-apply the brakes before the wheels start rolling, the vehicle will not straighten out.)

Do Not Jam on the Brakes. Emergency braking does not mean pushing down on the brake pedal as hard as you can. That will only keep the wheels locked up and cause a skid. If the wheels are skidding, you cannot control the vehicle.

2.17.3 – *Brake Failure*

Brakes kept in good condition rarely fail. Most hydraulic brake failures occur for one of two reasons: (Air brakes are discussed in Section 5.)

- Loss of hydraulic pressure.
- Brake fade on long hills.

Loss of Hydraulic Pressure. When the system will not build up pressure, the brake pedal will feel spongy or go to the floor. Following are things you can do:

- **Downshift.** Putting the vehicle into a lower gear will to slow the vehicle.
- **Pump the Brakes.** Sometimes pumping the brake pedal will generate enough hydraulic pressure to stop the vehicle.
- **Use the Parking Brake.** The parking or emergency brake is separate from the hydraulic brake system. Therefore, it can be used to slow the vehicle. However, be sure to press the release button or pull the release lever

at the same time you use the emergency brake so you can adjust the brake pressure and keep the wheels from locking up.

- **Find an Escape Route.** While slowing the vehicle, look for an escape route — an open field, side street or escape ramp. Turning uphill is a good way to slow and stop the vehicle. Make sure the vehicle does not start rolling backward after you stop. Put it in low gear, apply the parking brake and, if necessary, roll back into some obstacle that will stop the vehicle.

Brake Failure on Downgrades. Going slow enough and braking properly will almost always prevent brake failure on long downgrades. Once the brakes have failed, however, you are going to have to look outside your vehicle for something to stop it.

Your best hope is an escape ramp. If there is one, there will be signs telling you about it. Use it. Ramps are usually located a few miles from the top of the downgrade. Every year, hundreds of drivers avoid injury to themselves or damage to their vehicles by using escape ramps. Some escape ramps use soft gravel that resists the motion of the vehicle and brings it to a stop. Others turn uphill, using the hill to stop the vehicle and soft gravel to hold it in place.

Any driver who loses brakes going downhill should use an escape ramp if it is available. If you do not use it, your chances of having a serious crash may be much greater.

If no escape ramp is available, take the least hazardous escape route you can, such as an open field or a side road that flattens out or turns uphill. Make the move as soon as you know your brakes do not work. The longer you wait, the faster the vehicle will go, and the harder it will be to stop.

2.17.4 – *Tire Failure*

Recognize Tire Failure. Quickly knowing you have a tire failure will let you have more time to react. Having just a few extra seconds to remember what it is you are supposed to do can help you. The major signs of tire failure are:

- **Sound.** The loud “bang” of a blowout is an easily recognized sign. Because it can take a few seconds for your vehicle to react, you might think it was some other vehicle. But any time you hear a tire blow, you would be safest to assume it is yours.
- **Vibration.** If the vehicle thumps or vibrates heavily, it may be a sign that one of the tires has gone flat. With a rear tire, that may be the only sign you get.
- **Feel.** If the steering feels “heavy,” it is probably a sign that one of the front tires has failed. Sometimes, failure of a rear tire will cause the vehicle to slide back and forth or “fishtail.” However, dual rear tires usually prevent this.

Respond to Tire Failure. When a tire fails, your vehicle is in danger. You must immediately:

- **Hold the Steering Wheel Firmly.** If a front tire fails, it can twist the steering wheel out of your hand. The only way to prevent this is to keep a firm grip on the steering wheel with both hands at all times.
- **Stay Off the Brake.** It is natural to want to brake in an emergency. However, braking when a tire has failed could cause loss of control. Unless you are about to drive into something, stay off the brake until the vehicle has slowed down. Then brake very gently, pull off the road and stop.
- **Check the Tires.** After you have come to a stop, get out and check all the tires. Do this even if the vehicle seems to be handling normally. If one of your dual tires goes, the only way you may know it is by getting out and looking at it.

2.18 – Antilock Braking Systems (ABS)

- ABS is a computerized system that keeps your wheels from locking up during hard brake applications.
- ABS is an addition to your normal brakes. It does not decrease or increase your normal braking capability. ABS only activates when wheels are about to lock up.
- ABS does not necessarily shorten your stopping distance, but it does help you keep the vehicle under control during hard braking.

2.18.1 – *How Antilock Braking Systems Work*

- Sensors detect potential wheel lock up. An electronic control unit (ECU) will then decrease brake pressure to avoid wheel lockup.

- Brake pressure is adjusted to provide the maximum braking without danger of lockup.
- ABS works far faster than the driver can respond to potential wheel lockup. At all other times the brake system will operate normally.

2.18.2 – *Vehicles Required to Have Antilock Braking Systems*

The Department of Transportation requires that ABS be on:

- Truck tractors with air brakes built on or after March 1, 1997.
- Other air brake vehicles, (trucks, buses, trailers and converter dollies) built on or after March 1, 1998.
- Hydraulically braked trucks and buses with a gross vehicle weight rating of 10,000 lbs. or more built on or after March 1, 1999.

Many commercial vehicles built before these dates have been voluntarily equipped with ABS.

2.18.3 – *How to Know If Your Vehicle Is Equipped with ABS*

- Tractors, trucks and buses will have yellow ABS malfunction lamps on the instrument panel.
- Trailers will have yellow ABS malfunction lamps on the left side, either on the front or rear corner.
- Dollies manufactured on or after March 1, 1998, are required to have a lamp on the left side.
- As a system check on newer vehicles, the malfunction lamp comes on at start-up for a bulb check and then goes out quickly. On older systems, the lamp could stay on until you are driving over 5 mph.
- If the lamp stays on after the bulb check or goes on once you are under way, you may have lost ABS control.
- In the case of towed units manufactured before it was required by the Department of Transportation, it may be difficult to tell if the unit is equipped with ABS. Look under the vehicle for the ECU and wheel speed sensor wires coming from the back of the brakes.

2.18.4 – *How ABS Helps You*

- When you brake hard on slippery surfaces in a vehicle without ABS, your wheels may lock up. When your steering wheels lock up, you lose steering control. When your other wheels lock up, you may skid, jackknife or even spin the vehicle.
- ABS helps you avoid wheel lock up and maintain control. You may or may not be able to stop faster with ABS, but you should be able to steer around an obstacle while braking and avoid skids caused by over braking.

2.18.5 – *ABS on the Tractor Only or Only on the Trailer*

- Having ABS on only the tractor, only the trailer, or even on only one axle still gives you more control over the vehicle during braking. Brake normally.
- When only the tractor has ABS, you should be able to maintain steering control and there is less chance of jackknifing. But keep your eye on the trailer and let up on the brakes (if you can safely do so) if it begins to swing out.
- When only the trailer has ABS, the trailer is less likely to swing out, but if you lose steering control or start a tractor jackknife, let up on the brakes (if you can safely do so) until you regain control.

2.18.6 – *Braking with ABS*

When you drive a vehicle with ABS, you should brake as you always have. In other words:

- Use only the braking force necessary to stop safely and stay in control.
- Brake the same way, regardless of whether you have ABS on the bus, tractor, the trailer or both.
- As you slow down, monitor your tractor and trailer and back off the brakes (if it is safe to do so) to stay in control.
- There is only one exception to this procedure. If you drive a straight truck or combination with working ABS on all axles, in an emergency stop, you can fully apply the brakes.

2.18.7 – *Braking If ABS Is Not Working*

- Without ABS you still have normal brake functions. Drive and brake as you always have.
- Vehicles with ABS have yellow malfunction lamps to tell you if something is not working.
- As a system check on newer vehicles, the malfunction lamp comes on at start-up for a bulb check and then goes out quickly. On older systems, the lamp could stay on until you are driving over 5 mph.
- If the lamp stays on after the bulb check or goes on once you are under way, you may have lost ABS control on one or more wheels.
- Remember: If your ABS malfunctions, you still have regular brakes. Drive normally, but get the system serviced soon.

2.18.8 – *Safety Reminders*

- ABS will not allow you to drive faster, follow more closely or drive less carefully.
- ABS will not prevent power or turning skids. ABS should prevent brake-induced skids or jackknifes, but not those caused by spinning the drive wheels or going too fast in a turn.
- ABS will not necessarily shorten stopping distance. ABS will help maintain vehicle control, but not always shorten stopping distance.
- ABS will not increase or decrease ultimate stopping power. ABS is an "add-on" to your normal brakes, not a replacement for them.
- ABS will not change the way you normally brake. Under normal brake conditions, your vehicle will stop as it always stopped. ABS only comes into play when a wheel would normally have locked up because of over braking.
- ABS will not compensate for bad brakes or poor brake maintenance.
- **Remember:** The best vehicle safety feature is still a safe driver.
- **Remember:** Drive so you never need to use your ABS.
- **Remember:** If you need it, ABS could help to prevent a serious crash.

2.19 – Skid Control and Recovery

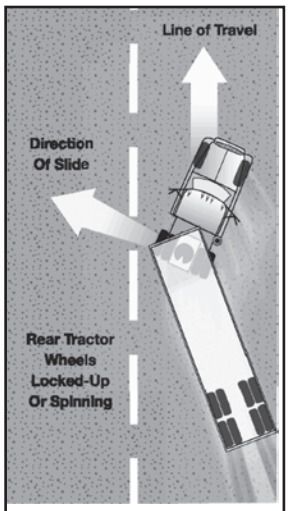
A skid happens whenever the tires lose their grip on the road. This is caused in one of four ways:

1. **Over Braking.** Braking too hard and locking up the wheels. Skids also can occur when using the speed retarder when the road is slippery.
2. **Oversteering.** Turning the wheels more sharply than the vehicle can turn.
3. **Over Acceleration.** Supplying too much power to the drive wheels, causing them to spin.
4. **Driving too fast.** Most serious skids result from driving too fast for road conditions. Drivers who adjust their driving to conditions do not over accelerate and do not have to over brake or oversteer from too much speed.

2.19.1 – *Drive-wheel Skids*

By far the most common skid is one in which the rear wheels lose traction through excessive braking or acceleration. Skids caused by acceleration usually happen on ice or snow. Taking your foot off the accelerator can easily stop them. (If it is very slippery, push the clutch in. Otherwise, the engine can keep the wheels from rolling freely and regaining traction.)

Rear-wheel braking skids occur when the rear drive wheels lock. Because locked wheels have less traction than rolling wheels, the rear wheels usually slide sideways in an attempt to "catch up" with the front wheels. In a bus or straight truck, the vehicle will slide sideways in a "spin out." With vehicles towing trailers, a drive-wheel skid can let the trailer push the towing vehicle sideways, causing a sudden jackknife. (See Figure 2.19.)



Tractor Jackknife
Figure 2.19

2.19.2 – *Correcting a Drive-wheel Braking Skid*

Do the following to correct a drive-wheel braking skid:

- **Stop Braking.** This will let the rear wheels roll again and keep the rear wheels from sliding.
- **Countersteer.** As a vehicle turns back on course, it has a tendency to keep on turning. Unless you turn the steering wheel quickly the other way, you may find your self skidding in the opposite direction.

Learning to stay off the brake, turn the steering wheel quickly, push in the clutch and countersteer in a skid takes a lot of practice. The best place to get this practice is on a large-driving range or "skid pad."

2.19.3 – *Front-wheel Skids*

Driving too fast for conditions causes most front-wheel skids. Other causes include lack of tread on the front tires and cargo loaded so not enough weight is on the front axle. In a front-wheel skid, the front end tends to go in a straight line regardless of how much you turn the steering wheel. On a very slippery surface, you may not be able to steer around a curve or turn.

When a front-wheel skid occurs, the only way to stop the skid is to let the vehicle slow down. Stop turning and/or braking so hard. Slow down as quickly as possible without skidding.

Subsections 2.17, 2.18 and 2.19
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Stopping is not always the safest thing to do in an emergency. True or False?
2. What are some advantages of going right instead of left around an obstacle?
3. What is an "escape ramp?"
4. If a tire blows out, you should put the brakes on hard to stop quickly. True or False?
5. How do you know if your vehicle has antilock brakes?
6. What is the proper braking technique when driving a vehicle with antilock brakes?
7. How do antilock brakes help you?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsections 2.17, 2.18 and 2.19.

2.20 – Accident Procedures

When you are in an accident and not seriously hurt, you need to act to prevent further damage or injury. The basic steps to be taken at any accident are to:

1. Protect the area.
2. Notify authorities.
3. Care for the injured.

2.20.1 – *Protect the Area*

The first thing to do at an accident scene is to keep another accident from happening in the same spot. To protect the accident area:

- If your vehicle is involved in the accident, try to get it to the side of the road. This will help prevent another accident and allow traffic to move.
- If you are stopping to help, park away from the accident. The area immediately around the accident will be needed for emergency vehicles.
- Put on your flashers.
- Set out reflective triangles to warn other traffic. Make sure other drivers can see them in time to avoid the accident.

2.20.2 – *Notify Authorities*

If you have a cellphone or CB, call for assistance before you get out of your vehicle. If not, wait until after the accident scene has been properly protected and then phone or send someone to contact the police. Try to determine where you are so you can give the exact location.

2.20.3 – *Care for the Injured*

If a qualified person is at the accident and helping the injured, stay out of the way unless asked to assist. Otherwise, do the best you can to help any injured parties. Here are some simple steps to follow in giving assistance:

- Do not move a severely injured person unless the danger of fire or passing traffic makes it necessary.
- Stop heavy bleeding by applying direct pressure to the wound.
- Keep the injured person warm.

2.21 – Fires

Truck fires can cause damage and injury. Learn the causes of fires and how to prevent them. Know what to do to extinguish fires.

2.21.1 – *Causes of Fire*

The following are some causes of vehicle fires:

- **After Accidents.** Spilled fuel, improper use of flares.
- **Tires.** Under-inflated tires and duals that touch.
- **Electrical System.** Short circuits due to damaged insulation, loose connections.
- **Fuel.** Driver smoking, improper fueling, loose fuel connections.
- **Cargo.** Flammable cargo, improperly sealed or loaded cargo, poor ventilation.

2.21.2 – *Fire Prevention*

Pay attention to the following:

- **Pre-trip Inspection.** Make a complete inspection of the electrical, fuel and exhaust systems, tires and cargo. Be sure to check that the fire extinguisher is charged.
- **En Route Inspection.** Check the tires, wheels and truck body for signs of heat whenever you stop during a trip.
- **Follow Safe Procedures.** Follow correct safety procedures for fueling the vehicle, using brakes, handling flares and other activities that can cause a fire.
- **Monitoring.** Check the instruments and gauges often for signs of overheating and use the mirrors to look for signs of smoke from tires or the vehicle.
- **Caution.** Use normal caution in handling anything flammable.

2.21.3 – *Fire Fighting*

Knowing how to fight fires is important. Drivers who are not prepared have made fires worse. Know how the fire extinguisher works. Study the instructions printed on the extinguisher before you need it. Here are some procedures to follow in case of fire.

Pull Off the Road. The first step is to get the vehicle off the road and stop. In doing so:

- Park in an open area, away from buildings, trees, brush, other vehicles or anything that might catch fire.
- Do not pull into a service station.
- Notify emergency services of your problem and your location.

Keep the Fire from Spreading. Before trying to put out the fire, make sure that it does not spread any further.

- With an engine fire, turn off the engine as soon as you can. Do not open the hood if you can avoid it. Shoot foam through louvers, radiator or from the vehicle's underside.
- For a cargo fire in a van or box trailer, keep the doors shut, especially if your cargo contains hazardous materials. Opening the van doors will supply the fire with oxygen and can cause it to burn very fast.

Extinguish the Fire. Here are some rules to follow in putting out a fire:

- When using the extinguisher, stay as far away from the fire as possible.
- Aim at the source or base of the fire, not up in the flames.

Use the Right Fire Extinguisher.

- Figures 2.20 and 2.21 detail the type of fire extinguisher to use by class of fire.
- The B:C type fire extinguisher is designed to work on electrical fires and burning liquids.
- The A:B:C type is designed to work on burning wood, paper and cloth as well.
- Water can be used on wood, paper or cloth, but do not use water on an electrical fire (can cause shock) or a gasoline fire (it will spread the flames).
- A burning tire must be cooled. Lots of water may be required.
- If you are not sure what to use, especially on a hazardous materials fire, wait for firefighters.
- Position yourself upwind. Let the wind carry the extinguisher to the fire.
- Continue until whatever was burning has been cooled. Absence of smoke or flame does not mean the fire cannot restart.

Class/Type of Fires	
Class	**Type**
A	*Wood, Paper, Ordinary Combustibles* **Extinguish by Cooling and Quenching Using Water or Dry Chemicals**
B	*Gasoline, Oil, Grease, Other Greasy Liquids* **Extinguish by Smothering, Cooling or Heat Shielding using carbon Dioxide or Dry Chemicals**
C	*Electrical Equipment Fires* **Extinguish with Non-conducting Agents such as Carbon Dioxide or Dry Chemicals. DO NOT USE WATER.**
D	*Fires in Combustible Metals* **Extinguish by Using Specialized Extinguishing Powders**

Figure 2.20

Class of Fire/Type of Extinguisher	
Class of Fire	**Fire Extinguisher Type**
B or C	Regular Dry Chemical
A, B, C, or D	Multi-Purpose Dry Chemical
D	Purple K Dry Chemical
B or C	KCL Dry Chemical
D	Dry Powder Special Compound
B or C	Carbon Dioxide (Dry)
B or C	Halogenated Agent (Gas)
A	Water
A	Water With Anti-Freeze
A or B	Water, Loaded Steam Style
B, On Some A	Foam

Figure 2.21

Subsections 2.20 and 2.21
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What are some things to do at an accident scene to prevent another accident?
2. Name two causes of tire fires.
3. What kinds of fires is a B:C extinguisher not good for?
4. When using your extinguisher, should you get as close as possible to the fire?
5. Name some causes of vehicle fires.

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsections 2.20 and 2.21.

2.22 – Alcohol, Other Drugs and Driving

2.22.1 – *Alcohol and Driving*

Drinking alcohol and then driving is very dangerous and a serious problem. People who drink alcohol are involved in traffic accidents resulting in more than 20,000 deaths every year. Alcohol impairs muscle coordination, reaction time, depth perception and night vision. It also affects the parts of the brain that control judgment and inhibition. For some people, one drink is all it takes to show signs of impairment.

How Alcohol Works. Alcohol goes directly into the blood stream and is carried to the brain. After passing through the brain, a small percentage is removed in urine, perspiration and by breathing, while the rest is carried to the liver. The liver can only process one-third of an ounce of alcohol per hour, which is considerably less than the alcohol in a standard drink. This is a fixed rate, so only time, not black coffee or a cold shower, will sober you up. If you have drinks faster than your body can get rid of them, you will have more alcohol in your body and your driving will be more affected. The Blood Alcohol Concentration (BAC) commonly measures the amount of alcohol in your body. (See Figure 2.22.)

What Is a Drink?
It is the alcohol in drinks that affects human performance. It does not make any difference whether that alcohol comes from "a couple of beers," or from two glasses of wine, or two shots of hard liquor.

Drinks	Body Weight in Pounds								Effects
	100	120	140	160	180	200	220	240	
0	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00	Only Safe Driving Limit
1	.04	.03	.03	.02	.02	.02	.02	.02	Impairment Begins
2	.08	.06	.05	.05	.04	.04	.03	.03	Driving Skills Significantly Affected
3	.11	.09	.08	.07	.06	.06	.05	.05	
4	.15	.12	.11	.09	.08	.08	.07	.06	Some Incur Criminal Penalties
5	.19	.16	.13	.12	.11	.09	.09	.08	
6	.23	.19	.16	.14	.13	.11	.10	.09	
7	.26	.22	.19	.16	.15	.13	.12	.11	Legally Intoxicated Criminal Penalties
8	.30	.25	.21	.19	.17	.15	.14	.13	
9	.34	.28	.24	.21	.19	.17	.15	.14	
10	.38	.31	.27	.23	.21	.19	.17	.16	

Subtract .01% for each 40 minutes of drinking. One drink is 1.5 oz. of 80 proof liquor, 12 oz. of beer, or 5 oz. of table wine.

Figure 2.22

What Determines Blood Alcohol Concentration. BAC is determined by the amount of alcohol you drink (more alcohol means higher BAC), how fast you drink (faster drinking means higher BAC) and your weight (a small person does not have to drink as much to reach the same BAC).

Alcohol and the Brain. Alcohol affects more and more of the brain as BAC builds up. The first part of the brain affected controls judgment and self-control. One of the bad things about this is it can keep drinkers from knowing they are getting drunk. And, of course, good judgment and self-control are absolutely necessary for safe driving. (See Figure 2.23.)

As BAC continues to build up, muscle control, vision and coordination are affected more and more. Effects on driving may include:

- Straddling lanes.
- Quick, jerky starts.
- Not signaling, failure to use lights.
- Running stop signs and red lights.
- Improper passing.

These effects mean increased chances of a crash and losing your driver's license. Accident statistics show that the chance of a crash is much greater for drivers who have been drinking than for drivers who have not.

How Alcohol Affects Driving. All drivers are affected by drinking alcohol. Alcohol affects judgment, vision, coordination and reaction time. It causes serious driving errors, such as:

- Increased reaction time to hazards.
- Driving too fast or too slow.
- Driving in the wrong lane.
- Running over the curb.
- Weaving.

Effects Of Increasing Blood Alcohol Content

Blood Alcohol Content is the amount of alcohol in your blood recorded in milligrams of alcohol per 100 milliliters of blood. Your BAC depends on the amount of blood (which increases with weight) and the amount of alcohol you consume over time (how fast you drink). The faster you drink, the higher your BAC, as the liver can only handle about one drink per hour—the rest builds up in your blood.

BAC	Effects on Body	Effects on Driving Condition
.02	Mellow feeling, slight body warmth.	Less inhibited.
.05	Noticeable relaxation.	Less alert, less self-focused, coordination impairment begins.
.08	Definite impairment in coordination & judgment	Drunk driving limit, impaired coordination & judgment.
.10*	Noisy, possible embarrassing behavior, mood swings.	Reduction in reaction time.
.15	Impaired balance & movement, clearly drunk.	Unable to drive.
.30	Many lose consciousness.	
.40	Most lose consciousness, some die.	
.50	Breathing stops, many die.	

BAC of .10 means that 1/10 of 1 % (or 1/1000) of your total blood content is alcohol.

Figure 2.23

2.22.2 – *Other Drugs*

Besides alcohol, other legal and illegal drugs are being used more often. Laws prohibit possession or use of many drugs while on duty. They prohibit being under the influence of any "controlled substance," amphetamines (including "pep pills," "uppers" and "bennies"), narcotics or any other substance, which can make the driver unsafe. This could include a variety of prescription and over-the-counter drugs (cold medicines), which may make the driver drowsy or otherwise affect safe driving ability. However, possession and use of a drug given to a driver by a doctor is permitted if the doctor informs the driver that it will not affect safe driving ability.

Pay attention to warning labels for legitimate drugs and medicines and to doctor's orders regarding possible effects. Stay away from illegal drugs. Do not use any drug that hides fatigue, the only cure for fatigue is rest. Alcohol can make the effects of other drugs much worse. The safest rule is do not mix drugs with driving at all.

Use of drugs can lead to traffic accidents resulting in death, injury and property damage. Furthermore, it can lead to arrest, fines and jail sentences. It can also mean the end of a person's driving career.

2.23 – Staying Alert and Fit to Drive

Driving a vehicle for long hours is tiring. Even the best of drivers will become less alert. However, there are things that good drivers do to help stay alert and safe.

2.23.1 – *Be Ready to Drive*

Get Enough Sleep. Sleep is not like money. You cannot save it up ahead of time and you cannot borrow it. But, just as with money, you can go into debt with it. If you do not sleep enough, you "owe" more sleep to yourself. This debt can only be paid off by sleeping. You cannot overcome it with willpower and it won't go away by itself. The average person needs seven or eight hours of sleep every 24 hours. Leaving on a long trip when you are already tired is dangerous. If you have a long trip scheduled, make sure that you get enough sleep before you go.

Schedule Trips Safely. Try to arrange your schedule so you are not in "sleep debt" before a long trip. Your body gets used to sleeping during certain hours. If you are driving during those hours, you will be less alert. If possible, try to schedule trips for the hours you are normally awake. Many heavy motor vehicle accidents occur between midnight and 6 a.m. Tired drivers can easily fall asleep at these times, especially if they do not regularly drive at those hours. Trying to push on and finish a long trip at these times can be very dangerous.

Exercise Regularly. Resistance to fatigue and improved sleep are among the benefits of regular exercise. Try to incorporate exercise into your daily life. Instead of sitting and watching TV in your sleeper, walk or jog a few laps around the parking lot. A little bit of daily exercise will give you energy throughout the day.

Eat Healthy. It is often hard for drivers to find healthy food. But with a little extra effort, you can eat healthy, even on the road. Try to find restaurants with healthy, balanced meals. If you must eat at fast-food restaurants, pick low-fat items. Another simple way to reduce your caloric intake is to eliminate fattening snacks. Instead, try fruit or vegetables.

Avoid Medication. Many medicines can make you sleepy. Those that do have a label warning against operating vehicles or machinery. The most common medicine of this type is an ordinary cold pill. If you have to drive with a cold, you are better off suffering from the cold than from the effects of the medicine.

Visit Your Doctor. Regular checkups literally can be lifesavers. Illnesses such as diabetes, heart disease and skin and colon cancer can be detected easily and treated if found in time.

You should consult your physician or a local sleep disorder center if you suffer from frequent daytime sleepiness, have difficulty sleeping at night, take frequent naps, fall asleep at strange times, snore loudly, gasp and choke in your sleep, and/or wake up feeling as though you have not had enough sleep.

2.23.2 – *While You Are Driving*

Keep Cool. A hot, poorly ventilated vehicle can make you sleepy. Keep the window or vent cracked open or use the air conditioner, if you have one.

Take Breaks. Short breaks can keep you alert. But the time to take them is before you feel really drowsy or tired. Stop often. Walk around and inspect your vehicle. It may help to do some physical exercises. Be sure to take a mid-afternoon break and plan to sleep between midnight and 6 a.m.

Recognize the Danger Signals of Drowsy Driving. Sleep is not voluntary. If you are drowsy, you can fall asleep and never even know it. If you are drowsy, you are likely to have "micro sleeps," brief naps that last around four or five seconds. At 55 miles an hour, that is more than 100 yards, and plenty of time for a crash. Even if you are not aware of being drowsy, if you have a sleep debt you are still at risk. Here are a few ways to tell if you are about to fall asleep. If you experience any of these danger signs, take them as a warning that you could fall asleep without meaning to.

- Your eyes close or go out of focus by themselves.
- You have trouble keeping your head up.
- You cannot stop yawning.
- You have wandering, disconnected thoughts.
- You do not remember driving the last few miles.
- You drift between lanes, tailgate or miss traffic signs.
- You keep jerking the truck back into the lane.
- You have drifted off the road and narrowly missed crashing.

If you have even one of these symptoms, you may be in danger of falling asleep. Pull off the road in a safe place and take a nap.

2.23.3 – *When You Do Become Sleepy*

When you are sleepy, trying to "push on" is far more dangerous than most drivers think. It is a major cause of fatal accidents. Here are some important rules to follow:

Stop to Sleep. When your body needs sleep, sleep is the only thing that will work. If you have to make a stop anyway, make it whenever you feel the first signs of sleepiness, even if it is earlier than you planned. By getting up a little earlier the next day, you can keep on schedule without the danger of driving while you are not alert.

Take a Nap. If you cannot stop for the night, at least pull off at a safe place, such as a rest area or truck stop, and take a nap. A nap as short as a half-hour will do more to overcome fatigue than a half-hour coffee stop.

Avoid Drugs. There are no drugs that can overcome being tired. While they may keep you awake for a while, they won't make you alert. And eventually, you will be even more tired than if you had not taken them at all. Sleep is the only thing that can overcome fatigue.

Do Not. Do not rely on coffee or another source of caffeine to keep you awake. Do not count on the radio, an open window or other tricks to keep you awake.

2.23.4 – *Illness*

Once in a while, you may become so ill that you cannot operate a motor vehicle safely. If this happens to you, you must not drive. However, in case of an emergency, you may drive to the nearest place where you can safely stop.

2.24 – Hazardous Materials Rules For All Commercial Drivers

All drivers should know something about hazardous materials. You must be able to recognize hazardous cargo, and you must know whether or not you can haul it without having a hazardous materials endorsement to your CDL license.

2.24.1 – *What Are Hazardous Materials?*

Hazardous materials are products that pose a risk to health, safety and property during transportation. (See Figure 2.24.)

2.24.2 – *Why Are There Rules?*

You must follow the many rules about transporting hazardous materials. The intent of the rules is to:

- Contain the product.
- Communicate the risk.
- Ensure safe drivers and equipment.

To Contain the Product. Many hazardous products can injure or kill on contact. To protect drivers and others from contact, the rules tell shippers how to package safely. Similar rules tell drivers how to load, transport and unload bulk tanks. These are containment rules.

To Communicate the Risk. The shipper uses a shipping paper and diamond-shaped hazard labels to warn dockworkers and drivers of the risk.

Hazard Class Definitions		
Class	**Class Name**	**Example**
1	Explosives	Ammunition, Dynamite, Fireworks
2	Gases	Propane, Oxygen, Helium
3	Flammable	Gasoline Fuel, Acetone
4	Flammable Solids	Matches, Fuses
5	Oxidizers	Ammonium Nitrate, Hydrogen Peroxide
6	Poisons	Pesticides, Arsenic
7	Radioactive	Uranium, Plutonium
8	Corrosives	Hydrochloric Acid, Battery Acid
9	Miscellaneous Hazardous Materials	Formaldehyde, Asbestos
None	ORM-D (Other Regulated Material-Domestic)	Hair Spray or Charcoal
None	Combustible Liquids	Fuel Oils, Lighter Fluid

Figure 2.24

After an accident or hazardous material spill or leak, you may be injured and unable to communicate the hazards of the materials you are transporting. Firefighters and police can prevent or reduce the amount of damage or injury at the scene if they know what hazardous materials are being transported. Your life, and the lives of others, may depend on quickly locating the hazardous materials shipping papers. For that reason, you must identify shipping papers related to hazardous materials or keep them on top of other shipping papers. **You must also keep shipping papers** in a pouch on the driver's door, in clear view within reach while driving or on the driver's seat when out of the vehicle.

2.24.3 – *Lists of Regulated Products*

Placards. Placards are used to warn others of hazardous materials. Placards are signs put on the outside of a vehicle that identify the hazard class of the cargo. A placarded vehicle must have at least four identical placards. They are put on the front, rear and both sides. Placards must be readable from all four directions. They must be at least 10 3/4-inches square, turned upright on a point, in a diamond shape. Cargo tanks and other bulk packaging display the identification number of their contents on placards or orange panels.

Identification Numbers. Identification numbers are a four-digit code used by first responders to identify hazardous materials. An identification number may be used to identify more than one chemical on shipping papers. The identification number will be preceded by the letters “NA” or “UN.” The US DOT Emergency Response Guidebook (ERG) lists the chemicals and the identification numbers assigned to them.

Not all vehicles carrying hazardous materials need to have placards. The rules about placards are explained in Section 9 of this manual. You can drive a vehicle that carries hazardous materials if it does not require placards. If it requires placards, you cannot drive it unless your driver’s license has the hazardous materials endorsement. (See Figure 2.25.)

The rules require all drivers of placarded vehicles to learn how to safely load and transport hazardous products. They must have a commercial driver’s license with the hazardous materials endorsement. To get the required endorsement, you must pass a written test on material found in Section 9 of this manual. A tank endorsement is required for certain vehicles that transport liquids or gases. The liquid or gas does not have to be a hazardous material. A tank endorsement is only required if your vehicle needs a CDL and your vehicle has a permanently mounted cargo tank(s) each with an individual capacity in excess of 119 gallons with a combined aggregate capacity of 1,000 gallons or more.

Drivers who need the hazardous materials endorsement must learn the placard rules. If you do not know if your vehicle needs placards, ask your employer. Never drive a vehicle needing placards unless you have the hazardous materials endorsement. To do so is a crime. When stopped, you will be cited and not be allowed to drive your truck. It will cost you time and money. A failure to placard when needed may risk your life and others if you have an accident. Emergency help will not know of your hazardous cargo.

Hazardous materials drivers must also know which products they can load together and which they cannot. These rules are also in Section 9. Before loading a truck with more than one type of product, you must know if it is safe to load them together. If you do not know, ask your employer and consult the regulations.

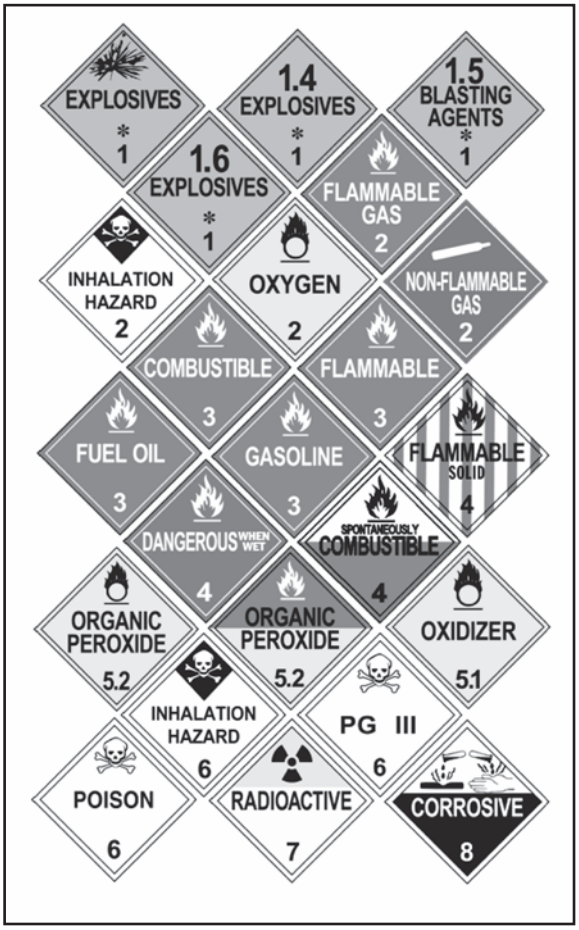


Figure 2.25

Subsections 2.22, 2.23 and 2.24
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Common medicines for colds can make you sleepy. True or False?
2. What should you do if you become sleepy while driving?
3. Coffee and a little fresh air will help a drinker sober up. True or False?
4. What is a hazardous materials placard?
5. Why are placards used?
6. What is “sleep debt”?
7. What are the danger signals of drowsy driving?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsections 2.22, 2.23 and 2.24.

SECTION 3
TRANSPORTING CARGO SAFELY

This Section Covers:
- Inspecting Cargo
- Weight and Balance
- Securing Cargo
- Cargo Needing Special Attention

You must understand basic cargo safety rules to get a CDL. If you load cargo wrong or do not secure it, it can be a danger to others and yourself. Loose cargo that falls off a vehicle can cause traffic problems and others could be hurt or killed. Loose cargo could hurt or kill you during a quick stop or crash. Your vehicle could be damaged by an overload. Steering could be affected by how a vehicle is loaded, making it more difficult to control the vehicle.

Whether or not you load and secure the cargo yourself, you are responsible for:
- Inspecting your cargo.
- Recognizing overloads and poorly balanced weight.
- Knowing your cargo is properly secured and does not obscure your view ahead or to the sides.
- Knowing your cargo does not restrict your access to emergency equipment.

If you intend to carry hazardous material that requires placards on your vehicle, you will also need to have a Hazardous Materials endorsement. Section 9 of this manual has the information you need to pass the hazardous materials test.

Federal, state and local regulations for commercial vehicle weight, securing cargo, covering loads and where you can drive large vehicles vary from place to place. Know the rules of where you will be driving.

3.1 – Inspecting Cargo
As Part of Your Pre-trip Inspection. Make sure the truck is not overloaded and the cargo is balanced and secured properly.

After Starting. Inspect the cargo and its securing devices again within the first 50 miles after beginning a trip. Make any adjustments needed.

Re-check. Re-check the cargo and securing devices as often as necessary during a trip to keep the load secure. You need to inspect again:
- After you have driven for three hours or 150 miles.
- After every break you take during driving.

3.2 – Weight and Balance
You are responsible for not being overloaded. The following are some definitions of weight you should know.

3.2.1 – *Definitions You Should Know*
Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW). The total weight of a single vehicle plus its load.
Gross Combination Weight (GCW). The total weight of a powered unit plus trailer(s), plus the cargo.
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The maximum GVW specified by the manufacturer for a single vehicle plus its load.
Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR). The maximum GCW specified by the manufacturer for a specific combination of vehicles plus its load.
Axle Weight. The weight transmitted to the ground by one axle or one set of axles.
Tire Load. The maximum safe weight a tire can carry at a specified pressure. This rating is stated on the side of each tire.
Suspension Systems. Suspension systems have a manufacturer's weight capacity rating.
Coupling Device Capacity. Coupling devices are rated for the maximum weight they can pull and/or carry.

3.2.2 – *Legal Weight Limits*

You must keep weights within legal limits. States have maximums for GVWs, GCWs and axle weights. Often, maximum axle weights are set by a bridge formula. A bridge formula permits less maximum axle weight for axles that are closer together. This is to prevent overloading bridges and roadways.

Overloading can have bad effects on steering, braking and speed control. Overloaded trucks have to go very slowly on upgrades. Worse, they may gain too much speed on downgrades. Stopping distance increases. Brakes can fail when forced to work too hard.

During bad weather or in mountains, it may not be safe to operate at legal maximum weights. Take this into account before driving.

3.2.3 – *Do Not Be Top-heavy*

The height of the vehicle's center of gravity is important for safe handling. A high center of gravity (cargo piled up high or heavy cargo on top) means you are more likely to tip over. It is most dangerous in curves or if you have to swerve to avoid a hazard. It is important to distribute the cargo so it is as low as possible. Put the heaviest parts of the cargo under the lightest parts.

3.2.4 – *Balance the Weight*

Poor weight balance can make vehicle handling unsafe. Too much weight on the steering axle can cause hard steering. It can damage the steering axle and tires. Under-loaded front axles (caused by shifting weight too far to the rear) can make the steering axle weight too light to steer safely. Too little weight on the driving axles can cause poor traction. The drive wheels may spin easily. During bad weather, the truck may not be able to keep going. Weight that is loaded so there is a high center of gravity causes greater chance of rollover. On flat bed vehicles, there is also a greater chance that the load will shift to the side or fall off. (See Figure 3.1.)

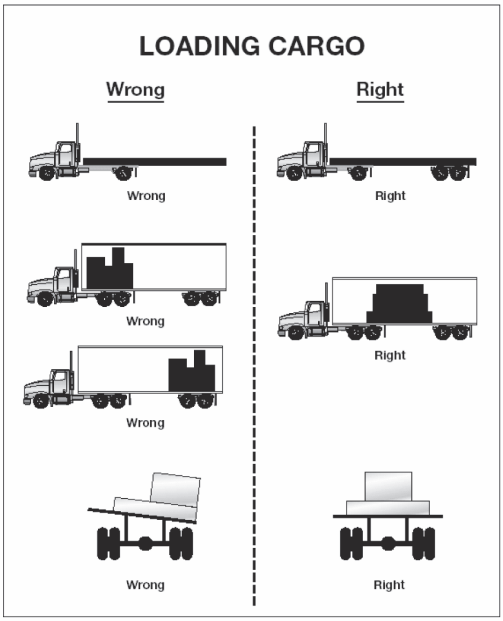


Figure 3.1

3.3 – Securing Cargo

3.3.1 – *Blocking and Bracing*

Blocking is used in the front, back and/or sides of a piece of cargo to keep it from sliding. Blocking is shaped to fit snugly against cargo. It is secured to the cargo deck to prevent cargo movement. Bracing is also used to prevent movement of cargo. Bracing goes from the upper part of the cargo to the floor and/or walls of the cargo compartment.

3.3.2 – *Cargo Tie-down*

On flatbed trailers or trailers without sides, cargo must be secured to keep it from shifting or falling off. In closed vans, tie-downs can also be important to prevent cargo shifting that may affect the handling of the vehicle. Tie-downs must be of the proper type and proper strength. Federal regulations require the aggregate working load limit of any securement system used to secure an article or group of articles against movement must be at least one-half times the weight of the article or group of articles. Proper tie-down equipment must be used, including ropes, straps, chains and tensioning devices (winches, ratchets, clinching components). Tie-downs must be attached to the vehicle correctly (hooks, bolts, rails, rings). (See figure 3.2.)

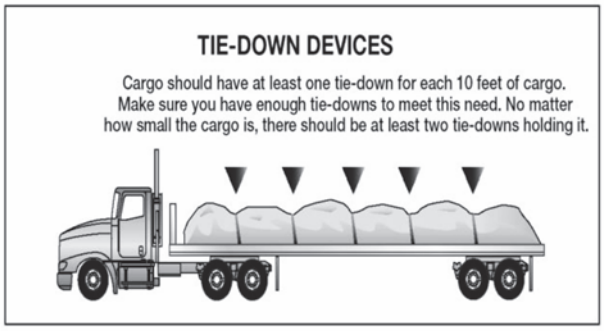


Figure 3.2

Cargo should have at least one tie-down for each 10 feet of cargo. Make sure you have enough tie-downs to meet this need. No matter how small the cargo, it should have at least two tie-downs.

There are special requirements for securing various heavy pieces of metal. Find out what they are if you are to carry such loads.

3.3.3 – *Header Boards*
Front-end header boards (“headache racks”) protect you from your cargo in case of a crash or emergency stop. Make sure the front-end structure is in good condition. The front-end structure should block the forward movement of any cargo you carry.

3.3.4 – *Covering Cargo*
There are two basic reasons for covering cargo:

- To protect people from spilled cargo.
- To protect the cargo from weather.

Spill protection is a safety requirement in many states. Be familiar with the laws in the states you drive in.

You should look at your cargo covers in the mirrors from time to time while driving. A flapping cover can tear loose, uncovering the cargo, and possibly block your view or someone else's.

3.3.5 – *Sealed and Containerized Loads*
Containerized loads generally are used when freight is carried part way by rail or ship. Delivery by truck occurs at the beginning and/or end of the journey. Some containers have their own tie-down devices or locks that attach directly to a special frame. Others have to be loaded onto flat bed trailers. They must be properly secured just like any other cargo.

You cannot inspect sealed loads, but you should check that you do not exceed gross weight and axle weight limits.

3.4 – Cargo Needing Special Attention

3.4.1 – *Dry Bulk*
Dry bulk tanks require special care because they have a high center of gravity, and the load can shift. Be extremely cautious (slow and careful) going around curves and making sharp turns.

3.4.2 – *Hanging Meat*
Hanging meat (suspended beef, pork, lamb) in a refrigerated truck can be a very unstable load with a high center of gravity. Particular caution is needed on sharp curves such as off-ramps and on-ramps. Go slowly.

3.4.3 – *Livestock*
Livestock can move around in a trailer, causing unsafe handling. With less than a full load, use false bulkheads to keep livestock bunched together. Even when bunched, special care is necessary because livestock can lean on curves. This shifts the center of gravity and makes rollover more likely.

3.4.4 – *Oversized Loads*
Over-length, over-width and/or overweight loads require special transit permits. Driving is usually limited to certain times. Special equipment may be necessary such as “wide load” signs, flashing lights, flags, etc. Such loads may require a police escort or pilot vehicles bearing warning signs and/or flashing lights. These special loads require special driving care.

Section 3
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What four things related to cargo are drivers responsible for?
2. How often must you stop while on the road to check your cargo?
3. How is Gross Combination Weight Rating different from Gross Combination Weight?
4. Name two situations where legal maximum weights may not be safe.
5. What can happen if you do not have enough weight on the front axle?
6. What is the minimum number of tie-downs for any flat bed load?
7. What is the minimum number of tie-downs for a 20-foot load?
8. Name the two basic reasons for covering cargo on an open bed.
9. What must you check before transporting a sealed load?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Section 3.

SECTION 4
TRANSPORTING PASSENGERS SAFELY

This Section Covers:

- Vehicle Inspection
- Loading and Trip Start
- On the Road
- After-trip Vehicle Inspection
- Prohibited Practices
- Use of Brake-door Interlocks

Bus drivers must have a commercial driver's license if they drive a vehicle designed to seat 16 or more persons, including the driver. Bus drivers must have a Passenger endorsement on their commercial driver's license. To obtain the endorsement, you must pass a knowledge test on Sections 2 and 4 of this manual. (If your bus has air brakes, you must also pass a knowledge test on Section 5.) You must also pass the skills/drive testing required for the class and type of passenger vehicle you drive.

4.1 – Vehicle Inspection

Before driving your bus, you must make sure it is safe. You must review the inspection report made by the previous driver. Only if defects reported earlier have been certified as repaired or not needed to be repaired, should you sign the previous driver's report. This is your certification that the defects reported earlier have been repaired.

4.1.1 – *Vehicle Systems*

Make sure the following are in good working order before driving:

- Service brakes, including air hose couplings (if your bus has a trailer or semitrailer).
- Parking brake.
- Steering mechanism.
- Lights and reflectors.
- Tires (front wheels must not have recapped or regrooved tires).
- Horn.
- Windshield wiper or wipers.
- Rear-vision mirror or mirrors.
- Coupling devices (if present).
- Wheels and rims.
- Emergency equipment.

4.1.2 – *Access Doors and Panels*

As you check the outside of the bus, close any open emergency exits. Also, close any open access panels (for baggage, restroom service, engine, etc.) before driving.

4.1.3 – *Bus Interior*

People sometimes damage unattended buses. Always check the interior of the bus before driving to ensure rider safety. Aisles and stairwells should always be clear. The following parts of your bus must be in safe, working condition:

- Each handhold and railing.
- Floor covering.
- Signaling devices, including the restroom emergency buzzer, if the bus has a restroom.
- Emergency exit handles.

The seats must be safe for riders. All seats must be securely fastened to the bus.

Never drive with an open emergency exit door or window. The "Emergency Exit" sign on an emergency door must be clearly visible. If there is a red emergency door light, it must work. Turn it on at night or any other time you use your outside lights.

4.1.4 – *Roof Hatches*
You may lock some emergency roof hatches in a partly open position for fresh air. Do not leave them open as a regular practice. Keep in mind the bus's higher clearance while driving with them open.

Make sure your bus has the fire extinguisher and emergency reflectors required by law. The bus must also have spare electrical fuses, unless equipped with circuit breakers.

4.1.5 – *Use Your Seat Belt!*
The driver's seat should have a seat belt. Always use it for safety.

4.2 – Loading and Trip Start
Do not allow riders to leave carry-on baggage in a doorway or aisle. There should be nothing in the aisle that might trip other riders. Secure baggage and freight in ways that avoid damage and:

- Allow the driver to move freely and easily.
- Allow riders to exit by any window or door in an emergency.
- Protect riders from injury if carry-ons fall or shift.

4.2.1 – *Hazardous Materials*
Watch for cargo or baggage containing hazardous materials. Most hazardous materials cannot be carried on a bus.

The Federal Hazardous Materials Table shows which materials are hazardous. They pose a risk to health, safety and property during transportation. The rules require shippers to mark containers of hazardous material with the material's name, identification number and hazard label. There are nine different 4-inch, diamond-shaped hazard labels. Watch for the diamond-shaped labels. Do not transport any hazardous material unless you are sure the rules allow it.

4.2.2 – *Forbidden Hazardous Materials*
Buses may carry small-arms ammunition labeled ORM-D, emergency hospital supplies and drugs. You can carry small amounts of some other hazardous materials if the shipper cannot send them any other way. Buses must never carry:

- Division 2.3 poison gas, liquid Class 6 poison, tear gas, irritating material.
- More than 100 pounds of solid Class 6 poisons.
- Explosives in the space occupied by people, except small-arms ammunition.
- Labeled radioactive materials in the space occupied by people.
- More than 500 pounds total of allowed hazardous materials and no more than 100 pounds of any one class.

Riders sometimes board a bus with an unlabeled hazardous material. Do not allow riders to carry on common hazards, such as car batteries or gasoline. See Sections 2 and 9 for additional information on hazardous materials.

4.2.3 – *Standee Line*
No rider may stand forward of the rear of the driver's seat. Buses designed to allow standing must have a 2-inch line on the floor or some other means of showing riders where they cannot stand. This is called the standee line. All standing riders must stay behind it.

4.2.4 – *At Your Destination*
When arriving at the destination or intermediate stops, announce:

- The location.
- Reason for stopping.
- Next departure time.
- Bus number.

Remind riders to take carry-ons with them if they get off the bus. If the aisle is on a lower level than the seats, remind riders of the step down. It is best to tell them before coming to a complete stop.

Charter bus drivers should not allow riders on the bus until departure time. This will help prevent theft or vandalism of the bus.

4.3 – On the Road

4.3.1 – *Passenger Supervision*

Many charter and intercity carriers have passenger comfort and safety rules. Mention rules about smoking, drinking or use of radio and tape players at the start of the trip. Explaining the rules at the start will help avoid trouble later on.

While driving, scan the interior of your bus as well as the road ahead, to the sides and to the rear. You may have to remind riders about rules or to keep arms and heads inside the bus.

4.3.2 – *At Stops*

Riders can stumble when getting on or off and when the bus starts or stops. Caution riders to watch their step when leaving the bus. Wait for them to sit down or brace themselves before starting. Starting and stopping should be as smooth as possible to avoid rider injury.

Occasionally, you may have a drunk or disruptive rider. You must ensure this rider's safety as well as that of others. Do not discharge such riders where it would be unsafe for them. It may be safer at the next scheduled stop or a well-lighted area where there are other people. Many carriers have guidelines for handling disruptive riders.

4.3.3 – *Common Accidents*

The Most Common Bus Accidents. Bus accidents often happen at intersections. Use caution, even if a signal or stop sign controls other traffic. School and mass transit buses sometimes scrape off mirrors or hit passing vehicles when pulling out from a bus stop. Remember the clearance your bus needs and watch for poles and tree limbs at stops. Know the size of the gap your bus needs to accelerate and merge with traffic. Wait for the gap to open before leaving the stop. Never assume other drivers will brake to give you room when you signal or start to pull out.

4.3.4 – *Speed on Curves*

Accidents on curves result from excessive speed, often when rain or snow has made the road slippery. Every banked curve has a safe “design speed.” In good weather, the posted speed is safe for cars but it may be too high for many buses. With good traction, the bus may roll over; with poor traction, it might slide off the curve. Reduce speed for curves. If your bus leans toward the outside on a banked curve, you are driving too fast.

4.3.5 – *Railroad-highway Crossings Stops*

Stop at Railroad Crossings

- Stop your bus between 15 and 50 feet before railroad crossings.
- Listen and look in both directions for trains. You should open your forward door if it improves your ability to see or hear an approaching train.
- Before crossing after a train has passed, make sure there is not another train coming in the other direction on other tracks.
- If your bus has a manual transmission, never change gears while crossing the tracks.
- You do not have to stop, but must slow down and carefully check for other vehicles:
  - —At streetcar crossings.
  - —Where a policeman or flagman is directing traffic.
  - —If a traffic signal is green.
  - —At crossings marked as “exempt” or “abandoned.”

4.3.6 – *Drawbridges*

Stop at Drawbridges. Stop at drawbridges that do not have a signal light or traffic control attendant. Stop at least 50 feet before the draw of the bridge. Look to make sure the draw is completely closed before crossing. You do not need to stop, but must slow down and make sure it is safe, when:

- There is a traffic light showing green.
- The bridge has an attendant or traffic officer who controls traffic whenever the bridge opens.

4.4 – After-trip Vehicle Inspection

Inspect your bus at the end of each shift. If you work for an interstate carrier, you must complete a written inspection report for each bus driven. The report must specify each bus and list any defect that would affect safety or result in a breakdown. If there are no defects, the report should say so.

Riders sometime damage safety-related parts, such as handholds, seats, emergency exits and windows. If you report this damage at the end of a shift, mechanics can make repairs before the bus goes out again. Mass transit drivers should also make sure passenger signaling devices and brake-door interlocks work properly.

4.5 – Prohibited Practices

- Avoid fueling your bus with riders on board unless absolutely necessary. Never refuel in a closed building with riders on board.
- Do not talk with riders or engage in any other distracting activity while driving.
- Do not tow or push a disabled bus with riders aboard the vehicle, unless getting off would be unsafe. Only tow or push the bus to the nearest safe spot to discharge passengers. Follow your employer's guidelines on towing or pushing disabled buses.

4.6 – Use of Brake-door Interlocks

Urban mass transit coaches may have a brake and accelerator interlock system. The interlock applies the brakes and holds the throttle in idle position when the rear door is open. The interlock releases when you close the rear door. Do not use this safety feature in place of the parking brake.

Section 4
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Name some things to check in the interior of a bus during a pre-trip inspection.
2. What are some hazardous materials you can transport by bus?
3. What are some hazardous materials you cannot transport by bus?
4. What is a standee line?
5. Does it matter where you make a disruptive passenger get off the bus?
6. How far from a railroad crossing should you stop?
7. When must you stop before crossing a drawbridge?
8. Describe from memory the “prohibited practices” listed in the manual.
9. The rear door of a transit bus has to be open to put on the parking brake. True or False?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Section 4.

SECTION 5
AIR BRAKES

This Section Covers:

- The Parts of an Air Brake System
- Dual Air Brake
- Inspecting Air Brake Systems
- Using Air Brakes

If you want to drive a truck or bus with air brakes or pull a trailer with air brakes, you need to study this section. If you want to pull a trailer with air brakes, you also need to study Section 6, Combination Vehicles.

Air brakes use compressed air to make the brakes work. Air brakes are a good and safe way of stopping large and heavy vehicles, but the brakes must be well maintained and used properly.

Air brakes are really three different braking systems: service brake, parking brake and emergency brake.

- The service brake system applies and releases the brakes when you use the brake pedal during normal driving.
- The parking brake system applies and releases the parking brakes when you use the parking brake control.
- The emergency brake system uses parts of the service and parking brake systems to stop the vehicle in a brake system failure.

The parts of these systems are discussed in greater detail below.

5.1 – The Parts of an Air Brake System

There are many parts to an air brake system. You should know about the parts discussed here.

5.1.1 – *Air Compressor*

The air compressor pumps air into the air storage tanks (reservoirs). The air compressor is connected to the engine through gears or a V-belt. The compressor may be air cooled or may be cooled by the engine cooling system. It may have its own oil supply or be lubricated by engine oil. If the compressor has its own oil supply, check the oil level before driving.

5.1.2 – *Air Compressor Governor*

The governor controls when the air compressor will pump air into the air storage tanks. When air tank pressure rises to the “cut-out” level (around 125 pounds per-square-inch or “psi”), the governor stops the compressor from pumping air. When the tank pressure falls to the “cut-in” pressure (around 100 psi), the governor allows the compressor to start pumping again.

5.1.3 – *Air Storage Tanks*

Air storage tanks are used to hold compressed air. The number and size of air tanks varies among vehicles. The tanks will hold enough air to allow the brakes to be used several times, even if the compressor stops working.

5.1.4 – *Air Tank Drains*

Compressed air usually has some water and compressor oil in it, which is bad for the air brake system. For example, the water can freeze in cold weather and cause brake failure. The water and oil tend to collect in the bottom of the air tank. Be sure that you drain the air tanks completely. Each air tank is equipped with a drain valve in the bottom. There are two types:

1. **Manually operated.** By turning a quarter turn or by pulling a cable. You must drain the tanks yourself at the end of each day of driving. (See Figure 5.1.)

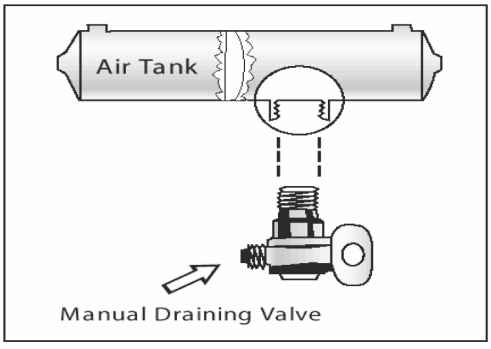


Figure 5.1

2. **Automatic.** The water and oil are automatically expelled. These tanks may be equipped for manual draining as well.

Automatic air tanks are available with electric heating devices. These help prevent freezing of the automatic drain in cold weather.

5.1.5 – *Alcohol Evaporator*

Some air brake systems have an alcohol evaporator to put alcohol into the air system. This helps to reduce the risk of ice in air brake valves and other parts during cold weather. Ice inside the system can make the brakes stop working.

Check the alcohol container and fill up as necessary, every day during cold weather. Daily air tank drainage is still needed to get rid of water and oil (unless the system has automatic drain valves).

5.1.6 – *Safety Valve*

A safety relief valve is installed in the first tank the air compressor pumps air to. The safety valve protects the tank and the rest of the system from too much pressure. The valve is usually set to open at 150 psi. If the safety valve releases air, something is wrong. Have the fault fixed by a mechanic.

5.1.7 – *The Brake Pedal*

You apply the brakes by pushing down the brake pedal (also called the “foot valve” or “treadle valve”). Pushing the pedal down harder applies more air pressure. Letting up on the brake pedal reduces the air pressure and releases the brakes. Releasing the brakes lets some compressed air go out of the system, so the air pressure in the tanks is reduced. It must be made up by the air compressor. Pressing and releasing the pedal unnecessarily can let air out faster than the compressor can replace it. If the pressure gets too low, the brakes will not work.

5.1.8 – *Foundation Brakes*

Foundation brakes are used at each wheel. The most common type is the S-cam drum brake. The parts of the brake are discussed below.

Brake Drums, Shoes and Linings. Brake drums are located on each end of the vehicle's axles. The wheels are bolted to the drums. The braking mechanism is inside the drum. To stop, the brake shoes and linings are pushed against the inside of the drum. This causes friction, which slows the vehicle (and creates heat). The heat a drum can take without damage depends on how hard and how long the brakes are used. Too much heat can make the brakes stop working.

S-cam Brakes. When you push the brake pedal, air is let into each brake chamber. Air pressure pushes the rod out, moving the slack adjuster, thus twisting the brake camshaft. This turns the S-cam (so called because it is shaped like the letter “S”). The S-cam forces the brake shoes away from one another and presses them against the inside of the brake drum. When you release the brake pedal, the S-cam rotates back and a spring pulls the brake shoes away from the drum, letting the wheels roll freely again. (See Figure 5.2.)

Wedge Brakes. In this type of brake, the brake chamber push rod pushes a wedge directly between the ends of two brake shoes. This shoves them apart and against the inside of the brake drum. Wedge brakes may have a single brake chamber or two brake chambers, pushing wedges in at both ends of the brake shoes. Wedge-type brakes may be self-adjusting or may require manual adjustment.

Disc Brakes. In air-operated disc brakes, air pressure acts on a brake chamber and slack adjuster, like S-cam brakes. But instead of the S-cam, a “power screw” is used. The pressure of the brake chamber on the slack adjuster turns the power screw. The power screw clamps the disc or rotor between the brake lining pads of a caliper, similar to a large C-clamp.

Wedge brakes and disc brakes are less common than S-cam brakes.

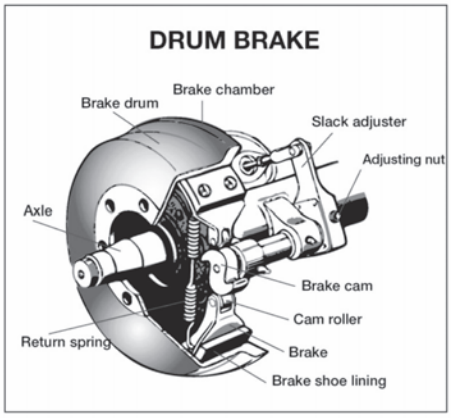


Figure 5.2

5.1.9 – *Supply Pressure Gauges*
All vehicles with air brakes have a pressure gauge connected to the air tank. If the vehicle has a dual air brake system, there will be a gauge for each half of the system (or a single gauge with two needles). Dual systems will be discussed later. These gauges tell you how much pressure is in the air tanks.

5.1.10 – *Application Pressure Gauge*
This gauge shows how much air pressure you are applying to the brakes. (This gauge is not on all vehicles.) Increasing application pressure to hold the same speed means the brakes are fading. You should slow down and use a lower gear. The need for increased pressure can also be caused by brakes out of adjustment, air leaks or mechanical problems.

5.1.11 – *Low Air Pressure Warning*
A low air pressure warning signal is required on vehicles with air brakes. A warning signal you can see must come on before the air pressure in the tanks falls below 60 psi (or one-half the compressor governor cut-out pressure on older vehicles). The warning is usually a red light. A buzzer may also come on.

Another type of warning is the “wig wag.” This device drops a mechanical arm into your view when the pressure in the system drops below 60 psi. An automatic wig wag will rise out of your view when the pressure in the system goes above 60 psi. The manual reset type must be placed in the “out of view” position manually. It will not stay in place until the pressure in the system is above 60 psi.

On large buses it is common for the low pressure warning devices to signal at 80-85 psi.

5.1.12 – *Stop Light Switch*
Drivers behind you must be warned when you put your brakes on. The air brake system does this with an electric switch that works by air pressure. The switch turns on the brake lights when you put on the air brakes.

5.1.13 – *Front Brake Limiting Valve*
Some older vehicles (made before 1975) have a front brake limiting valve and a control in the cab. The control is usually marked “normal” and “slippery.” When you put the control in the “slippery” position, the limiting valve cuts the “normal” air pressure to the front brakes by half. Limiting valves were used to reduce the chance of the front wheels skidding on slippery surfaces. However, they actually reduce the stopping power of the vehicle. Front-wheel braking is good under all conditions. Tests have shown front-wheel skids from braking are not likely, even on ice. Make sure the control is in the “normal” position to have normal stopping power.

Many vehicles have automatic front-wheel limiting valves. They reduce the air to the front brakes except when the brakes are put on very hard (60 psi or more application pressure). These valves cannot be controlled by the driver.

5.1.14 – *Spring Brakes*
All trucks, truck tractors and buses must be equipped with emergency brakes and parking brakes. They must be held on by mechanical force (because air pressure can eventually leak away). Spring brakes are usually used to meet these needs. When driving, powerful springs are held back by air pressure. If the air pressure is removed, the springs put on the brakes. A parking brake control in the cab allows the driver to let the air out of the spring brakes. This lets the springs put the brakes on. A leak in the air brake system, which causes all the air to be lost, will also cause the springs to put on the brakes.

Tractor and straight truck spring brakes will come fully on when air pressure drops to a range of 20 to 45 psi (typically 20 to 30 psi). Do not wait for the brakes to come on automatically. When the low air pressure warning light and buzzer first come on, bring the vehicle to a safe stop right away while you can still control the brakes.

The braking power of spring brakes depends on the brakes being in adjustment. If the brakes are not adjusted properly, neither the regular brakes nor the emergency/parking brakes will work right.

5.1.15 – *Parking Brake Controls*

In newer vehicles with air brakes, you put on the parking brakes using a diamond-shaped, yellow, push-pull control knob. You pull the knob out to put the parking brakes (spring brakes) on and push it in to release them. On older vehicles, the parking brakes may be controlled by a lever. Use the parking brakes whenever you park.

Caution: Never push the brake pedal down when the spring brakes are on. If you do, the brakes could be damaged by the combined forces of the springs and the air pressure. Many brake systems are designed so this will not happen. But not all systems are set up that way, and those that are may not always work. It is much better to develop the habit of not pushing the brake pedal down when the spring brakes are on.

Modulating Control Valves. In some vehicles a control handle on the dash board may be used to apply the spring brakes gradually. This is called a "modulating valve." It is spring-loaded so you have a feel for the braking action. The more you move the control lever, the harder the spring brakes come on. They work this way so you can control the spring brakes if the service brakes fail. When parking a vehicle with a modulating control valve, move the lever as far as it will go and hold it in place with the locking device.

Dual Parking Control Valves. When main air pressure is lost, the spring brakes come on. Some vehicles, such as buses, have a separate air tank which can be used to release the spring brakes. This is so you can move the vehicle in an emergency. One of the valves is a push-pull type and is used to put on the spring brakes for parking. The other valve is spring loaded in the "out" position. When you push the control in, air from the separate air tank releases the spring brakes so you can move. When you release the button, the spring brakes come on again. There is only enough air in the separate tank to do this a few times. Therefore, plan carefully when moving. Otherwise, you may be stopped in a dangerous location when the separate air supply runs out. (See Figure 5.3.)

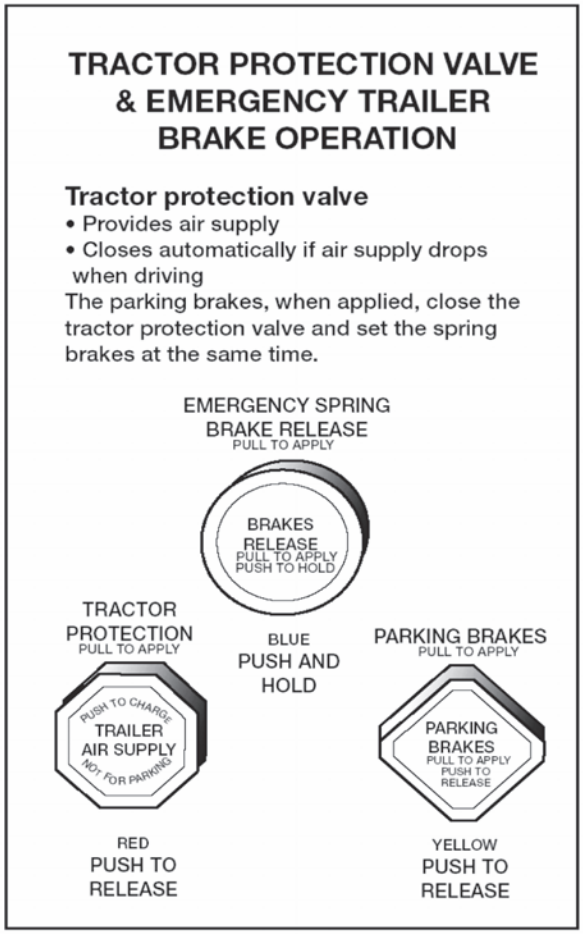


Figure 5.3

5.1.16 – *Antilock Braking Systems (ABS)*

Truck tractors with air brakes built on or after March 1, 1997, and other air brakes vehicles (trucks, buses, trailers and converter dollies) built on or after March 1, 1998, are required to be equipped with antilock brakes. Many commercial vehicles built before these dates have been voluntarily equipped with ABS. Check the certification label for the date of manufacture to determine if your vehicle is equipped with ABS. ABS is a computerized system that keeps your wheels from locking up during hard brake applications.

Vehicles with ABS have yellow malfunction lamps to tell you if something is not working.

Tractors, trucks and buses will have yellow ABS malfunction lamps on the instrument panel.

Trailers will have yellow ABS malfunction lamps on the left side, either on the front or rear corner. Dollies manufactured on or after March 1, 1998, are required to have a lamp on the left side.

On newer vehicles, the malfunction lamp comes on at start-up for a bulb check and then goes out quickly. On older systems, the lamp could stay on until you are driving over 5 mph.

If the lamp stays on after the bulb check or goes on once you are under way, you may have lost ABS control at one or more wheels.

In the case of towed units manufactured before it was required by the Department of Transportation, it may be difficult to tell if the unit is equipped with ABS. Look under the vehicle for the electronic control unit (ECU) and wheel speed sensor wires coming from the back of the brakes.

ABS is an addition to your normal brakes. It does not decrease or increase your normal braking capability. ABS only activates when wheels are about to lock up.

ABS does not necessarily shorten your stopping distance, but it does help you keep the vehicle under control during hard braking.

Subsection 5.1
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Why must air tanks be drained?
2. What is a supply pressure gauge used for?
3. All vehicles with air brakes must have a low air pressure warning signal. True or False?
4. What are spring brakes?
5. Front-wheel brakes are good under all conditions. True or False?
6. How do you know if your vehicle is equipped with antilock brakes?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsection 5.1.

5.2 – Dual Air Brake

Most heavy-duty vehicles use dual air brake systems for safety. A dual air brake system has two separate air brake systems, which use a single set of brake controls. Each system has its own air tanks, hoses, lines, etc. One system typically operates the regular brakes on the rear axle or axles. The other system operates the regular brakes on the front axle (and possibly one rear axle). Both systems supply air to the trailer (if there is one). The first system is called the "primary" system. The other is called the "secondary" system. (See Figure 5.4.)

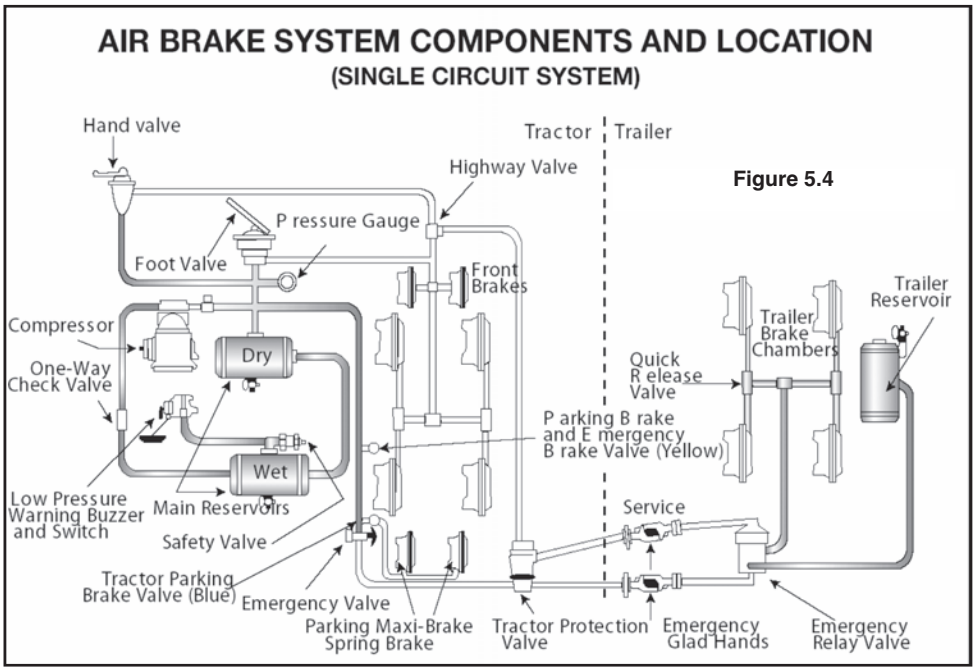


Figure 5.4

Before driving a vehicle with a dual air system, allow time for the air compressor to build up a minimum of 100 psi pressure in both the primary and secondary systems. Watch the primary and secondary air pressure gauges (or needles, if the system has two needles in one gauge). Pay attention to the low air pressure warning light and buzzer. The warning light and buzzer should shut off when air pressure in both systems rises to a value set by the manufacturer. This value must be greater than 60 psi.

The warning light and buzzer should come on before the air pressure drops below 60 psi in either system. If this happens while driving, you should stop right away and safely park the vehicle. If one air system is very low on pressure, either the front or the rear brakes will not be operating fully. This means it will take you longer to stop. Bring the vehicle to a safe stop and have the air brakes system fixed.

5.3 – Inspecting Air Brake Systems

You should use the basic seven-step inspection procedure described in Section 2 to inspect your vehicle. There are more items to inspect on a vehicle with air brakes than one without them. These items are discussed below, in the order they fit into the seven-step method.

5.3.1 – *During Step 2 Engine Compartment Checks*

Check Air Compressor Drive Belt (if compressor is belt-driven). If the air compressor is belt-driven, check the condition and tightness of the belt. It should be in good condition.

5.3.2 – *During Step 5 Walk-around Inspection*

Check Slack Adjusters on S-cam Brakes. Park on level ground and chock the wheels to prevent the vehicle from moving. Release the parking brakes so you can move the slack adjusters. Use gloves and pull hard on each slack adjuster that you can reach. If a slack adjuster moves more than about 1 inch where the push rod attaches to it, it probably needs adjustment. Adjust it or have it adjusted. Vehicles with too much brake slack can be very hard to stop. Out-of-adjustment brakes are the most common problem found in roadside inspections. Be safe. Check the slack adjusters.

All vehicles built since 1994 have automatic slack adjustors. Even though automatic slack adjustors adjust themselves during full brake applications, they must be checked.

Automatic adjusters should not have to be manually adjusted except when performing maintenance on the brakes and during installation of the slack adjusters. In a vehicle equipped with automatic adjusters, when the pushrod stroke exceeds the legal brake adjustment limit, it is an indication that a mechanical problem exists in the adjuster itself, a problem with the related foundation brake components, or that the adjuster was improperly installed.

The manual adjustment of an automatic adjuster to bring a brake pushrod stroke within legal limits is generally masking a mechanical problem and is not fixing it. Further routine adjustment of most automatic adjusters will likely result in premature wear of the adjuster itself. It is recommended that when brakes equipped with automatic adjusters are found to be out of adjustment, drivers take the vehicle to a repair facility as soon as possible to have the problem corrected. The manual adjustment of automatic slack adjusters is dangerous because it may give the driver a false sense of security regarding the effectiveness of the braking system.

The manual adjustment of an automatic adjuster should only be used as a temporary measure to correct the adjustment in an emergency situation as it is likely the brake will soon be back out of adjustment since this procedure usually does not fix the underlying adjustment problem.

(**Note:** Automatic slack adjusters are made by different manufacturers and do not all operate the same. Therefore, the specific manufacturer's service manual should be consulted prior to troubleshooting a brake adjustment problem.)

Check Brake Drums (or Discs), Linings and Hoses. Brake drums (or discs) must not have cracks longer than one-half the width of the friction area. Linings (friction material) must not be loose or soaked with oil or grease. They must not be dangerously thin. Mechanical parts must be in place, not broken or missing. Check the air hoses connected to the brake chambers to make sure they are not cut or worn due to rubbing.

5.3.3 – *Step 7 Final Air Brake Check*

Do the following checks instead of the hydraulic brake check shown in Section 2, Step 7: Check Brake System.

Test Low Pressure Warning Signal. Shut the engine off when you have enough air pressure so that the low pressure warning signal is not on. Turn the electrical power on and step on and off the brake pedal to reduce air tank pressure. The low air pressure warning signal must come on before the pressure drops to less than 60 psi in the air tank (or tank with the lowest air pressure, in dual air systems). (See Figure 5.5.)

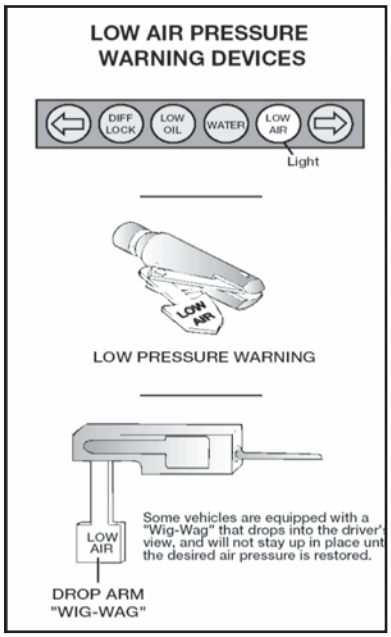


Figure 5.5

If the warning signal does not work, you could lose air pressure and you would not know it. This could cause sudden emergency braking in a single-circuit air system. In dual systems, the stopping distance will be increased. Only limited braking can be done before the spring brakes come on.

Check That Spring Brakes Come On Automatically. Continue to fan off the air pressure by stepping on and off the brake pedal to reduce tank pressure. The tractor protection valve and parking brake valve should close (pop out) on a tractor-trailer combination vehicle, and the parking brake valve should close (pop out) on other combination and single vehicle types when the air pressure falls to the manufacturer's specification (20-45 psi). This will cause the spring brakes to come on.

Check Rate of Air Pressure Buildup. When the engine is at operating rpms, the pressure should build from 85 to 100 psi within 45 seconds in dual air systems. (If the vehicle has larger than minimum air tanks, the buildup time can be longer and still be safe. Check the manufacturer's specifications.) In single air systems (pre-1975), typical requirements are pressure buildup from 50 to 90 psi within three minutes with the engine at an idle speed of 600-900 rpms.

If air pressure does not build up fast enough, your pressure may drop too low during driving, requiring an emergency stop. Do not drive until you get the problem fixed.

Test Air Leakage Rate. With a fully-charged air system (typically 125 psi), turn off the engine, release the parking brake (push in) and time the air pressure drop. The loss rate should be less than 2 psi in one minute for single vehicles and less than 3 psi in one minute for combination vehicles. With the air pressure built up to governor cut-off (120-140 psi), shut off the engine, chock your wheels (if necessary), release the parking brake (all vehicles) and the tractor protection valve (combination vehicle), and fully apply the foot brake. Hold the foot brake for one minute. Check the air gauge to see if the air pressure drops more than 3 pounds in one minute (single vehicle) or 4 pounds in one minute (combination vehicle). If the air pressure falls more than 3 psi in one minute for single vehicles (more than 4 psi for combination vehicles), the air loss rate is too much. Check for air leaks and fix before driving the vehicle. Otherwise, you could lose your brakes while driving.

Check Air Compressor Governor Cut-in and Cut-out Pressures. Pumping by the air compressor should start at about 100 psi and stop at about 125 psi. (Check manufacturer's specifications.) Run the engine at a fast idle. The air governor should cut-out the air compressor at about the manufacturer's specified pressure. The air pressure shown by your gauge(s) will stop rising. With the engine idling, step on and off the brake to reduce the air tank pressure. The compressor should cut-in at about the manufacturer's specified cut-in pressure. The pressure should begin to rise.

If the air governor does not work as described above, it may need to be fixed. A governor that does not work properly may not keep enough air pressure for safe driving.

Test Parking Brake. Stop the vehicle, put the parking brake on and gently pull against it in a low gear to test that the parking brake will hold.

Test Service Brakes. Wait for normal air pressure, release the parking brake, move the vehicle forward slowly (about 5 mph) and apply the brakes firmly using the brake pedal. Note any vehicle "pulling" to one side, unusual feel or delayed stopping action. This test may show you problems, which you otherwise would not know about until you needed the brakes on the road.

Subsection 5.2 and 5.3
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What is a dual air brake system?
2. What are the slack adjusters?
3. How can you check slack adjusters?
4. How can you test the low pressure warning signal?
5. How can you check that the spring brakes come on automatically?
6. What are the maximum leakage rates?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsections 5.2 and 5.3.

5.4 – Using Air Brakes

5.4.1 – *Normal Stops*

Push the brake pedal down. Control the pressure so the vehicle comes to a smooth, safe stop. If you have a manual transmission, do not push the clutch in until the engine rpm is down close to idle. When stopped, select a starting gear.

5.4.2 – *Braking with Antilock Brakes*

When you brake hard on slippery surfaces in a vehicle without ABS, your wheels may lock up. When your steering wheels lock up, you lose steering control. When your other wheels lock up, you may skid, jackknife or even spin the vehicle.

ABS helps you avoid wheel lock up. The computer senses impending lock up and reduces the braking pressure to a safe level, and you maintain control.

You may or may not be able to stop faster with ABS, but you should be able to steer around an obstacle while braking and avoid skids caused by overbraking.

Having ABS on only the tractor, only the trailer, or even on only one axle still gives you more control over the vehicle during braking. Brake normally.

When only the tractor has ABS, you should be able to maintain steering control and there is less chance of jackknifing. But, keep your eye on the trailer and let up on the brakes (if you can safely do so) if it begins to swing out.

When only the trailer has ABS, the trailer is less likely to swing out, but if you lose steering control or start a tractor jackknife, let up on the brakes (if you can safely do so) until you gain control.

When you drive a tractor-trailer combination with ABS, you should brake as you always have. In other words:

- Use only the braking force necessary to stop safely and stay in control.
- Brake the same way, regardless of whether you have ABS on the tractor, the trailer or both.
- As you slow down, monitor your tractor and trailer and back off the brakes (if it is safe to do so) to stay in control.

There is only one exception to this procedure: If you always drive a straight truck or combination with working ABS on all axles, in an emergency stop, you can fully apply the brakes.

Without ABS, you still have normal brake functions. Drive and brake as you always have.

Remember: If your ABS malfunctions, you still have regular brakes. Drive normally, but get the system serviced soon.

5.4.3 – *Emergency Stops*

If somebody suddenly pulls out in front of you, your natural response is to hit the brakes. This is a good response if there is enough distance to stop and you use the brakes correctly.

You should brake in a way that will keep your vehicle in a straight line and allow you to turn if it becomes necessary. You can use the "controlled braking" method or the "stab braking" method.

Controlled Braking. With this method, you apply the brakes as hard as you can without locking the wheels. Keep steering wheel movements very small while doing this. If you need to make a larger steering adjustment or if the wheels lock, release the brakes. Re-apply the brakes as soon as you can.

Stab Braking. Apply your brakes all the way. Release brakes when wheels lock up. As soon as the wheels start rolling, apply the brakes fully again. (It can take up to one second for the wheels to start rolling after you release the brakes. If you re-apply the brakes before the wheels start rolling, the vehicle will not straighten out.)

5.4.4 – *Stopping Distance*

Stopping distance was described in Section 2: Speed and Stopping Distance. With air brakes there is an added delay —"Brake Lag." This is the time required for the brakes to work after the brake pedal is pushed. With hydraulic brakes (used on cars and light/medium trucks), the brakes work instantly. However, with air brakes, it takes a little time (one-half second or more) for the air to flow through the lines to the brakes. Thus, the total stopping distance for vehicles with air brake systems is made up of four different factors.

Perception Distance + Reaction Distance + Brake Lag Distance + Braking Distance = Total Stopping Distance

The air brake lag distance at 55 mph on dry pavement adds about 32 feet. So at 55 mph for an average driver under good traction and brake conditions, the total stopping distance is over 450 feet. (See Figure 5.6.)

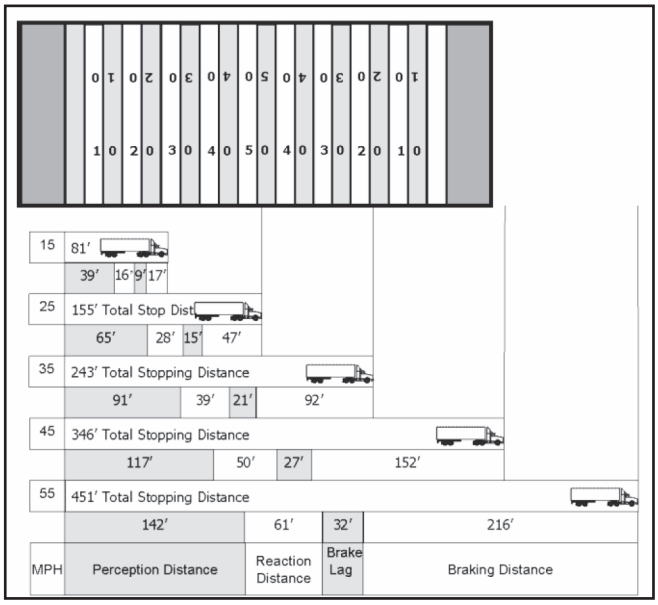


Figure 5.6

5.4.5 – *Brake Fading or Failure*

Brakes are designed so brake shoes or pads rub against the brake drum or disks to slow the vehicle. Braking creates heat, but brakes are designed to take a lot of heat. However, brakes can fade or fail from excessive heat caused by using them too much and not relying on the engine braking effect.

Excessive use of the service brakes results in overheating and leads to brake fade. Brake fade results from excessive heat causing chemical changes in the brake lining, which reduce friction and also causing expansion of the brake drums. As the overheated drums expand, the brake shoes and linings have to move farther to contact the drums, and the force of this contact is reduced. Continued overuse may increase brake fade until the vehicle cannot be slowed down or stopped.

Brake fade is also affected by adjustment. To safely control a vehicle, every brake must do its share of the work. Brakes out of adjustment will stop doing their share before those that are in adjustment. The other brakes can then overheat and fade, and there will not be enough braking available to control the vehicle(s). Brakes can get out of adjustment quickly, especially when they are hot. Therefore, check brake adjustment often.

5.4.6 – *Proper Braking Technique*

Remember: The use of brakes on a long and/or steep downgrade is only a supplement to the braking effect of the engine. Once the vehicle is in the proper low gear, the following is the proper braking technique:

1. Apply the brakes just hard enough to feel a definite slowdown.
2. When your speed has been reduced to approximately 5 mph below your "safe" speed, release the brakes. (This application should last for about three seconds.)
3. When your speed has increased to your "safe" speed, repeat Steps 1 and 2.

For example, if your “safe” speed is 40 mph, you would not apply the brakes until your speed reaches 40 mph. You now apply the brakes hard enough to gradually reduce your speed to 35 mph and then release the brakes. Repeat this as often as necessary until you have reached the end of the downgrade.

5.4.7 – *Low Air Pressure*

If the low air pressure warning comes on, stop and safely park your vehicle as soon as possible. There might be an air leak in the system. Controlled braking is possible only while enough air remains in the air tanks. The spring brakes will come on when the air pressure drops into the range of 20 to 45 psi. A heavily loaded vehicle will take a long distance to stop because the spring brakes do not work on all axles. Lightly loaded vehicles or vehicles on slippery roads may skid out of control when the spring brakes come on. It is much safer to stop while there is enough air in the tanks to use the foot brakes.

5.4.8 – *Parking Brakes*

Any time you park, use the parking brakes, except as noted below. Pull the parking brake control knob out to apply the parking brakes and push it in to release. The control will be a yellow, diamond-shaped knob labeled “parking brakes” on newer vehicles. On older vehicles, it may be a round blue knob or some other shape (including a lever that swings from side to side or up and down).

Do not use the parking brakes if the brakes are very hot (from just having come down a steep grade) or if the brakes are very wet in freezing temperatures. If they are used while they are very hot, they can be damaged by the heat. If they are used in freezing temperatures when the brakes are very wet, they can freeze so the vehicle cannot move. Use wheel chocks on a level surface to hold the vehicle. Let hot brakes cool before using the parking brakes. If the brakes are wet, use the brakes lightly while driving in a low gear to heat and dry them.

If your vehicle does not have automatic air tank drains, drain your air tanks at the end of each working day to remove moisture and oil. Otherwise, the brakes could fail.

Never leave your vehicle unattended without applying the parking brakes or chocking the wheels. Your vehicle might roll away and cause injury and damage.

Subsection 5.4
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Why should you be in the proper gear before starting down a hill?
2. What factors can cause brakes to fade or fail?
3. The use of brakes on a long, steep downgrade is only a supplement to the braking effect of the engine. True or False?
4. If you are away from your vehicle only a short time, you do not need to use the parking brake. True or False?
5. How often should you drain air tanks?
6. How do you brake when you drive a tractor-trailer combination with ABS?
7. You still have normal brake functions if your ABS is not working. True or False?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsection 5.4.

SECTION 6
COMBINATION VEHICLES

This Section Covers:

- Driving Combination Vehicles Safely
- Combination Vehicle Air Brakes
- Antilock Brake Systems
- Coupling and Uncoupling
- Inspecting a Combination Vehicle

This section provides information needed to pass the tests for combination vehicles (tractor-trailer, doubles, triples, straight truck with trailer). The information is only to give you the minimum knowledge needed for driving common combination vehicles. You should also study Section 7 if you need to pass the test for doubles and triples.

6.1 – Driving Combination Vehicles Safely

Combination vehicles are usually heavier, longer and require more driving skill than single commercial vehicles. This means that drivers of combination vehicles need more knowledge and skill than drivers of single vehicles. In this section, important safety factors are discussed that apply specifically to combination vehicles.

6.1.1 – *Rollover Risks*

More than half of truck driver deaths in crashes are the result of truck rollovers. When more cargo is piled up in a truck, the "center of gravity" moves higher up from the road. The truck becomes easier to turn over. Fully loaded rigs are 10 times more likely to roll over in a crash than empty rigs.

Two things will help prevent rollover: keep the cargo as close to the ground as possible and drive slowly around turns. Keeping cargo low is even more important in combination vehicles than in straight trucks. Also, keep the load centered on your rig. If the load is to one side so it makes a trailer lean, a rollover is more likely. Make sure your cargo is centered and spread out as much as possible. (Cargo distribution is covered in Section 3.)

Rollovers happen when you turn too fast. Drive slowly around corners, on-ramps and off-ramps. Avoid quick lane changes, especially when fully loaded.

6.1.2 – *Steer Gently*

Trucks with trailers have a dangerous "crack-the-whip" effect. When you make a quick lane change, the crack-the-whip effect can turn the trailer over. There are many accidents where only the trailer has overturned.

"Rearward amplification" causes the crack-the-whip effect. Figure 6.1 shows eight types of combination vehicles and the rearward amplification each has in a quick lane change. Rigs with the least crack-the-whip effect are shown at the top and those with the most, at the bottom. Rearward amplification of 2.0 in the chart means that the rear trailer is twice as likely to turn over as the tractor. You can see that triples have a rearward amplification of 3.5. This means you can roll the last trailer of triples 3.5 times as easily as a five-axle tractor.

Steer gently and smoothly when you are pulling trailers. If you make a sudden movement with your steering wheel, your trailer could tip over. Follow far enough behind other vehicles (at least one second for each 10 feet of your vehicle length, plus another second if going over 40 mph). Look far enough down the road to avoid being surprised and having to make a sudden lane change. At night, drive slowly enough to see obstacles with your headlights before it is too late to change lanes or stop gently. Slow down to a safe speed before going into a turn.

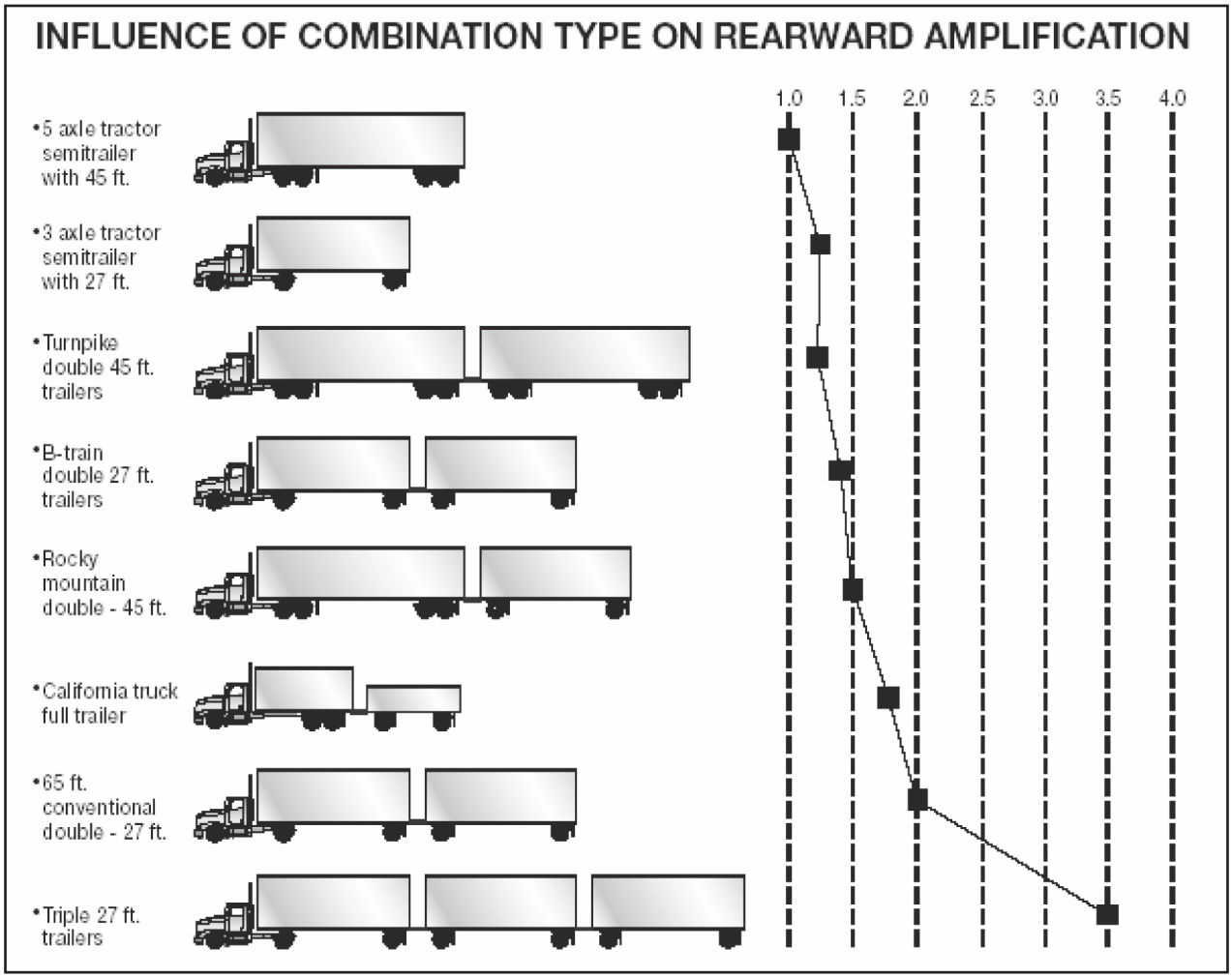


Figure 6.1

6.1.3 – *Brake Early*

Control your speed whether fully loaded or empty. Large combination vehicles take longer to stop when they are empty than when they are fully loaded. When lightly loaded, the very stiff suspension springs and strong brakes give poor traction and make it very easy to lock up the wheels. Your trailer can swing out and strike other vehicles. Your tractor can jackknife very quickly. You also must be careful about driving "bobtail" tractors (tractors without semitrailers). Tests have shown that bobtails can be very hard to stop smoothly. It takes them longer to stop than a tractor-semitrailer loaded to maximum gross weight.

In any combination rig, allow lots of following distance and look far ahead so you can brake early. Do not be caught by surprise and have to make a "panic" stop.

6.1.4 – *Railroad-highway Crossings*

Railroad-highway crossings can also cause problems, particularly when pulling trailers with low underneath clearance.

These trailers can get stuck on raised crossings:

- Low slung units (lowboy, car carrier, moving van, possum-belly livestock trailer).
- Single-axle tractor pulling a long trailer with its landing gear set to accommodate a tandem-axle tractor.

If for any reason you get stuck on the tracks, get out of the vehicle and away from the tracks. Check signposts or signal housing at the crossing for emergency notification information. Call 911 or other emergency number. Give the location of the crossing using all identifiable landmarks, especially the DOT number, if posted.

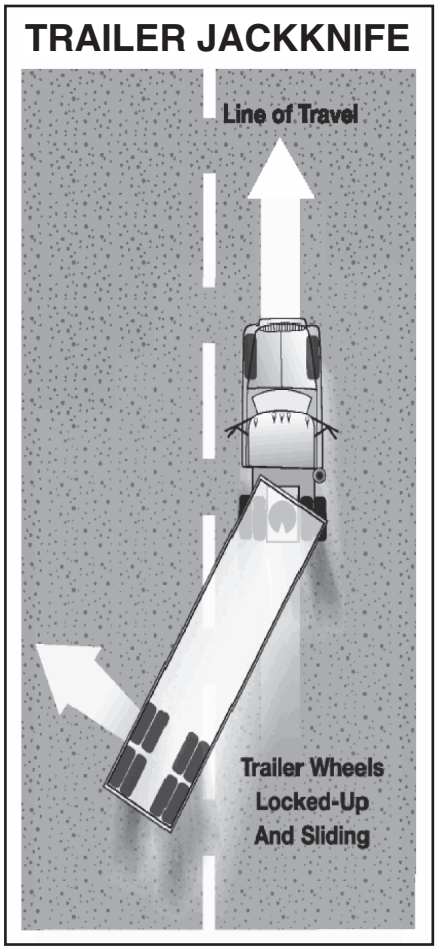


Figure 6.2

6.1.5 – *Prevent Trailer Skids*

When the wheels of a trailer lock up, the trailer will tend to swing around. This is more likely to happen when the trailer is empty or lightly loaded. This type of jackknife is often called a "trailer jackknife." (See Figure 6.2.)

The procedure for stopping a trailer skid is.

Recognize the Skid. The earliest and best way to recognize that the trailer has started to skid is by seeing it in your mirrors. Any time you apply the brakes hard, check the mirrors to make sure the trailer is staying where it should be. Once the trailer swings out of your lane, it is very difficult to prevent a jackknife.

Stop Using the Brake. Release the brakes to get traction back. Do not use the trailer hand brake (if you have one) to "straighten out the rig." This is the wrong thing to do since the brakes on the trailer wheels caused the skid in the first place. Once the trailer wheels grip the road again, the trailer will start to follow the tractor and straighten out.

6.1.6 – *Turn Wide*

When a vehicle goes around a corner, the rear wheels follow a different path than the front wheels. This is called off-tracking or "cheating." Figure 6.3 shows how off-tracking causes the path followed by a tractor to be wider than the rig itself. Longer vehicles will off-track more. The rear wheels of the powered unit (truck or tractor) will off-track some, and the rear wheels of the trailer will off-track even more. If there is more than one trailer, the rear wheels of the last trailer will off-track the most. Steer the front end wide enough around a corner so the rear end does not run over the curb, pedestrians, etc. However, keep

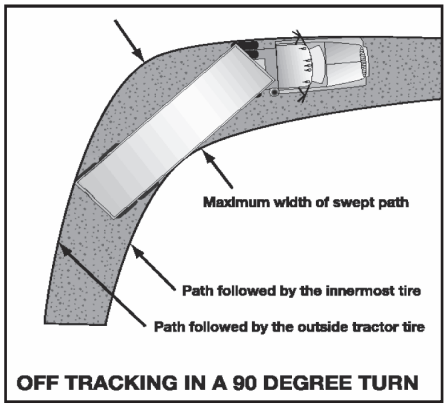


Figure 6.3

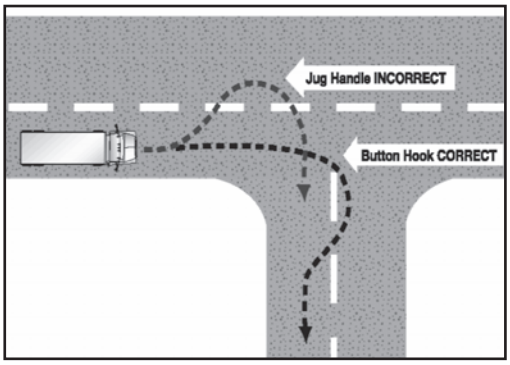


Figure 6.4

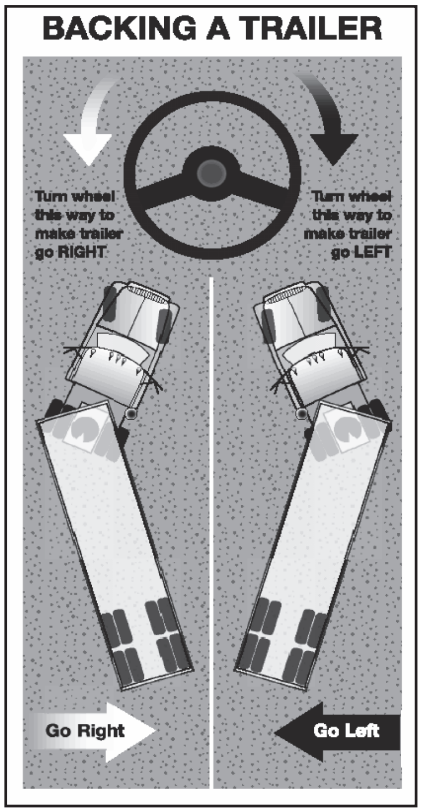


Figure 6.5

the rear of your vehicle close to the curb. This will stop other drivers from passing you on the right. If you cannot complete your turn without entering another traffic lane, turn wide as you complete the turn. This is better than swinging wide to the left before starting the turn because it will keep other drivers from passing you on the right. (See Figure 6.4.)

6.1.7 – *Backing with a Trailer*

Backing with a Trailer. When backing a car, straight truck or bus, you turn the top of the steering wheel in the direction you want to go. When backing a trailer, you turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction. Once the trailer starts to turn, you must turn the wheel the other way to follow the trailer.

Whenever you back up with a trailer, try to position your vehicle so you can back in a straight line. If you must back on a curved path, back to the driver's side so you can see. (See Figure 6.5.)

Look at Your Path. Look at your line of travel before you begin. Get out and walk around the vehicle. Check your clearance to the sides and overhead, in and near the path of your vehicle.

Use Mirrors on Both Sides. Check the outside mirrors on both sides frequently. Get out of the vehicle and re-inspect your path if you are unsure.

Back Slowly. This will let you make corrections before you get too far off course.

Correct Drift Immediately. As soon as you see the trailer getting off the proper path, correct it by turning the top of the steering wheel in the direction of the drift.

Pull Forward. When backing a trailer, make pull-ups to reposition your vehicle as needed.

Subsection 6.1
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What two things are important to prevent rollover?
2. When you turn suddenly while pulling doubles, which trailer is most likely to turn over?
3. Why should you not use the trailer hand brake to straighten out a jackknifing trailer?
4. What is off-tracking?
5. When you back a trailer, you should position your vehicle so you can back in a curved path to the driver's side. True or False?
6. What type of trailers can get stuck on railroad-highway crossings?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsection 6.1

6.2 – Combination Vehicle Air Brakes

Before reading this section, you should study Section 5: Air Brakes. In combination vehicles, the braking system has parts to control the trailer brakes, in addition to the parts described in Section 5. These parts are described below.

6.2.1 – *Trailer Hand Valve*

The trailer hand valve (also called the trolley valve or Johnson bar) works the trailer brakes. The trailer hand valve should be used only to test the trailer brakes. Do not use it in driving because of the danger of making the trailer skid. The foot brake sends air to all of the brakes on the vehicle, including the trailer(s). There is much less danger of causing a skid or jackknife when using just the foot brake.

Never use the hand valve for parking because all the air might leak out, unlocking the brakes (in trailers that do not have spring brakes). Always use the parking brakes when parking. If the trailer does not have spring brakes, use wheel chocks to keep the trailer from moving.

6.2.2 – *Tractor Protection Valve*

The tractor protection valve keeps air in the tractor or truck brake system should the trailer break away or develop a bad leak. The tractor protection valve is controlled by the "trailer air supply" control valve in the cab. The control valve allows you to open and shut the tractor protection valve. The tractor protection valve will close automatically if air pressure is low (in the range of 20 to 45 psi). When the tractor protection valve closes, it stops any air from going out of the tractor. It also lets the air out of the trailer emergency line. This causes the trailer emergency brakes to come on, with possible loss of control. (Emergency brakes are covered later.)

6.2.3 – *Trailer Air Supply Control*

The trailer air supply control on newer vehicles is a red eight-sided knob, which you use to control the tractor protection valve. You push it in to supply the trailer with air and pull it out to shut the air off and put on the trailer emergency brakes. The valve will pop out (thus closing the tractor protection valve) when the air pressure drops into the range of 20 to 45 psi. Tractor protection valve controls or "emergency" valves on older vehicles may not operate automatically. There may be a lever rather than a knob. The "normal" position is used for pulling a trailer. The "emergency" position is used to shut the air off and put on the trailer emergency brakes.

6.2.4 – *Trailer Air Lines*

Every combination vehicle has two air lines: the service line and the emergency line. They run between each vehicle (tractor to trailer, trailer to dolly, dolly to second trailer, etc.).

Service Air Line. The service line (also called the control line or signal line) carries air, which is controlled by the foot brake or the trailer hand brake. Depending on how hard you press the foot brake or hand valve, the pressure in the service line will similarly change. The service line is connected to relay valves. These valves allow the trailer brakes to be applied more quickly than would otherwise be possible.

Emergency Air Line. The emergency line (also called the supply line) has two purposes. First, it supplies air to the trailer air tanks. Second, the emergency line controls the emergency brakes on combination vehicles. Loss of air pressure in the emergency line causes the trailer emergency brakes to come on. The pressure loss could be caused by a trailer breaking loose, thus tearing apart the emergency air hose. Or it could be caused by a hose, metal tubing or other part breaking, letting the air out. When the emergency line loses pressure, it also causes the tractor protection valve to close (the air supply knob will pop out).

Emergency lines are often coded with the color red (red hose, red couplers or other parts) to keep from getting them mixed up with the blue service line.

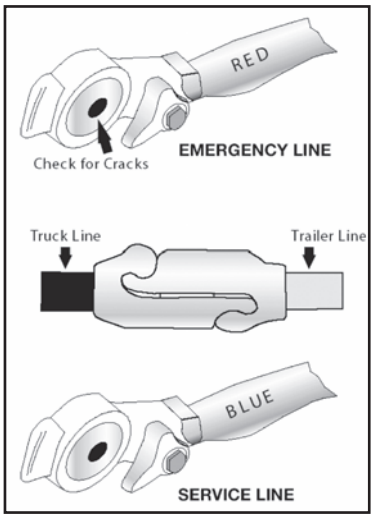


Figure 6.6

6.2.5 – *Hose Couplers (Glad Hands)*

"Glad hands" are coupling devices used to connect the service and emergency air lines from the truck or tractor to the trailer. The couplers have a rubber seal, which prevents air from escaping. Clean the couplers and rubber seals before a connection is made. When connecting the glad hands, press the two seals together with the couplers at a 90-degree angle to each other. A turn of the glad hand attached to the hose will join and lock the couplers.

When coupling, make sure to couple the proper glad hands together. To help avoid mistakes, colors are sometimes used. Blue is used for the service lines and red for the emergency (supply) lines. Sometimes, metal tags are attached to the lines with the words "service" and "emergency" stamped on them. (See Figure 6.6.)

If you do cross the air lines, supply air will be sent to the service line instead of going to charge the trailer air tanks. Air will not be available to release the trailer spring brakes (parking brakes). If the spring brakes do not release when you push the trailer air supply control, check the air line connections.

Older trailers do not have spring brakes. If the air supply in the trailer air tank has leaked away, there will be no emergency brakes and the trailer wheels will turn freely. If you crossed the air lines, you could drive away but you would not have trailer brakes. This would be very dangerous. Always test the trailer brakes before driving with the hand valve or by pulling the air supply (tractor protection valve) control. Pull gently against them in a low gear to make sure the brakes work.

Some vehicles have “dead end” or dummy couplers to which the hoses may be attached when they are not in use. This will prevent water and dirt from getting into the coupler and the air lines. Use the dummy couplers when the air lines are not connected to a trailer. If there are no dummy couplers, the glad hands can sometimes be locked together (depending on the couplings). It is important to keep the air supply clean.

6.2.6 – *Trailer Air Tanks*

Each trailer and converter dolly has one or more air tanks. They are filled by the emergency (supply) line from the tractor. They provide the air pressure used to operate trailer brakes. Air pressure is sent from the air tanks to the brakes by relay valves.

The pressure in the service line tells how much pressure the relay valves should send to the trailer brakes. The pressure in the service line is controlled by the brake pedal (and the trailer hand brake).

It is important that you do not let water and oil build up in the air tanks. If you do, the brakes may not work correctly. Each tank has a drain valve on it and you should drain each tank every day. If your tanks have automatic drains, they will keep most moisture out. But you should still open the drains to make sure.

6.2.7 – *Shut-off Valves*

Shut-off valves (also called cut-out cocks) are used in the service and supply air lines at the back of trailers used to tow other trailers. These valves permit closing the air lines off when another trailer is not being towed. You must check that all shut-off valves are in the open position except the ones at the back of the last trailer, which must be closed.

6.2.8 – *Trailer Service, Parking and Emergency Brakes*

Newer trailers have spring brakes just like trucks and truck tractors. However, converter dollies and trailers built before 1975 are not required to have spring brakes. Those that do not have spring brakes have emergency brakes, which work from the air stored in the trailer air tank. The emergency brakes come on whenever air pressure in the emergency line is lost. These trailers have no parking brake. The emergency brakes come on whenever the air supply knob is pulled out or the trailer is disconnected. A major leak in the emergency line will cause the tractor protection valve to close and the trailer emergency brakes to come on. But the brakes will hold only as long as there is air pressure in the trailer air tank. Eventually, the air will leak away and then there will be no brakes. Therefore, it is important for safety that you use wheel chocks when you park trailers without spring brakes.

You may not notice a major leak in the service line until you try to put the brakes on. Then, the air loss from the leak will lower the air tank pressure quickly. If it goes low enough, the trailer emergency brakes will come on.

Subsection 6.2
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Why should you not use the trailer hand valve while driving?
2. Describe what the trailer air supply control does.
3. Describe what the service line is for.
4. What is the emergency air line for?
5. Why should you use chocks when parking a trailer without spring brakes?
6. Where are shut-off valves?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsection 6.2

6.3 – Antilock Brake Systems

6.3.1 – *Trailers Required to Have ABS*

All trailers and converter dollies built on or after March 1, 1998, are required to have ABS. However, many trailers and converter dollies built before this date have been voluntarily equipped with ABS.

Trailers will have yellow ABS malfunction lamps on the left side, either on the front or rear corner. (See Figure 6.7.) Dollies manufactured on or after March 1, 1998, are required to have a lamp on the left side.

In the case of vehicles manufactured before the required date, it may be difficult to tell if the unit is equipped with ABS. Look under the vehicle for the ECU and wheel speed sensor wires coming from the back of the brakes.

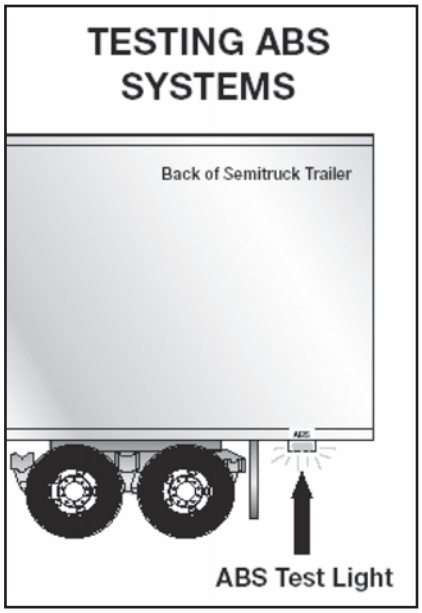


Figure 6.7

6.3.2 – *Braking with ABS*

ABS is an addition to your normal brakes. It does not decrease or increase your normal braking capability. ABS only activates when wheels are about to lock up.

ABS does not necessarily shorten your stopping distance, but it does help you keep the vehicle under control during hard braking.

ABS helps you avoid wheel lockup. The computer senses impending lockup and reduces the braking pressure to a safe level, and you maintain control.

Having ABS on only the trailer or even on only one axle still gives you more control over the vehicle during braking.

When only the trailer has ABS, the trailer is less likely to swing out, but if you lose steering control or start a tractor jackknife, let up on the brakes (if you can safely do so) until you gain control.

When you drive a tractor-trailer combination with ABS, you should brake as you always have. In other words:

- Use only the braking force necessary to stop safely and stay in control.
- Brake the same way, regardless of whether you have ABS on the tractor, the trailer or both.
- As you slow down, monitor your tractor and trailer and back off the brakes (if it is safe to do so) to stay in control.

Remember: If your ABS malfunctions, you still have regular brakes. Drive normally, but get the system serviced soon.

ABS will not allow you to drive faster, follow more closely or drive less carefully.

6.4 – Coupling and Uncoupling

Knowing how to couple and uncouple correctly is basic to the safe operation of combination vehicles. Wrong coupling and uncoupling can be dangerous. General coupling and uncoupling steps are listed below. There are differences between different rigs, so learn the details of coupling and uncoupling the truck(s) you will operate.

6.4.1 – *Coupling Tractor-Semitrailers*

Step 1: Inspect Fifth Wheel

- Check for damaged/missing parts.
- Check to see that mounting to tractor is secure, no cracks in frame, etc.
- Be sure that the fifth-wheel plate is greased as required. Failure to keep the fifth-wheel plate lubricated could cause steering problems because of friction between the tractor and trailer.
- Check if fifth wheel is in proper position for coupling.
  - — Wheel tilted down toward rear of tractor.
  - — Jaws open.
  - — Safety unlocking handle in the automatic lock position.

- If you have a sliding fifth wheel, make sure it is locked.
- Make sure the trailer kingpin is not bent or broken.

Step 2: Inspect Area and Chock Wheels
- Make sure area around the vehicle is clear.
- Be sure trailer wheels are chocked or spring brakes are on.
- Check that cargo (if any) is secured against movement due to tractor being coupled to the trailer.

Step 3: Position Tractor
- Put the tractor directly in front of the trailer. (Never back under the trailer at an angle because you might push the trailer sideways and break the landing gear.)
- Check position, using outside mirrors, by looking down both sides of the trailer.

Step 4: Back Slowly
- Back until fifth wheel just touches the trailer.
- Do not hit the trailer.

Step 5: Secure Tractor
- Put on the parking brake.
- Put transmission in neutral.

Step 6: Check Trailer Height
- The trailer should be low enough that it is raised slightly by the tractor when the tractor is backed under it. Raise or lower the trailer as needed. (If the trailer is too low, the tractor may strike and damage the trailer nose; if the trailer is too high, it may not couple correctly.)
- Check that the kingpin and fifth wheel are aligned.

Step 7: Connect Air Lines to Trailer
- Check glad hand seals and connect tractor emergency air line to trailer emergency glad hand.
- Check glad hand seals and connect tractor service air line to trailer service glad hand.
- Make sure air lines are safely supported where they will not be crushed or caught while tractor is backing under the trailer.

Step 8: Supply Air to Trailer
- From cab, push in “air supply” knob or move tractor protection valve control from the “emergency” to the “normal” position to supply air to the trailer brake system.
- Wait until the air pressure is normal.
- Check brake system for crossed air lines.
  — Shut engine off so you can hear the brakes.
  — Apply and release trailer brakes and listen for sound of trailer brakes being applied and released. You should hear the brakes move when applied and air escape when the brakes are released.
  — Check air brake system pressure gauge for signs of major air loss.
- When you are sure trailer brakes are working, start engine.
- Make sure air pressure is up to normal.

Step 9: Lock Trailer Brakes
Pull out the “air supply” knob or move the tractor protection valve control from “normal” to “emergency.”

Step 10: Back Under Trailer
- Use lowest reverse gear.
- Back tractor slowly under trailer to avoid hitting the kingpin too hard.
- Stop when the kingpin is locked into the fifth wheel.

Step 11: Check Connection for Security

- Raise trailer landing gear slightly off ground.
- Pull tractor gently forward while the trailer brakes are still locked to check that the trailer is locked onto the tractor.

Step 12: Secure Vehicle

- Put transmission in neutral.
- Put parking brakes on.
- Shut off engine and take keys with you so someone else does not move truck while you are under it.

Step 13: Inspect Coupling

- Use a flashlight, if necessary.
- Make sure there is no space between upper and lower fifth wheel. If there is space, something is wrong (kingpin may be on top of the closed fifth-wheel jaws, and trailer would come loose very easily).
- Go under trailer and look into the back of the fifth wheel. Make sure the fifth-wheel jaws have closed around the shank of the kingpin.
- Check that the locking lever is in the “lock” position.
- Check that the safety latch is in position over locking lever. (On some fifth-wheels, the latch must be put in place by hand.)
- If the coupling is not right, do not drive the coupled unit; get it fixed.

Step 14: Connect the Electrical Cord and Check Air Lines

- Plug the electrical cord into the trailer and fasten the safety latch.
- Check both air lines and electrical line for signs of damage.
- Make sure air and electrical lines will not hit any moving parts of vehicle.

Step 15: Raise Front Trailer Supports (Landing Gear)

- Use low gear range (if so equipped) to begin raising the landing gear. Once free of weight, switch to the high gear range.
- Raise the landing gear all the way up. (Never drive with landing gear only part way up as it may catch on railroad tracks or other things.)
- After raising landing gear, secure the crank handle safely.
- When full weight of trailer is resting on tractor:
  - —Check for enough clearance between rear of tractor frame and landing gear. (When tractor turns sharply, it must not hit landing gear.)
  - —Check that there is enough clearance between the top of the tractor tires and the nose of the trailer.

Step 16: Remove Trailer Wheel Chocks

- Remove and store wheel chocks in a safe place.

6.4.2 – *Uncoupling Tractor-Semitrailers*

The following steps will help you to uncouple safely.

Step 1: Position Rig

- Make sure surface of parking area can support weight of trailer.
- Have tractor lined up with the trailer. (Pulling out at an angle can damage landing gear.)

Step 2: Ease Pressure on Locking Jaws

- Shut off trailer air supply to lock trailer brakes.
- Ease pressure on fifth-wheel locking jaws by backing up gently. (This will help you release the fifth-wheel locking lever.)
- Put parking brakes on while tractor is pushing against the kingpin. (This will hold rig with pressure off the locking jaws.)

Step 3: Chock Trailer Wheels

- Chock the trailer wheels if the trailer does not have spring brakes or if you are not sure. (The air could leak out of the trailer air tank, releasing its emergency brakes. Without chocks, the trailer could move.)

Step 4: Lower the Landing Gear

- If trailer is empty, lower the landing gear until it makes firm contact with the ground.
- If trailer is loaded, after the landing gear makes firm contact with the ground, turn crank in low gear a few extra turns. This will lift some weight off the tractor. (Do not lift trailer off the fifth wheel.) This will:
  —Make it easier to unlatch fifth wheel.
  —Make it easier to couple next time.

Step 5: Disconnect Air Lines and Electrical Cable

- Disconnect air lines from trailer. Connect air line glad hands to dummy couplers at back of cab or couple them together.
- Hang electrical cable with plug down to prevent moisture from entering it.
- Make sure lines are supported so they will not be damaged while driving the tractor.

Step 6: Unlock Fifth Wheel

- Raise the release handle lock.
- Pull the release handle to “open” position.
- Keep legs and feet clear of the rear tractor wheels to avoid serious injury in case the vehicle moves.

Step 7: Pull Tractor Partially Clear of Trailer

- Pull tractor forward until fifth wheel comes out from under the trailer.
- Stop with tractor frame under trailer (prevents trailer from falling to ground if landing gear should collapse or sink).

Step 8: Secure Tractor

- Apply parking brake.
- Place transmission in neutral.

Step 9: Inspect Trailer Supports

- Make sure ground is supporting trailer.
- Make sure landing gear is not damaged.

Step 10: Pull Tractor Clear of Trailer

- Release parking brakes.
- Check the area and drive tractor forward until it clears.

Subsections 6.3 and 6.4
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What might happen if the trailer is too high when you try to couple?
2. After coupling, how much space should be between the upper and lower fifth wheel?
3. You should look into the back of the fifth wheel to see if it is locked onto the kingpin. True or False?
4. To drive you need to raise the landing gear only until it just lifts off the pavement. True or False?
5. How do you know if your trailer is equipped with antilock brakes?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsections 6.3 and 6.4.

6.5 – Inspecting a Combination Vehicle

Use the seven-step inspection procedure described in Section 2 to inspect your combination vehicle. There are more things to inspect on a combination vehicle than on a single vehicle. (For example, tires, wheels, lights, reflectors, etc.) However, there are also some new items to check. These are discussed below.

6.5.1 – *Additional Things to Check During a Walkaround Inspection*

Perform these checks in addition to those already listed in Section 2.

Coupling System Areas

- Check fifth wheel (lower).
  - — Securely mounted to frame.
  - — No missing or damaged parts.
  - — Enough grease.
  - — No visible space between upper and lower fifth wheel.
  - — Locking jaws around the shank, not the head of kingpin. (See Figure 6.8.)
  - — Release arm properly seated and safety latch/lock engaged.
- Check fifth wheel (upper).
  - — Glide plate securely mounted to trailer frame.
  - — Kingpin not damaged.
- Air and electric lines to trailer.
  - — Electrical cord firmly plugged in and secured.
  - — Air lines properly connected to glad hands, no air leaks, properly secured with enough slack for turns.
  - — All lines free from damage.
- Sliding fifth wheel.
  - — Slide not damaged or parts missing.
  - — Properly greased.
  - — All locking pins present and locked in place.
  - — If air powered, no air leaks.
  - — Check that fifth wheel is not so far forward that tractor frame will hit landing gear or the cab hit the trailer during turns.

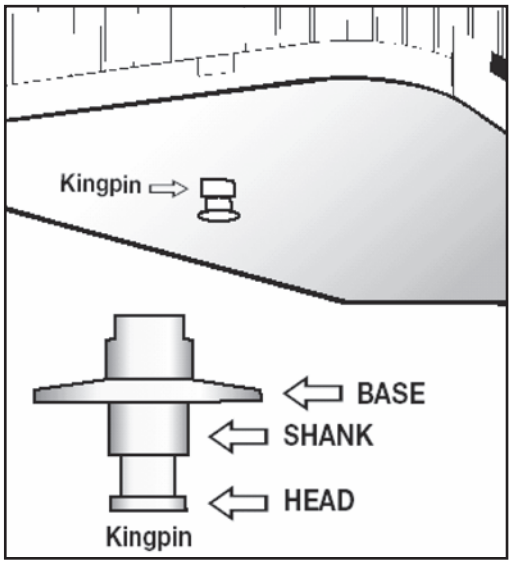


Figure 6.8

Landing Gear

- Fully raised, no missing parts, not bent or otherwise damaged.
- Crank handle in place and secured.
- If power operated, no air or hydraulic leaks.

6.5.2 – *Combination Vehicle Brake Check*

Perform these checks in addition to Section 5.3: Inspecting Air Brake Systems. The following section explains how to check air brakes on combination vehicles. Check the brakes on a double or triple trailer as you would any combination vehicle.

Check That Air Flows to All Trailers. Use the tractor parking brake and/or chock the wheels to hold the vehicle. Wait for air pressure to reach normal and then push in the red “trailer air supply” knob. This will supply air to the emergency (supply) lines. Use the trailer hand brake to provide air to the service line. Go to the rear of the rig. Open the emergency line shut-off valve at the rear of the last trailer. You should hear air escaping, showing the entire system is charged. Close the emergency line valve. Open the service line valve to check that service pressure goes through all the trailers (this test assumes that the trailer hand brake or the service brake pedal is on) and then close the valve. If you do NOT hear air escaping from both lines, check that the shut-off valves on the trailer(s) and dolly(ies) are in the OPEN position. You MUST have air all the way to the back for all the brakes to work.

Test Tractor Protection Valve. Charge the trailer air brake system. (That is, build up normal air pressure and push the “air supply” knob in.) Shut the engine off. Step on and off the brake pedal several times to reduce the air pressure in the tanks. The trailer air supply control (also called the tractor protection valve control) should pop out (or go from “normal” to “emergency” position) when the air pressure falls into the pressure range specified by the manufacturer (usually within the range of 20 to 45 psi).

If the tractor protection valve does not work right, an air hose or a trailer brake leak could drain all the air from the tractor. This would cause the emergency brakes to come on, with possible loss of control.

Test Trailer Emergency Brakes. Charge the trailer air brake system and check that the trailer rolls freely. Then stop and pull out the trailer air supply control (also called tractor protection valve control or trailer emergency valve) or place it in the “emergency” position. Pull gently on the trailer with the tractor to check that the trailer emergency brakes are on.

Test Trailer Service Brakes. Check for normal air pressure, release the parking brakes, move the vehicle forward slowly and apply trailer brakes with the hand control (trolley valve), if so equipped. You should feel the brakes come on. This tells you the trailer brakes are connected and working. (The trailer brakes should be tested with the hand valve but controlled in normal operation with the foot pedal, which applies air to the service brakes at all wheels.)

Subsection 6.5
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Which shut-off valves should be open and which closed?
2. How can you test that air flows to all trailers?
3. How can you test the tractor protection valve?
4. How can you test the trailer emergency brakes?
5. How can you test the trailer service brakes?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsection 6.5

SECTION 7
DOUBLES AND TRIPLES

This Section Covers:

- Pulling Double/Triple Trailers
- Coupling and Uncoupling
- Inspecting Doubles and Triples
- Doubles/Triples Air Brake Check

This section has information you need to pass the CDL knowledge test for driving safely with double and triple trailers. It explains how important it is to be careful when driving with more than one trailer, how to couple and uncouple correctly, and how to inspect doubles and triples carefully. (You should also study Sections 2, 5 and 6.)

7.1 – Pulling Double/Triple Trailers

Take special care when pulling two and three trailers. There are more things that can go wrong, and doubles/triples are less stable than other commercial vehicles. Some areas of concern are discussed below.

7.1.1 – *Prevent Trailer from Rolling Over*

To prevent trailers from rolling over, you must steer gently and go slowly around corners, on-ramps, off-ramps and curves. A safe speed on a curve for a straight truck or a single trailer combination vehicle may be too fast for a set of doubles or triples.

7.1.2 – *Beware of the Crack-the-Whip Effect*

Doubles and triples are more likely to turn over than other combination vehicles because of the “crack-the-whip” effect. You must steer gently when pulling trailers. The last trailer in a combination is most likely to turn over. If you do not understand the crack-the-whip effect, study Subsection 6.1.2 of this manual.

7.1.3 – *Inspect Completely*

There are more critical parts to check when you have two or three trailers. Check them all. Follow the procedures described later in this section.

7.1.4 – *Look Far Ahead*

Doubles and triples must be driven very smoothly to avoid rollover or jackknife. Therefore, look far ahead so you can slow down or change lanes gradually when necessary.

7.1.5 – *Manage Space*

Doubles and triples take up more space than other commercial vehicles. They are not only longer, but also need more space because they cannot be turned or stopped suddenly. Allow more following distance. Make sure you have large enough gaps before entering or crossing traffic. Be certain you are clear at the sides before changing lanes.

7.1.6 – *Adverse Conditions*

Be more careful in adverse conditions. In bad weather, slippery conditions and mountain driving, you must be especially careful if you drive double and triple bottoms. You will have greater length and more dead axles to pull with your drive axles than other drivers. There is more chance for skids and loss of traction.

7.1.7 – *Parking the Vehicle*

Make sure you do not get in a spot you cannot pull straight through. You need to be aware of how parking lots are arranged in order to avoid a long and difficult escape.

7.1.8 – *Antilock Braking Systems on Converter Dollies*

Converter dollies built on or after March 1, 1998, are required to have antilock brakes. These dollies will have a yellow lamp on the left side of the dolly.

7.2 – Coupling and Uncoupling

Knowing how to couple and uncouple correctly is basic to safe operation of doubles and triples. Wrong coupling and uncoupling can be very dangerous. Coupling and uncoupling steps for doubles and triples are listed below.

7.2.1 – *Coupling Twin Trailers*

Secure Second (Rear) Trailer

If the second trailer does not have spring brakes, drive the tractor close to the trailer, connect the emergency line, charge the trailer air tank and disconnect the emergency line. This will set the trailer emergency brakes (if the slack adjusters are correctly adjusted). Chock the wheels if you have any doubt about the brakes.

For the safest handling on the road, the more heavily loaded semitrailer should be in first position behind the tractor. The lighter trailer should be in the rear.

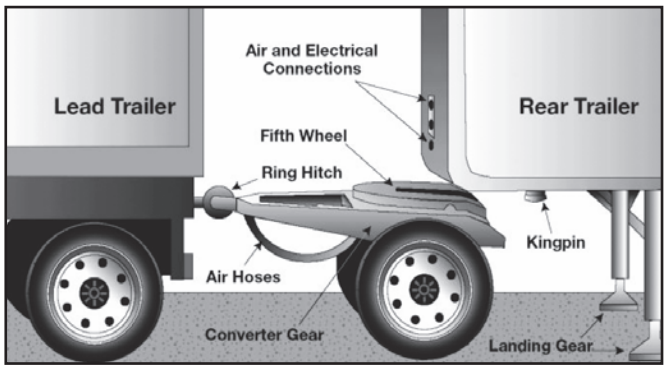


Figure 7.1

A converter gear on a dolly is a coupling device of one or two axles and a fifth wheel by which a semitrailer can be coupled to the rear of a tractor-trailer combination forming a double bottom rig. (See Figure 7.1.)

Position Converter Dolly in Front of Second (Rear) Trailer

Release dolly brakes by opening the air tank petcock (if the dolly has spring brakes, use the dolly parking brake control). If the distance is not too great, wheel the dolly into position by hand so it is in line with the kingpin. Or, use the tractor and first semitrailer to pick up the converter dolly:

- Position combination as close as possible to converter dolly.
- Move dolly to rear of first semitrailer and couple it to the trailer.
- Lock pintle hook.
- Secure dolly support in raised position.
- Pull dolly into position as close as possible to nose of the second semitrailer.
- Lower dolly support.
- Unhook dolly from first trailer.
- Wheel dolly into position in front of second trailer in line with the kingpin.

Connect Converter Dolly to Front Trailer

- Back first semitrailer into position in front of dolly tongue.
- Hook dolly to front trailer.
- Lock pintle hook.
- Secure converter gear support in raised position.

Connect Converter Dolly to Rear Trailer

- Make sure trailer brakes are locked and/or wheels chocked.
- Make sure trailer height is correct. (It must be slightly lower than the center of the fifth wheel, so trailer is raised slightly when dolly is pushed under.)
- Back converter dolly under rear trailer.
- Raise landing gear slightly off ground to prevent damage if trailer moves.
- Test coupling by pulling against pin of the second semitrailer.
- Make visual check of coupling. (No space between upper and lower fifth wheel. Locking jaws closed on kingpin.)
- Connect safety chains, air hoses and light cords.
- Close converter dolly air tank petcock and shut-off valves at rear of second trailer (service and emergency shut-offs).
- Open shut-off valves at rear of first trailer (and on dolly if so equipped).
- Raise landing gear completely.
- Charge trailer brakes (push “air supply” knob in) and check for air at rear of second trailer by opening the emergency line shut-off. If air pressure isn't there, something is wrong and the brakes will not work.

7.2.2 – *Uncoupling Twin Trailers*

Uncouple Rear Trailer

- Park rig in a straight line on firm level ground.
- Apply parking brakes so rig will not move.
- Chock wheels of second trailer if it does not have spring brakes.
- Lower landing gear of second semitrailer enough to remove some weight from dolly.
- Close air shut-offs at rear of first semitrailer (and on dolly if so equipped).
- Disconnect all dolly air and electric lines and secure them.
- Release dolly brakes.
- Release converter dolly fifth wheel latch.
- Slowly pull tractor, first semitrailer and dolly forward to pull dolly out from under rear semitrailer.

Uncouple Converter Dolly

- Lower dolly landing gear.
- Disconnect safety chains.
- Apply converter gear spring brakes or chock wheels.
- Release pintle hook on first semitrailer.
- Slowly pull clear of dolly.

Never unlock the pintle hook with the dolly still under the rear trailer. The dolly tow bar may fly up, possibly causing injury and making it very difficult to re-couple.

7.2.3 – *Coupling and Uncoupling Triple Trailers*

Couple Tractor/First Semitrailer to Second/Third Trailers

- Couple tractor to first trailer. Use the method already described for coupling tractor semitrailers.
- Move converter dolly into position and couple first trailer to second trailer using the method for coupling doubles. Triples rig is now complete.

Uncouple Triple-Trailer Rig

- Uncouple third trailer by pulling the dolly out and then unhitching the dolly using the method for uncoupling doubles.
- Uncouple remainder of rig as you would any double-bottom rig using the method already described.

7.2.4 – *Coupling and Uncoupling Other Combinations*

The methods described so far apply to the more common tractor-trailer combinations. However, there are other ways of coupling and uncoupling the many types of truck-trailer and tractor-trailer combinations that are in use. There are too many to cover in this manual. You will need to learn the correct way to couple and uncouple the vehicle(s) you will drive according to the manufacturer and/or owner specifications.

7.3 – Inspecting Doubles and Triples

Use the seven-step inspection procedure described in Section 2 to inspect your combination vehicle. There are more things to inspect on a combination vehicle than on a single vehicle. Many of these items are simply more of what you would find on a single vehicle. (For example, tires, wheels, lights, reflectors, etc.) However, there are also some new items to check. These are discussed below.

7.3.1 – *Additional Checks*

Perform these checks in addition to those already listed in Section 2, Step 5: Do Walk-around Inspection.

Coupling System Areas

- Check fifth wheel (lower).
  - — Securely mounted to frame.
  - — No missing or damaged parts.
  - — Enough grease.

  - — No visible space between upper and lower fifth wheel.
  - — Locking jaws around the shank, not the head of kingpin.
  - — Release arm properly seated and safety latch/lock engaged.
- Check fifth wheel (upper).
  - — Glide plate securely mounted to trailer frame.
  - — Kingpin not damaged.
- Air and electric lines to trailer.
  - — Electrical cord firmly plugged in and secured.
  - — Air lines properly connected to glad hands, no air leaks, properly secured with enough slack for turns.
  - — All lines free from damage.
- Sliding fifth wheel.
  - — Slide not damaged or parts missing.
  - — Properly greased.
  - — All locking pins present and locked in place.
  - — If air powered, no air leaks.
  - — Check that fifth wheel is not so far forward that the tractor frame will hit landing gear or cab will hit the trailer, during turns.

Landing Gear

- Fully raised, no missing parts, not bent or otherwise damaged.
- Crank handle in place and secured.
- If power operated, no air or hydraulic leaks.

Double and Triple Trailers

- Shut-off valves (at rear of trailers, in service and emergency lines).
  - — Rear of front trailers: OPEN.
  - — Rear of last trailer: CLOSED.
  - — Converter dolly air tank drain valve: CLOSED.
- Be sure air lines are supported and glad hands are properly connected.
- If spare tire is carried on converter gear (dolly), make sure it is secured.
- Be sure pintle-eye of dolly is in place in pintle hook of trailer(s).
- Make sure pintle hook is latched.
- Safety chains should be secured to trailer(s).
- Be sure light cords are firmly in sockets on trailers.

7.3.2 – *Additional Things to Check During a Walk-around Inspection*

Perform these checks in addition to Subsection 5.3: Inspecting Air Brake Systems.

7.4 – Doubles/Triples Air Brake Check

Check the brakes on a double or triple trailer as you would any combination vehicle. Subsection 6.5.2 explains how to check air brakes on combination vehicles. You must also make the following checks on your double or triple trailers.

7.4.1 – *Additional Air Brake Checks*

Check That Air Flows to All Trailers (Double and Triple Trailers). Use the tractor parking brake and/or chock the wheels to hold the vehicle. Wait for air pressure to reach normal, then push in the red “trailer air supply” knob. This will supply air to the emergency (supply) lines. Use the trailer hand brake to provide air to the service line. Go to the rear of the rig. Open the emergency line shut-off valve at the rear of the last trailer. You should hear air escaping, showing the entire system is charged. Close the emergency line valve. Open the service line valve to check that service pressure goes through all the trailers (this test assumes that the trailer hand brake or the service brake pedal is on) and then close the valve. If you do NOT hear air escaping from both lines, check that the shut-off valves on the trailer(s) and dolly(ies) are in the OPEN position. You MUST have air all the way to the back for all the brakes to work.

Test Tractor Protection Valve. Charge the trailer air brake system. (That is, build up normal air pressure and push the “air supply” knob in.) Shut the engine off. Step on and off the brake pedal several times to reduce the air pressure in the tanks. The trailer air supply control (also called the tractor protection valve control) should pop out (or go from “normal” to “emergency” position) when the air pressure falls into the pressure range specified by the manufacturer (usually within the range of 20 to 45 psi).

If the tractor protection valve does not work properly, an air hose or trailer brake leak could drain all the air from the tractor. This would cause the emergency brakes to come on, with possible loss of control.

Test Trailer Emergency Brakes. Charge the trailer air brake system and check that the trailer rolls freely. Then stop and pull out the trailer air supply control (also called tractor protection valve control or trailer emergency valve) or place it in the “emergency” position. Pull gently on the trailer with the tractor to check that the trailer emergency brakes are on.

Test Trailer Service Brakes. Check for normal air pressure, release the parking brakes, move the vehicle forward slowly and apply trailer brakes with the hand control (trolley valve), if so equipped. You should feel the brakes come on. This tells you the trailer brakes are connected and working. (The trailer brakes should be tested with the hand valve, but controlled in normal operation with the foot pedal, which applies air to the service brakes at all wheels.)

Section 7
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What is a converter dolly?
2. Do converter dollies have spring brakes?
3. What three methods can you use to secure a second trailer before coupling?
4. How do you check to make sure trailer height is correct before coupling?
5. What do you check when making a visual check of coupling?
6. Why should you pull a dolly out from under a trailer before you disconnect it from the trailer in front?
7. What should you check for when inspecting the converter dolly? The pintle hook?
8. Should the shut-off valves on the rear of the last trailer be open or closed? On the first trailer in a set of doubles? On the middle trailer of a set of triples?
9. How can you test that air flows to all trailers?
10. How do you know if your converter dolly is equipped with antilock brakes?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Section 7

SECTION 8
TANK VEHICLES

This Section Covers:

- Inspecting Tank Vehicles
- Driving Tank Vehicles
- Safe Driving Rules

This section has information needed to pass the CDL knowledge test for driving a tank vehicle. (You should also study Sections 2, 5, 6 and 9.) A Tank Vehicle endorsement is required for certain vehicles that transport liquids or gases. The liquid or gas does not have to be a hazardous material. A Tank Vehicle endorsement is required if your vehicle needs a Class A or B CDL and you want to haul a liquid or liquid gaseous material in individual permanently mounted cargo tank(s) rated in excess of 119 gallons with an accumulating total rated at 1000 gallons or more or a attached portable tank rated in excess of 1,000 gallons. This endorsement does not apply to a truck transporting empty tanks to locations strictly for the purpose of re-sale. A Tank Vehicle endorsement is also required for Class C vehicles when the vehicle is used to transport hazardous materials in liquid or liquid gas form in the above described rated tanks.

Before loading, unloading or driving a tanker, inspect the vehicle. This ensures that the vehicle is safe to carry the liquid or gas and is safe to drive.

Any tank vehicle that has been transporting hazardous materials must be purged of hazardous materials 48 hours prior to testing with documentation verifying the purge.

8.1 – Inspecting Tank Vehicles

Tank vehicles have special items that you need to check. Tank vehicles come in many types and sizes. Check the vehicle's operator manual to make sure you know how to inspect your tank vehicle.

8.1.1 – *Leaks*

On all tank vehicles, the most important item to check for is leaks. Check under and around the vehicle for signs of any leaking. Do not carry liquids or gases in a leaking tank. To do so is a crime. You will be cited and prevented from driving further. You may also be liable for the clean up of any spill. In general, check the following:

- Tank's body or shell for dents or leaks.
- Intake, discharge and cut-off valves. Make sure the valves are in the correct position before loading, unloading or moving the vehicle.
- Pipes, connections and hoses for leaks, especially around joints.
- Manhole covers and vents. Make sure the covers have gaskets and they close correctly. Keep the vents clear so they work correctly.

8.1.2 – *Check Special Purpose Equipment*

If your vehicle has any of the following equipment, make sure it works:

- Vapor recovery kits.
- Grounding and bonding cables.
- Emergency shut-off systems.
- Built-in fire extinguisher.

Never drive a tank vehicle with open valves or manhole covers.

8.1.3 – *Special Equipment*

Check the emergency equipment required for your vehicle. Find out what equipment you are required to carry and make sure you have it (and it works).

8.2 – Driving Tank Vehicles

Hauling liquids in tanks requires special skills because of the high center of gravity and liquid movement. (See Figure 8.1.)

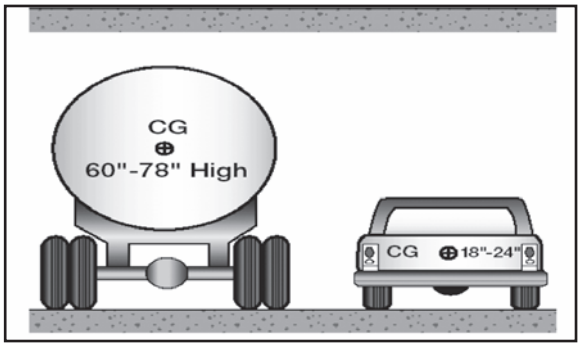


Figure 8.1

8.2.1 – *High Center of Gravity*

High center of gravity means that much of the load's weight is carried high up off the road. This makes the vehicle top-heavy and easy to roll over. Liquid tankers are especially easy to roll over. Tests have shown that tankers can turn over at the speed limits posted for curves. Take highway curves and on-ramp/off-ramp curves well below the posted speeds.

8.2.2 – *Danger of Surge*

Liquid surge results from movement of the liquid in partially filled tanks. This movement can have bad effects on handling. For example, when coming to a stop, the liquid will surge back and forth. When the wave hits the end of the tank, it tends to push the truck in the direction the wave is moving. If the truck is on a slippery surface such as ice, the wave can shove a stopped truck out into an intersection. The driver of a liquid tanker must be very familiar with the handling of the vehicle.

8.2.3 – *Bulkheads*

Some liquid tanks are divided into several smaller tanks by bulkheads. When loading and unloading the smaller tanks, the driver must pay attention to weight distribution. Do not put too much weight on the front or rear of the vehicle.

8.2.4 – *Baffled Tanks*

Baffled liquid tanks have bulkheads in them with holes that let the liquid flow through. The baffles help to control the forward and backward liquid surge. Side-to-side surge can still occur. This can cause a rollover.

8.2.5 – *Unbaffled Tanks*

Unbaffled liquid tankers (sometimes called “smooth bore” tanks) have nothing inside to slow down the flow of the liquid. Therefore, forward-and-back surge is very strong. Unbaffled tanks are usually those that transport food products (e.g., milk). (Sanitation regulations forbid the use of baffles because of the difficulty in cleaning the inside of the tank.) Be extremely cautious (slow and careful) in driving smooth bore tanks, especially when starting and stopping.

8.2.6 – *Outage*

Never load a cargo tank totally full. Liquids expand as they warm and you must leave room for the expanding liquid. This is called “outage.” Since different liquids expand by different amounts, they require different amounts of outage. You must know the outage requirement when hauling liquids in bulk.

8.2.7 – *How Much to Load?*

A full tank of dense liquid (such as some acids) may exceed legal weight limits. For that reason, you may often only partially fill tanks with heavy liquids. The amount of liquid to load into a tank depends on:

- The amount the liquid will expand in transit.
- The weight of the liquid.
- Legal weight limits.

8.3 – Safe Driving Rules

In order to drive tank vehicles safely, you must remember to follow all the safe driving rules. A few of these rules are listed below.

8.3.1 – *Drive Smoothly*

Because of the high center of gravity and the surge of the liquid, you must start, slow down and stop very smoothly. Also, make smooth turns and lane changes.

8.3.2 – *Controlling Surge*
Keep a steady pressure on the brakes. Do not release too soon when coming to a stop. Brake far in advance of a stop and increase your following distance.

If you must make a quick stop to avoid a crash, use controlled or stab braking. If you do not remember how to use these methods, review Subsection 2.17.2. Also, remember: If you steer quickly while braking, your vehicle may roll over.

8.3.3 – *Curves*
Slow down before curves, then accelerate slightly through the curve. The posted speed for a curve may be too fast for a tank vehicle.

8.3.4 – *Stopping Distance*
Keep in mind how much space you need to stop your vehicle. Remember: Wet roads double the normal stopping distance. Empty tank vehicles may take longer to stop than full ones.

8.3.5 – *Skids*
Do not oversteer, over accelerate or over brake. If you do, your vehicle may skid. On tank trailers, if your drive wheels or trailer wheels begin to skid, your vehicle may jackknife. When any vehicle starts to skid, you must take action to restore traction to the wheels.

Section 8
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. How are bulkheads different than baffles?
2. Should a tank vehicle take curves, on-ramps or off-ramps at the posted speed limits?
3. How are smooth bore tankers different to drive than those with baffles?
4. What three things determine how much liquid you can load?
5. What is outage?
6. How can you help control surge?
7. What two reasons make special care necessary when driving tank vehicles?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Section 8

SECTION 9
HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

This Section Covers:

- The Intent of the Regulations
- Hazardous Materials Transportation—Who Does What
- Communication Rules
- Bulk Packaging Marketing, Loading and Unloading
- Hazardous Materials—Driving and Parking Rules
- Hazardous Materials—Emergencies
- Hazardous Materials Glossary

Information in reference to obtaining the required federal TSA approval to be able obtain the hazardous materials endorsement (HME/H) can be reviewed in Sections 1 and 15. This approval must be secured prior to attempting the HME test at a CDL facility.

Hazardous materials are products that pose a risk to health, safety and property during transportation. The term often is shortened to HAZMAT, which you may see on road signs, or to HM in government regulations. Hazardous materials include explosives, various types of gas, solids, flammable and combustible liquid, and other materials. Because of the risks involved and the potential consequences these risks impose, all levels of government regulate the handling of hazardous materials.

The Hazardous Materials Regulations (HMR) is found in Parts 100-185 of Title 49 of the Code of Federal Regulations. The common reference for these regulations is 49 CFR 100-185. The Hazardous Materials Table in the regulations contains a list of these items. However, this list is not all-inclusive. Whether or not a material is considered hazardous is based on its characteristics and the shipper's decision on whether or not the material meets a definition of a hazardous material in the regulations. The regulations require vehicles transporting certain types or quantities of hazardous materials to display diamond-shaped, square-on-point, warning signs called placards.

This section is designed to assist you in understanding your role and responsibilities in hauling hazardous materials. Due to the constantly changing nature of government regulations, it is impossible to guarantee absolute accuracy of the materials in this section. An up-to-date copy of the complete regulations is essential for you to have. Included in these regulations is a complete glossary of terms. You can get copies of the Federal Regulations (49 CFR) through your local Government Printing Office bookstore and various industry publishers. Union or company offices often have copies of the rules for driver use. Find out where you can get your own copy to use on the job.

You must have a Commercial Driver’s License (CDL) with a Hazardous Materials endorsement before you drive any size vehicle that is used to transport hazardous material as defined in 49 CFR 383.5. You must pass a written test about the regulations and requirements to get this endorsement.

Everything you need to know to pass the written test is in this section. However, this is only a beginning. Most drivers need to know much more on the job. You can learn more by reading and understanding the federal and state rules applicable to hazardous materials, as well as attending hazardous materials training courses. Your employer, colleges and universities, and various associations usually offer these courses.

The regulations require training and testing for all drivers involved in transporting hazardous materials. Your employer or a designated representative is required to provide this training and testing. Hazardous materials employers are required to keep a record of training for each employee as long as that employee is working with hazardous materials, and for 90 days thereafter. The regulations require that hazardous materials employees be trained and tested at least once every three years.

All drivers must be trained in the security risks of hazardous materials transportation. This training must include how to recognize and respond to possible security threats.

The regulations also require that drivers have special training before driving a vehicle transporting certain flammable gas materials or highway route controlled quantities of radioactive materials. In addition, drivers transporting cargo tanks and portable tanks must receive specialized training. Each driver's employer or his or her designated representative must provide such training.

Some locations require permits to transport certain explosives or bulk hazardous wastes. States and counties also may require drivers to follow special hazardous materials routes. The federal government may require permits or exemptions for special hazardous materials cargo, such as rocket fuel. Find out about permits, exemptions and special routes for the places you drive.

9.1 – The Intent of the Regulations

9.1.1 – *Contain the Material*

Transporting hazardous materials can be risky. The regulations are intended to protect you, those around you and the environment. They tell shippers how to package the materials safely and drivers how to load, transport and unload the material. These are called "containment rules."

9.1.2 – *Communicate the Risk*

To communicate the risk, shippers must warn drivers and others about the material's hazards. The regulations require shippers to put hazard warning labels on packages, provide proper shipping papers, emergency response information and placards. These steps communicate the hazard to the shipper, carrier and driver.

9.1.3 – *Ensure Safe Drivers and Equipment*

To obtain a Hazardous Materials endorsement on a CDL, you must pass a written test about transporting hazardous materials. To pass the test, you must know how to:

- Identify what are hazardous materials.
- Safely load shipments.
- Properly placard your vehicle in accordance with the rules.
- Safely transport shipments.

Learn the rules and follow them. Following the rules reduces the risk of injury from hazardous materials. Taking shortcuts by breaking rules is unsafe. Non-compliance with regulations can result in fines and jail time.

Inspect your vehicle before and during each trip. Law enforcement officers may stop and inspect your vehicle. When stopped, they may check your shipping papers, vehicle placards, the Hazardous Materials endorsement on your driver's license, and your knowledge of hazardous materials.

9.2 – Hazardous Materials Transportation — Who Does What

9.2.1 – *The Shipper*

- Sends products from one place to another by truck, rail, vessel or airplane.
- Uses the hazardous materials regulations to determine the product's:
  - — Proper shipping name.
  - — Hazard class.
  - — Identification number.
  - — Packing group.
  - — Correct packaging.
  - — Correct label and markings.
  - — Provides correct placards.
- Packages, marks and labels the materials; prepares shipping papers; provides emergency response information; and supplies placards.
- Certifies on the shipping paper that the shipment has been prepared according to the rules (unless you are pulling cargo tanks supplied by you or your employer).

9.2.2 – *The Carrier*

- Takes the shipment from the shipper to its destination.
- Prior to transportation, checks that the shipper correctly described, marked, labeled and otherwise prepared the shipment for transportation.
- Refuses improper shipments.
- Reports accidents and incidents involving hazardous materials to the proper government agency.

9.2.3 – *The Driver*

- Makes sure the shipper has identified, marked and labeled the hazardous materials properly.
- Refuses leaking packages and shipments.
- Placards vehicle when loading, if required.
- Safely transports the shipment without delay.
- Follows all special rules about transporting hazardous materials.
- Keeps hazardous materials shipping papers and emergency response information in the proper place.

9.3 – Communication Rules

9.3.1 – *Definitions*

Some words and phrases have special meanings when talking about hazardous materials. Some of these may differ from meanings you are used to. The words and phrases in this section may be on your test. The meanings of other important words are in the glossary at the end of Section 9.

A material's hazard class reflects the risks associated with it. There are nine different hazard classes. The types of materials included in these nine classes are in Figure 9.1.

Hazardous Materials Class

Class	Division	Name of Class or Division	Examples
1	1.1 1.2 1.3 1.4 1.5 1.6	Mass Explosion Projection Hazard Fire Hazard Minor Explosion Very Insensitive Extremely Insensitive	Dynamite Flares Display Fireworks Ammunition Blasting Agents Explosive Devices
2	2.1 2.2 2.3	Flammable Gases Non-Flammable Gases Poisonous/Toxic Gases	Propane Helium Fluorine, Compressed
3	-	Flammable Liquids	Gasoline
4	4.1 4.2 4.3	Flammable Solids Spontaneously Combustible Dangerous When Wet	Ammonium Picrate, Wetted White Phosphorus Sodium
5	5.1 5.2	Oxidizers Organic Peroxides	Ammonium Nitrate Methyl Ethyl Ketone Peroxide
6	6.1 6.2	Poison (Toxic Material) Infectious Substances	Potassium Cyanide Anthrax Virus
7	-	Radioactive	Uranium
8	-	Corrosives	Battery Fluid
9	-	Miscellaneous Hazardous Materials	Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCB)
e	-	ORM-D (Other Regulated Material-Domestic)	Food Flavorings, Medicines
	-	Combustible Liquids	Fuel Oil

Figure 9.1

A shipping paper describes the hazardous materials being transported. Shipping orders, bills of lading and manifests are all shipping papers. Figure 9.6 shows an example shipping paper.

After an accident or hazardous materials spill or leak, you may be injured and unable to communicate the hazards of the materials you are transporting. Firefighters and police can prevent or reduce the amount of damage or injury at the scene if they know what hazardous materials are being carried. Your life and the lives of others may depend on quickly locating the hazardous materials shipping papers. For that reason the rules require:

- Shippers to describe hazardous materials correctly and include an emergency response telephone number on shipping papers.
- Carriers and drivers to identify quickly hazardous materials shipping papers, or keep them on top of other shipping papers and keep the required emergency response information with the shipping papers.
- Drivers to keep hazardous materials shipping papers:
  - —In a pouch on the driver's door;
  - —In clear view within immediate reach while the seat belt is fastened while driving; or
  - —On the driver's seat when out of the vehicle.

9.3.2 – *Package Labels*

Shippers put diamond-shaped hazard warning labels on most hazardous materials packages. These labels inform others of the hazard. If the diamond label will not fit on the package, shippers may

put the label on a tag securely attached to the package. For example, compressed gas cylinders that will not hold a label will have tags or decals. Labels look like the examples in Figure 9.2.

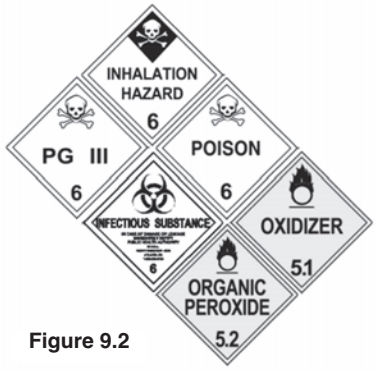


Figure 9.2

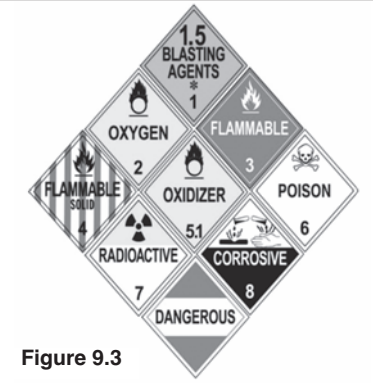


Figure 9.3

9.3.3 – *Lists of Regulated Products*

Placards. Placards are used to warn others of hazardous materials. Placards are signs put on the outside of a vehicle and on bulk packages, which identify the hazard class of the cargo. A placarded vehicle must have at least four identical placards. They are put on the front, rear, and both sides of the vehicle. (See Figure 9.3.) Placards must be readable from all four directions. They are at least 10 3/4-inches square, square-on-point, in a diamond shape. Cargo tanks and other bulk packaging display the identification number of their contents on placards or orange panels or white square-on-point displays that are the same size as placards.

Identification numbers are a four-digit code used by first responders to identify hazardous materials. An identification number may be used to identify more than one chemical. The letters “NA” or “UN” will precede the identification number. The United States Department of Transportation’s Emergency Response Guidebook (ERG) lists the chemicals and the identification numbers assigned to them.

There are three main lists used by shippers, carriers and drivers when trying to identify hazardous materials. Before transporting a material, look for its name on three lists. Some materials are on all lists, others on only one. Always check the following lists:

- Section 172.101: Hazardous Materials Table.
- Appendix A to Section 172.101: List of Hazardous Substances and Reportable Quantities.
- Appendix B to Section 172.101: List of Marine Pollutants.

The Hazardous Materials Table. Figure 9.4 shows part of the Hazardous Materials Table. Column 1 tells which shipping mode(s) the entry affects and other information concerning the shipping description. The next five columns show each material's shipping name, hazard class or division, identification number, packaging group and required labels.

Column 1 – Six different symbols may appear in Column 1:

(+) 1. Shows the proper shipping name, hazard class and packing group to use, even if the material does not meet the hazard class definition.

(A) 2. Means the hazardous material described in Column 2 is subject to the HMR only when offered or intended for transport by air unless it is a hazardous substance or hazardous waste.

(W) 3. Means the hazardous material described in Column 2 is subject to the HMR only when offered or intended for transportation by water unless it is a hazardous substance, hazardous waste or marine pollutant.

(D) 4. Means the proper shipping name is appropriate for describing materials for domestic transportation, but may not be proper for international transportation.

(I) 5. Identifies a proper shipping name that is used to describe materials in international transportation. A different shipping name may be used when only domestic transportation is involved.

(G) 6. Means this hazardous material described in Column 2 is a generic shipping name. A generic shipping name must be accompanied by a technical name on the shipping paper. A technical name is a specific chemical that makes the product hazardous.

49 CFR 172.101 Hazardous Materials Table									
Symbols	Hazardous Materials Description & Proper Shipping Names	Hazard Class or Division	Identification Numbers	PG	Label Codes	Special Provisions (172.102)	Packaging (173. ***)		
							Exceptions	Non Bulk	Bulk
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8A)	(8B)	(8C)
A	Acetaldehyde ammonia	9	UN1841	III	9	IB8, IP6	155	204	240

Figure 9.4

Appendix A to 49 CFR 172 List of Hazardous Substances and Reportable Quantities	
Hazardous Substances	**Reportable Quantity (RQ) Pounds (Kilograms)**
Phenyl mercaptan @	100 (45.4)
Phenylmercury acetate	100 (45.4)
N-Phenylthiourea	100 (45.4)
Phorate	10 (4.54)
Phosgene	10 (4.54)
Phosphine	100 (45.4) *
Phosphoric acid	5,000 (2270)
Phosphoric acid, diethyl 4-nitrophenyl ester	100 (45.4)
Phosphoric acid, lead salt	10 (.454)
* Spills of 10 pounds or more must be reported.	

Figure 9.5

Column 2 — Lists the proper shipping names and descriptions of regulated materials. Entries are in alphabetical order so you can more quickly find the right entry. The table shows proper shipping names in regular type. The shipping paper must show proper shipping names. Names shown in italics are not proper shipping names.

Column 3 — Shows a material's hazard class or division or the entry “Forbidden.” Never transport a “Forbidden” material. Placard hazardous materials shipments based on the quantity and hazard class. You can decide which placards to use if you know these three things:

- Material's hazard class.
- Amount being shipped.
- Amount of all hazardous materials of all classes on your vehicle.

Column 4 — Lists the identification number for each proper shipping name. Identification numbers are preceded by the letters “UN” or “NA.” The letters “NA” are associated with proper shipping names that are only used within the United States and to and from Canada. The identification number must appear on the shipping paper as part of the shipping description and also appear on the package. It also must appear on cargo tanks and other bulk packaging. Police and firefighters use this number to quickly identify the hazardous materials.

Column 5 — Shows the packing group (in Roman numeral) assigned to a material.

Column 6 — Shows the hazard warning label(s) shippers must put on packages of hazardous materials. Some products require use of more than one label due to a dual hazard being present.

Column 7 — Lists the additional (special) provisions that apply to this material. When there is an entry in this column, refer to the federal regulations for specific information. The numbers 1-6 in this column mean the hazardous material is a poison inhalation hazard (PIH). PIH materials have special requirements for shipping papers, marking and placards.

Column 8 — Is a three-part column showing the section numbers covering the packaging requirements for each hazardous material.

Note: Columns 9 and 10 do not apply to transportation by highway.

Appendix A to 49 CFR 172.101 — The List of Hazardous Substances and Reportable Quantities. The DOT and the EPA want to know about spills of hazardous substances named in the List of Hazardous Substances and Reportable Quantities. (See Figure 9.5.) Column 2 of the list shows each product's reportable quantity (RQ). When these materials are being transported in a reportable quantity or greater in one package, the shipper displays the letters "RQ" on the shipping paper and package. The letters "RQ" may appear before or after the basic description. You or your employer must report any spill of these materials that occurs in a reportable quantity.

If the words INHALATION HAZARD appear on the shipping paper or package, the rules require display of the POISON INHALATION HAZARD or POISON GAS placards, as appropriate. These placards must be used in addition to other placards, which may be required by the product's hazard class. Always display the hazard class placard and the POISON INHALATION HAZARD placard, even for small amounts.

Appendix B to 49 CFR 172.101—List of Marine Pollutants. Appendix B is a listing of chemicals that are toxic to marine life. For highway transportation, this list is only used for chemicals in a container with a capacity of 119 gallons or more without a placard or label as specified by the HMR.

Any bulk packages of a Marine Pollutant must display the Marine Pollutant marking (white triangle with a fish and an "X" through the fish). This marking (it is not a placard) must also be displayed on the outside of the vehicle. In addition, a notation must be made on the shipping papers near the description of the material: "Marine Pollutant."

9.3.4 – *The Shipping Paper*

The shipping paper shown in Figure 9.6 describes a shipment. A shipping paper for hazardous materials must include:

- Page numbers if the shipping paper has more than one page. The first page must tell the total number of pages (e.g., Page 1 of 4).
- A proper shipping description for each hazardous material.
- A shipper's certification, signed by the shipper, saying the shipment was prepared according to the regulations.

9.3.5 – *The Item Description*

If a shipping paper describes both hazardous and non-hazardous products, the hazardous materials must be listed in one of the following ways:

- Described first.
- Highlighted in a contrasting color.
- Identified by an "X" placed before the shipping name in a column captioned "HM." The letters "RQ" may be used instead of "X" if a reportable quantity is present in one package.

Shipping Paper

TO:	ABC Corporation 88 Valley Street Anywhere, VA	**FROM:**	DEF Corporation 55 Mountain Street Nowhere, CO	Page 1 of 1

Quantity	HM	Description	Weight
1 cylinder	RQ ("RQ" means that this is a reportable quantity.)	UN1076 Phosgene, 2.3, Poison Inhalation Hazard (UN1076 is the Identification Number from Column 4 of the Hazardous materials Table. Phosgene is the proper shipping name from Column 2 of the Hazardous Materials Table. 2.3 is the Hazard Class from Column 3 of the Hazardous Materials Table.)	25 lbs

This is to certify that the above named materials are properly classified, described, packaged marked and labeled, and are in proper condition for transportation according to the applicable regulations of the Department of Transportation.

Shipper:	DEF Corporation	Carrier:	Safety First
Per:	Smith	Per:	
Date:	October 15, 2003	Date:	

Special Instructions: 24 hour Emergency Contact, John Smith 1-800-555-5555

Figure 9.6

The basic description of hazardous materials includes: the identification number, the proper shipping name, hazard class or division and the packing group, if any, in that order. The packing group is displayed in Roman numerals and may be preceded by “PG.”

The identification number, shipping name and hazard class must not be abbreviated unless specifically authorized in the hazardous materials regulations. The description must also show:

- The total quantity and unit of measure.
- The number and type of packages (ex. 6 drums).
- The letters “RQ,” if a reportable quantity.
- If the letters “RQ” appear, the name of the hazardous substance.
- For all materials with the letter “G” (Generic) in Column 1 of the Hazardous Materials Table, the technical name of the hazardous material.

Shipping papers also must list an emergency response telephone number (unless excepted). The emergency response telephone number is the responsibility of the shipper. It can be used by emergency responders to obtain information about any hazardous materials involved in a spill or fire.

The telephone number must be the number of the person offering the hazardous material for transportation (if the shipper/offerer is the emergency response information (ERI) provider); or the number of an agency or organization capable of, and accepting responsibility for, providing the detailed information required by paragraph (a)(2) of this section. The person who is registered with the ERI provider must be identified by name, contract number or other unique identifier assigned by the ERI provider on the shipping paper.

Shippers also must provide emergency response information to the motor carrier for each hazardous material being shipped. The emergency response information must be able to be used away from the motor vehicle and must provide information on how to safely handle incidents involving the material. At a minimum, it must include the basic description and technical name; immediate hazards to health; risks of fire or explosion; immediate precautions to be taken in the event of an accident or incident; immediate methods for handling fires; initial methods for handling spills or leaks in the absence of fires; and preliminary first aid measures.

Such information can be on the shipping paper or some other document that includes the basic description and technical name of the hazardous material. Or, it may be in a guidance book such as the Emergency Response Guidebook (ERG). Motor carriers may assist shippers by keeping an ERG on each vehicle carrying hazardous materials. The driver must provide the emergency response information to any federal, state, or local authority responding to a hazardous materials incident or investigating one.

Total quantity and number and type of packages must appear before or after the basic description. The packaging type and the unit of measurement may be abbreviated. For example: 10 ctns. UN1263, Paint, 3, PG II, 500 lbs.

The shipper of hazardous wastes must put the word WASTE before the proper shipping name of the material on the shipping paper (hazardous waste manifest). For example: UN1090, Waste Acetone, 3, PG II.

A non-hazardous material may not be described by using a hazard class or an identification number. Shippers must keep a copy of shipping papers (or an electronic image) for a period of two years (three years for hazardous waste) after the material is accepted by the initial carrier. If one provides a carrier service only and is not the originator of the shipment, a carrier is required to keep a copy of the shipping paper (or an electronic image) for a period of one year.

Note: To view complete regulatory requirements for the transportation of hazardous materials, refer to the Code of Federal Regulations, Title 49, Parts 100-185.

9.3.6 – *Shipper's Certification*

When the shipper packages hazardous materials, he/she certifies that the package has been prepared according to the rules. The signed shipper's certification appears on the original shipping paper. The only exceptions are when a shipper is a private carrier transporting his/her own product and when the package is provided by the carrier (for example, a cargo tank). Unless a package is clearly unsafe or does not comply with the HMR, you may accept the shipper's

certification concerning proper packaging. Some carriers have additional rules about transporting hazardous materials. Follow your employer's rules when accepting shipments.

9.3.7 – *Package Markings and Labels*

Shippers print required markings directly on the package, an attached label or a tag. An important package marking is the name of the hazardous material. It is the same name as the one on the shipping paper. The requirements for marking vary by package size and material being transported. When required, the shipper will put the following on the package:

- The name and address of shipper or consignee.
- The hazardous material's shipping name and identification number.
- The labels required.

It is a good idea to compare the shipping paper to the markings and labels. Always make sure that the shipper shows the correct basic description on the shipping paper and verifies that the proper labels are shown on the packages. If you are not familiar with the material, ask the shipper to contact your office.

If rules require it, the shipper will put RQ, MARINE POLLUTANT, BIOHAZARD, HOT or INHALATION-HAZARD on the package. Packages with liquid containers inside will also have package orientation markings with the arrows pointing in the correct upright direction. The labels used always reflect the hazard class of the product. If a package needs more than one label, the labels must be close together, near the proper shipping name.

9.3.8 – *Recognizing Hazardous Materials*

Learn to recognize shipments of hazardous materials. To find out if the shipment includes hazardous materials, look at the shipping paper. Does it have:

- An entry with a proper shipping name, hazard class and identification number?
- A highlighted entry or one with an "X" or "RQ" in the hazardous materials column?

Other clues suggesting hazardous materials include:

- What business is the shipper in (e.g., paint dealer; chemical supply; scientific supply house; pest control or agricultural supplier; or explosives, munitions or fireworks dealer).
- Are there tanks with diamond labels or placards on the premises?
- What type of package is being shipped? Cylinders and drums are often used for hazardous materials shipments.
- Is a hazard class label, proper shipping name or identification number on the package?
- Are there any handling precautions?

9.3.9 – *Hazardous Waste Manifest*

When transporting hazardous waste, you must sign by hand and carry a Uniform Hazardous Waste Manifest. The name and EPA registration number of the shippers, carriers and destination must appear on the manifest. Shippers must prepare, date and sign by hand the manifest. Treat the manifest as a shipping paper when transporting the waste. Only give the waste shipment to another registered carrier or disposal/treatment facility. Each carrier transporting the shipment must sign by hand the manifest. After you deliver the shipment, keep your copy of the manifest. Each copy must have all needed signatures and dates, including those of the person to whom you delivered the waste.

9.3.10 – *Placarding*

Attach the appropriate placards to the vehicle before you drive it. You are only allowed to move an improperly placarded vehicle during an emergency in order to protect life or property.

Placards must appear on both sides and both ends of the vehicle. Each placard must be:

- Easily seen from the direction it faces.
- Placed so the words or numbers are level and read from left to right.
- At least 3 inches away from any other markings.
- Kept clear of attachments or devices, such as ladders, doors and tarpaulins.
- Kept clean and undamaged so that the color, format and message are easily seen.
- Be affixed to a background of contrasting color.

In addition:

- The use of "Drive Safely" and other slogans is prohibited.
- The front placard may be on the front of the tractor or the front of the trailer.

To decide which placards to use, you need to know:

- The hazard class of the materials.
- The amount of hazardous materials shipped.
- The total weight of all classes of hazardous materials in your vehicle.

9.3.11 – *Placard Tables*

There are two placard tables: Table 1 and Table 2. Table 1 materials must be placarded whenever any amount is transported. (See Figure 9.7.)

Except for bulk packaging, the hazard classes in Table 2 need placards only if the total amount transported is 1,001 pounds or more including the package. Add the amounts from all shipping papers for all the Table 2 products you have on board. (See Figure 9.8.)

You may use DANGEROUS placards instead of separate placards for each Table 2 hazard class when:

- You have 1,001 pounds or more of two or more Table 2 hazard classes, requiring different placards; and
- You have not loaded 2,205 pounds or more of any Table 2 hazard class material at any one place. (You must use the specific placard for this material.)

The dangerous placard is an option, not a requirement. You can always placard for the materials.

If the words INHALATION HAZARD are on the shipping paper or package, you must display POISON GAS or POISON INHALATION placards in addition to any other placards needed by the product's hazard class. The 1,000-pound exception does not apply to these materials.

Materials with a secondary hazard of dangerous when wet must display the DANGEROUS WHEN WET placard in addition to any other placards needed by the product's hazard class. The 1,000-pound exception to placarding does not apply to these materials.

Placards used to identify the primary or subsidiary hazard class of a material must have the hazard class or division number displayed in the lower corner of the placard. Permanently affixed subsidiary hazard placards without the hazard class number may be used as long as they stay within color specifications.

Placards may be displayed for hazardous materials even if not required so long as the placard identifies the hazard of the material being transported.

Bulk packaging is a single container with a capacity of 119 gallons or more. A bulk package and a vehicle transporting a bulk package must be placarded, even if it only has the residue of a

Placard Table 1
Any Amount

IF YOUR VEHICLE CONTAINS ANY AMOUNT OF……	PLACARD AS…
1.1 Mass Explosives	Explosives 1.1
1.2 Project Hazards	Explosives 1.2
1.3 Mass Fire Hazards	Explosives 1.3
2.3 Poisonous/Toxic Gases	Poison Gas
4.3 Dangerous When Wet	Dangerous When Wet
5.2 (Organic Peroxide, Type B, liquid or solid, Temperature controlled)	Organic Peroxide
6.1 (Inhalation hazard zone A & B only)	Poison/toxic inhalation
7 (Radioactive Yellow III label only)	Radioactive

Figure 9.7

Placard Table 2
1,001 Pounds Or More

Category of Material (Hazard class or division number and additional description, as appropriate)	Placard Name
1.4 Minor Explosion	Explosives 1.4
1.5 Very Insensitive	Explosives 1.5
1.6 Extremely Insensitive	Explosives 1.6
2.1 Flammable Gases	Flammable Gas
2.2 Non- Flammable Gases	Non-Flammable Gas.
3 Flammable Liquids	Flammable
Combustible Liquid	Combustible*
4.1 Flammable Solids	Flammable Solid
4.2 Spontaneously Combustible	Spontaneously Combustible
5.1 Oxidizers	Oxidizer
5.2 (other than organic peroxide, Type B, liquid or solid, Temperature Controlled)	Organic Peroxide
6.1 (other than inhalation hazard zone A or B)	Poison
6.2 Infectious Substances	(None)
8 Corrosives	Corrosive
9 Miscellaneous Hazardous Materials	Class 9**
ORM-D	(None)
* FLAMMABLE may be used in place of a COMBUSTIBLE on a cargo tank or portable tank.	
** Class 9 Placard is not required for domestic transportation.	

Figure 9.8

hazardous material. Certain bulk packages only have to be placarded on the two opposite sides or may display labels. All other bulk packages must be placarded on all four sides.

Subsections 9.1, 9.2 and 9.3
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Shippers package in order to (fill in the blank) the material.
2. Driver placard their vehicle to (fill in the blank) the risk.
3. What three things do you need to know to decide which placards (if any) you need?
4. A hazardous materials identification number must appear on the (fill in the blank) and on the (fill in the blank). The identification number must also appear on cargo tanks and other bulk packaging.
5. Where must you keep shipping papers describing hazardous materials?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsections 9.1, 9.2 and 9.3.

9.4 – Loading and Unloading
Do all you can to protect containers of hazardous materials. Do not use any tools, which might damage containers or other packaging during loading. Do not use hooks.

9.4.1 – *General Loading Requirements*

- Before loading or unloading, set the parking brake. Make sure the vehicle will not move.
- Many products become more hazardous when exposed to heat. Load hazardous materials away from heat sources.
- Watch for signs of leaking or damaged containers: LEAKS SPELL TROUBLE! Do not transport leaking packages. Depending on the material, you, your truck and others could be in danger. It is illegal to move a vehicle with leaking hazardous materials.
- Containers of hazardous materials must be braced to prevent movement of the packages during transportation.

No Smoking. When loading or unloading hazardous materials, keep fire away. Do not let people smoke nearby. Never smoke around:

- Class 1 (Explosives).
- Class 2.1 (Flammable Gas).
- Class 3 (Flammable Liquids).
- Class 4 (Flammable Solids).
- Class 5 (Oxidizers).

Secure Against Movement. Brace containers so they will not fall, slide or bounce around during transportation. Be very careful when loading containers that have valves or other fittings. All hazardous materials packages must be secured during transportation.

After loading, do not open any package during your trip. Never transfer hazardous materials from one package to another while in transit. You may empty a cargo tank, but do not empty any other package while it is on the vehicle.

Cargo Heater Rules. There are special cargo heater rules for loading:

- Class 1 (Explosives).
- Class 2.1 (Flammable Gas).
- Class 3 (Flammable Liquids).

The rules usually forbid use of cargo heaters, including automatic cargo heater/air conditioner units. Unless you have read all the related rules, do not load the above products in a cargo space that has a heater.

Use Closed Cargo Space. You cannot have overhang or tailgate loads of:

- Class 1 (Explosives).
- Class 4 (Flammable Solids).
- Class 5 (Oxidizers).

You must load these hazardous materials into a closed cargo space unless all packages are:

- Fire and water resistant.
- Covered with a fire and water resistant tarp.

Precautions for Specific Hazards

Class 1 (Explosives) Materials. Turn your engine off before loading or unloading any explosives. Then check the cargo space. You must:

- Disable cargo heaters. Disconnect heater power sources and drain heater fuel tanks.
- Make sure there are no sharp points that might damage cargo. Look for bolts, screws, nails, broken side panels and broken floorboards.
- Use a floor lining with Division 1.1, 1.2 or 1.3. The floors must be tight, and the liner must be either non-metallic material or non-ferrous metal.

Use extra care to protect explosives. Never use hooks or other metal tools. Never drop, throw or roll packages. Protect explosive packages from other cargo that might cause damage.

Do not transfer a Division 1.1, 1.2 or 1.3 from one vehicle to another on a public roadway except in an emergency. If safety requires an emergency transfer, set out red warning reflectors, flags or electric lanterns. You must warn others on the road.

Never transport damaged packages of explosives. Do not take a package that shows any dampness or oily stain.

Do not transport Division 1.1 or 1.2 in vehicle combinations if:

- There is a marked or placarded cargo tank in the combination.
- The other vehicle in the combination contains:
  - —Division 1.1 A (Initiating Explosives).
  - —Packages of Class 7 (Radioactive) materials labeled “Yellow III.”
  - —Division 2.3 (Poisonous Gas) or Division 6.1 (Poisonous) materials.
  - —Hazardous materials in a portable tank, on a DOT Spec 106A or 110A tank.

Class 4 (Flammable Solids) and Class 5 (Oxidizers) Materials. Class 4 materials are solids that react (including fire and explosion) to water, heat and air or even react spontaneously.

Class 4 and 5 materials must be completely enclosed in a vehicle or covered securely. Class 4 and 5 materials, which become unstable and dangerous when wet, must be kept dry while in transit and during loading and unloading. Materials that are subject to spontaneous combustion or heating must be in vehicles with sufficient ventilation.

Class 8 (Corrosive) Materials. If loading by hand, load breakable containers of corrosive liquid one by one. Keep them right-side up. Do not drop or roll the containers. Load them onto an even floor surface. Stack carboys only if the lower tiers can bear the weight of the upper tiers safely.

Do not load nitric acid above any other product.

Load charged storage batteries so their liquid will not spill. Keep them right-side up. Make sure other cargo will not fall against or short circuit them.

Never load corrosive liquids next to or above:

- Division 1.4 (Explosives C).
- Division 4.1 (Flammable Solids).
- Division 4.3 (Dangerous When Wet).
- Class 5 (Oxidizers).
- Division 2.3, Zone B (Poisonous Gases).

Never load corrosive liquids with:

- Division 1.1 or 1.2.
- Division 1.2 or 1.3.
- Division 1.5 (Blasting Agents).
- Division 2.3, Zone A (Poisonous Gases).
- Division 4.2 (Spontaneously Combustible Materials).
- Division 6.1, PGI, Zone A (Poison Liquids).

Class 2 (Compressed Gases) Including Cryogenic Liquids. If your vehicle does not have racks to hold cylinders, the cargo space floor must be flat. The cylinders must be:

- Held upright.
- In racks attached to the vehicle or in boxes that will keep them from turning over.

Cylinders may be loaded in a horizontal position (lying down) if it is designed so the relief valve is in the vapor space.

Division 2.3 (Poisonous Gas) or Division 6.1 (Poisonous) Materials. Never transport these materials in containers with interconnections. Never load a package labeled POISON or POISON INHALATION HAZARD in the driver's cab or sleeper or with food material for human or animal consumption. There are special rules for loading and unloading Class 2 materials in cargo tanks. You must have special training to do this.

Class 7 (Radioactive) Materials. Some packages of Class 7 (Radioactive) materials bear a number called the “transport index.” The shipper labels these packages Radioactive II or Radioactive III and prints the package's transport index on the label. Radiation surrounds each package, passing through all nearby packages. To deal with this problem, the number of packages you can load together is controlled. Their closeness to people, animals and unexposed film is also controlled. The transport index tells the degree of control needed during transportation. The total transport index of all packages in a single vehicle must not exceed 50. Table A (Figure 9.10), Page 121, shows rules for each transport index. It shows how close you can load Class 7 (Radioactive) materials to people, animals or film. For example, you cannot leave a package with a transport index of 1.1 within 2 feet of people or cargo space walls.

Mixed Loads. The rules require some products to be loaded separately. You cannot load them together in the same cargo space. Figure 9.9 lists some examples. The regulations (the Segregation Table for Hazardous Materials) name other materials you must keep apart.

Do Not Load Table

Do Not Load	In The Same Vehicle With
Division 6.1 or 2.3 (POISON or poison inhalation hazard labeled material).	Animal or human food unless the poison package is over packed in an approved way. Foodstuffs are anything you swallow. However, mouthwash, toothpaste, and skin creams are not foodstuff.
Division 2.3 (Poisonous) gas Zone A or Division 6.1 (Poison) liquids, PGI, Zone A.	Division 1.1, 1.2, 1.3 Explosives, Division 5.1 (Oxidizers), Class 3 (Flammable Liquids), Class 8 (Corrosive Liquids), Division 5.2 (Organic Peroxides), Division 1.1, 1.2, 1.3 Explosives, Division 1.5 (Blasting Agents), Division 2.1 (Flammable Gases), Class 4 (Flammable Solids).
Charged storage batteries.	Division 1.1.
Class 1 (Detonating primers).	Any other explosives unless in authorized containers or packages.
Division 6.1 (Cyanides or cyanide mixtures).	Acids, corrosive materials, or other acidic materials which could release hydrocyanic acid. For Example: Cyanides, Inorganic, n.o.s. Silver Cyanide Sodium Cyanide.
Nitric acid (Class 8).	Other materials unless the nitric acid is not loaded above any other material.

Figure 9.9

Subsection 9.4
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Around which hazard classes must you never smoke?
2. Which three hazard classes should not be loaded into a trailer that has a heater/air conditioner unit?
3. Should the floor liner required for Division 1.1 or 1.2 materials be stainless steel?
4. At the shipper's dock you are given a paper for 100 cartons of battery acid. You already have 100 pounds of dry Silver Cyanide on board. What precautions do you have to take?
5. Name a hazard class that uses transport indexes to determine the amount that can be loaded in a single vehicle.

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsection 9.4.

9.5 – Bulk Packaging Marking, Loading and Unloading

The glossary at the end of this section gives the meaning of the word "bulk." Cargo tanks are bulk packaging permanently attached to a vehicle. Cargo tanks remain on the vehicle when you load and unload them. Portable tanks are bulk packaging, which are not permanently attached to a vehicle. The product is loaded or unloaded while the portable tanks are off the vehicle. Portable tanks are then put on a vehicle for transportation. There are many types of cargo tanks in use. The most common cargo tanks are MC306 for liquids and MC331 for gases.

9.5.1 – *Markings*

You must display the identification number of the hazardous materials in portable tanks and cargo tanks and other bulk packaging (such as dump trucks). Identification numbers are in Column 4 of the Hazardous Materials Table. The rules require black 100-mm (3.9-inch) numbers on orange panels, placards or a white, diamond-shaped background if no placards are required. Specification cargo tanks must show re-test date markings.

Portable tanks must also show the lessee's or owner's name. They must also display the shipping name of the contents on two opposing sides. The letters of the shipping name must be at least 2-inches tall on portable tanks with capacities of more than 1,000 gallons and 1-inch tall on portable tanks with capacities of less than 1,000 gallons. The identification number must appear on each side and each end of a portable tank or other bulk packaging that holds 1,000 gallons or more, and on two opposing sides if the portable tank holds less than 1,000 gallons. The identification numbers must still be visible when the portable tank is on the motor vehicle. If they are not visible, you must display the identification number on both sides and ends of the motor vehicle.

Intermediate bulk containers (IBCs) are bulk packages, but are not required to have the owner's name or shipping name.

9.5.2 – *Tank Loading*

The person in charge of loading and unloading a cargo tank must be sure a qualified person is always watching. This person watching the loading or unloading must:

- Be alert.
- Have a clear view of the cargo tank.
- Be within 25 feet of the tank.
- Know of the hazards of the materials involved.
- Know the procedures to follow in an emergency.
- Be authorized to move the cargo tank and able to do so.

There are special attendance rules for cargo tanks transporting propane and anhydrous ammonia.

Close all manholes and valves before moving a tank of hazardous materials, no matter how small the amount in the tank or how short the distance. Manholes and valves must be closed to prevent leaks. It is illegal to move a cargo tank with open valves or covers unless it is empty, according to 49 CFR 173.29.

9.5.3 – *Flammable Liquids*
Turn off your engine before loading or unloading any flammable liquids. Only run the engine if needed to operate a pump. Ground a cargo tank correctly before filling it through an open filling hole. Ground the tank before opening the filling hole and maintain the ground until after closing the filling hole.

9.5.4 – *Compressed Gas*
Keep liquid discharge valves on a compressed gas tank closed except when loading and unloading. Unless your engine runs a pump for product transfer, turn it off when loading or unloading. If you use the engine, turn it off after product transfer, before you unhook the hose. Unhook all loading/unloading connections before coupling, uncoupling or moving a cargo tank. Always chock trailers and semitrailers to prevent motion when uncoupled from the power unit.

Subsection 9.5
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. What are cargo tanks?
2. How is a portable tank different from a cargo tank?
3. Your engine runs a pump used during delivery of compressed gas. Should you turn off the engine before or after unhooking hoses after delivery?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsection 9.5.

9.6 – Hazardous Materials — Driving and Parking Rules

9.6.1 – *Parking with Division 1.1, 1.2 or 1.3 Explosives*
Never park with Division 1.1, 1.2 or 1.3 explosives within 5 feet of the traveled part of the road. Except for short periods of time needed for vehicle operation necessities (e.g., fueling), do not park within 300 feet of:

- A bridge, tunnel or building.
- A place where people gather.
- An open fire.

If you must park to do your job, do so only briefly.

Do not park on private property unless the owner is aware of the danger. Someone must always watch the parked vehicle. You may let someone else watch it for you only if your vehicle is:

- On the shipper's property.
- On the carrier's property.
- On the consignee's property.

You are allowed to leave your vehicle unattended in a safe haven. A safe haven is an approved place for parking unattended vehicles loaded with explosives. Designation of authorized safe havens is usually made by local authorities.

9.6.2 – *Parking a Placarded Vehicle Not Transporting Division 1.1, 1.2 or 1.3 Explosives*
You may park a placarded vehicle (not laden with explosives) within 5 feet of the traveled part of the road only if your work requires it. Do so only briefly. Someone must always watch the vehicle when parked on a public roadway or shoulder. Do not uncouple a trailer and leave it with hazardous materials on a public street. Do not park within 300 feet of an open fire.

9.6.3 – *Attending Parked Vehicles*
The person attending a placarded vehicle must:

- Be in the vehicle, awake and not in the sleeper berth or within 100 feet of the vehicle and have it within clear view.
- Be aware of the hazards of the materials being transported.
- Know what to do in emergencies.
- Be able to move the vehicle, if needed.

9.6.4 – *No Flares*
You might break down and have to use stopped vehicle signals. Use reflective triangles or red electric lights. Never use burning signals, such as flares or fuses, around a:

- Tank used for Class 3 (flammable liquids) or Division 2.1 (flammable gas) whether loaded or empty.
- Vehicle loaded with Division 1.1, 1.2 or 1.3 explosives.

9.6.5 – *Route Restrictions*
Some states and counties require permits to transport hazardous materials or wastes. They may limit the routes you can use. Local rules about routes and permits change often. It is your job as driver to find out if you need permits or must use special routes. Make sure you have all needed papers before starting.

If you work for a carrier, ask your dispatcher about route restrictions or permits. If you are an independent trucker and are planning a new route, check with state agencies where you plan to travel. Some localities prohibit transportation of hazardous materials through tunnels, over bridges or other roadways. Always check before you start.

Whenever placarded, avoid heavily populated areas, crowds, tunnels, narrow streets and alleys. Take other routes, even if inconvenient, unless there is no other way. Never drive a placarded vehicle near open fires unless you can safely pass without stopping.

If transporting Division 1.1, 1.2 or 1.3 explosives, you must have a written route plan and follow that plan. Carriers prepare the route plan in advance and give the driver a copy. You may plan the route yourself if you pick up the explosives at a location other than your employer's terminal. Write out the plan in advance. Keep a copy of it with you while transporting the explosives. Deliver shipments of explosives only to authorized persons or leave them in locked rooms designed for explosives storage.

A carrier must choose the safest route to transport placarded radioactive materials. After choosing the route, the carrier must tell the driver about the radioactive materials and show the route plan.

9.6.6 – *No Smoking*
Do not smoke within 25 feet of a placarded cargo tank used for Class 3 (flammable liquids) or Division 2.1 (gases). Also, do not smoke or carry a lighted cigarette, cigar or pipe within 25 feet of any vehicle that contains:

- Class 1 (explosives).
- Class 3 (flammable liquids).
- Class 4 (flammable solids).
- Class 4.2 (spontaneously combustible).

9.6.7 – *Refuel with Engine Off*
Turn off your engine before fueling a motor vehicle containing hazardous materials. Someone must always be at the nozzle controlling fuel flow.

9.6.8 – *10 B:C Fire Extinguisher*
The power unit of placarded vehicles must have a fire extinguisher with a UL rating of 10 B:C or more.

9.6.9 – *Check Tires*
Make sure your tires are properly inflated. Check placarded vehicles with dual tires at the start of each trip and when you park. You must check the tires each time you stop. The only acceptable way to check tire pressure is to use a tire pressure gauge.

Do not drive with a tire that is leaking or flat except to the nearest safe place to fix it. Remove any overheated tire. Place it a safe distance from your vehicle. Do not drive until you correct the cause of the overheating. Remember to follow the rules about parking and attending placarded vehicles. They apply even when checking, repairing or replacing tires.

9.6.10 – *Where to Keep Shipping Papers and Emergency Response Information*

Do not accept a hazardous materials shipment without a properly prepared shipping paper. A shipping paper for hazardous materials must always be easily recognized. Other people must be able to find it quickly after a crash.

- Clearly distinguish hazardous materials shipping papers from others by tabbing them or keeping them on top of the stack of papers.
- When you are behind the wheel, keep shipping papers within your reach (with your seat belt on) or in a pouch on the driver's door. They must be easily seen by someone entering the cab.
- When not behind the wheel, leave shipping papers in the driver's door pouch or on the driver's seat.
- Emergency response information must be kept in the same location as the shipping paper.

Papers for Division 1.1, 1.2 or 1.3 Explosives. A carrier must give each driver transporting Division 1.1, 1.2 or 1.3 explosives a copy of Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations (FMCSR), Part 397. The carrier must also give written instructions on what to do if delayed or in an accident. The written instructions must include:

- Names and telephone numbers of people to contact (including carrier agents or shippers).
- Nature of the explosives transported.
- Precautions to take in emergencies, such as fires, accidents or leaks.

Drivers must sign a receipt for these documents. You must be familiar with and have in your possession while driving, the:

- Shipping papers.
- Written emergency instructions.
- Written route plan.
- A copy of FMCSR, Part 397.

9.6.11 – *Equipment for Chlorine*

A driver transporting chlorine in cargo tanks must have an approved gas mask in the vehicle. The driver must also have an emergency kit for controlling leaks in dome cover plate fittings on the cargo tank.

9.6.12 – *Stop Before Railroad Crossings*

Stop before a railroad crossing if your vehicle:

- Is placarded.
- Carries any amount of chlorine.
- Has cargo tanks, whether loaded or empty, used for hazardous materials.

You must stop 15 to 50 feet before the nearest rail. Proceed only when you are sure no train is coming and you can clear the tracks without stopping. Do not shift gears while crossing the tracks.

9.7 – Hazardous Materials — Emergencies

9.7.1 – *Emergency Response Guidebook (ERG)*

The Department of Transportation has a guidebook for firefighters, police and industry workers on how to protect themselves and the public from hazardous materials. The guide is indexed by proper shipping name and hazardous materials identification number. Emergency personnel look for these things on the shipping paper. That is why it is vital that the proper shipping name, identification number, label and placards are correct.

9.7.2 – *Crashes/Incidents*

As a professional driver, your job at the scene of a crash or an incident is to:

- Keep people away from the scene.
- Limit the spread of material, only if you can safely do so.
- Communicate the danger of the hazardous materials to emergency response personnel.
- Provide emergency responders with the shipping papers and emergency response information.

Follow this checklist:

- Check to see that your driving partner is OK.
- Keep shipping papers with you.
- Keep people far away and upwind.
- Warn others of the danger.
- Call for help.
- Follow your employer's instructions.

9.7.3 – *Fires*

You might have to control minor truck fires on the road. However, unless you have the training and equipment to do so safely, do not fight hazardous materials fires. Dealing with hazardous materials fires requires special training and protective gear.

When you discover a fire, call for help. You may use the fire extinguisher to keep minor truck fires from spreading to cargo before firefighters arrive. Feel trailer doors to see if they are hot before opening them. If hot, you may have a cargo fire and should not open the doors. Opening doors lets air in and may make the fire flare up. Without air, many fires only smolder until firemen arrive, doing less damage. If your cargo is already on fire, it is not safe to fight the fire. Keep the shipping papers with you to give to emergency personnel as soon as they arrive. Warn other people of the danger and keep them away.

If you discover a cargo leak, identify the hazardous materials leaking by using shipping papers, labels or package location. Do not touch any leaking material — many people injure themselves by touching hazardous materials. Do not try to identify the material or find the source of a leak by smell. Toxic gases can destroy your sense of smell and can injure or kill you even if they do not smell. Never eat, drink or smoke around a leak or spill.

If hazardous materials are spilling from your vehicle, do not move it any more than safety requires. You may move off the road and away from places where people gather, if doing so serves safety. Only move your vehicle if you can do so without danger to yourself or others.

Never continue driving with hazardous materials leaking from your vehicle in order to find the nearest phone booth, truck stop, help or similar reason. Remember: The carrier pays for the cleanup of contaminated parking lots, roadways and drainage ditches. The costs are enormous, so do not leave a lengthy trail of contamination. If hazardous materials are spilling from your vehicle:

- Park it.
- Secure the area.
- Stay there.
- Send someone else for help.

When sending someone for help, give that person:

- A description of the emergency.
- Your exact location and direction of travel.
- Your name, the carrier's name and the name of the community or city where your terminal is located.
- The proper shipping name, hazard class and identification number of the hazardous materials, if you know them.

This is a lot for someone to remember. It is a good idea to write it all down for the person you send for help. The emergency response team must know these things to find you and to handle the emergency. They may have to travel miles to get to you. This information will help them to bring the right equipment the first time, without having to go back for it.

Never move your vehicle if doing so will cause contamination or damage the vehicle. Keep upwind and away from roadside rests, truck stops, cafes and businesses. Never try to repack leaking containers. Unless you have the training and equipment to repair leaks safely, do not try it. Call your dispatcher or supervisor for instructions and, if needed, emergency personnel.

9.7.4 – *Responses to Specific Hazards*

Class 1 (Explosives). If your vehicle has a breakdown or accident while carrying explosives, warn others of the danger. Keep bystanders away. Do not allow smoking or open fire near the vehicle. If there is a fire, warn everyone of the danger of explosion.

Remove all explosives before separating vehicles involved in a collision. Place the explosives at least 200 feet from the vehicles and occupied buildings. Stay a safe distance away.

Class 2 (Compressed Gases). If compressed gas is leaking from your vehicle, warn others of the danger. Only permit those involved in removing the hazard or wreckage to get close. You must notify the shipper if compressed gas is involved in any accident.

Unless you are fueling machinery used in road construction or maintenance, do not transfer a flammable compressed gas from one tank to another on any public roadway.

Class 3 (Flammable Liquids). If you are transporting a flammable liquid and have an accident or your vehicle breaks down, prevent bystanders from gathering. Warn people of the danger. Keep them from smoking.

Never transport a leaking cargo tank farther than needed to reach a safe place. Get off the roadway if you can do so safely. Do not transfer flammable liquid from one vehicle to another on a public roadway except in an emergency.

Class 4 (Flammable Solids) and Class 5 (Oxidizing Materials). If a flammable solid or oxidizing material spills, warn others of the fire hazard. Do not open smoldering packages of flammable solids. Remove them from the vehicle if you can safely do so. Also, remove unbroken packages if it will decrease the fire hazard.

Class 6 (Poisonous Materials and Infectious Substances). It is your job to protect yourself, other people and property from harm. Remember that many products classed as poison are also flammable. If you think a Division 2.3 (Poison Gases) or Division 6.1 (Poison Materials) might be flammable, take the added precautions needed for flammable liquids or gases. Do not allow smoking, open flame or welding. Warn others of the hazards of fire, of inhaling vapors or coming in contact with the poison.

A vehicle involved in a leak of Division 2.3 (Poison Gases) or Division 6.1 (Poisons) must be checked for stray poison before being used again.

If a Division 6.2 (Infectious Substances) package is damaged in handling or transportation, you should immediately contact your supervisor. Packages that appear to be damaged or show signs of leakage should not be accepted.

Class 7 (Radioactive Materials). If radioactive material is involved in a leak or broken package, tell your dispatcher or supervisor as soon as possible. If there is a spill or if an internal container might be damaged, do not touch or inhale the material. Do not use the vehicle until it is cleaned and checked with a survey meter.

Class 8 (Corrosive Materials). If corrosives spill or leak during transportation, be careful to avoid further damage or injury when handling the containers. Parts of the vehicle exposed to a corrosive liquid must be thoroughly washed with water. After unloading, wash out the interior as soon as possible before reloading.

If continuing to transport a leaking tank would be unsafe, get off the road. If safe to do so, contain any liquid leaking from the vehicle. Keep bystanders away from the liquid and its fumes. Do everything possible to prevent injury to yourself and to others.

9.7.5 – *Required Notification*

The National Response Center helps coordinate emergency response to chemical hazards. It is a resource to the police and firefighters. It maintains a 24-hour, toll-free line listed below. You or your employer must phone when any of the following occur as a direct result of a hazardous materials incident:

- A person is killed.
- An injured person requires hospitalization.
- Estimated property damage exceeds $50,000.
- The general public is evacuated for more than one hour.
- One or more major transportation arteries or facilities are closed for one hour or more.
- Fire, breakage, spillage or suspected radioactive contamination occurs.
- Fire, breakage, spillage or suspected contamination occur involving shipment of etiologic agents (bacteria or toxins).
- A situation exists of such a nature (e.g., continuing danger to life exists at the scene of an incident) that, in the judgment of the carrier, should be reported.

National Response Center
(800) 424-8802

Persons telephoning the National Response Center should be ready to give:

- Their name.
- Name and address of the carrier they work for.
- Phone number where they can be reached.
- Date, time and location of incident.
- The extent of injuries, if any.
- Classification, name and quantity of hazardous materials involved, if such information is available.
- Type of incident and nature of hazardous materials involvement and whether a continuing danger to life exists at the scene.

If a reportable quantity of hazardous substance was involved, the caller should give the name of the shipper and the quantity of the hazardous substance discharged.

Be prepared to give your employer the required information as well. Carriers must make detailed written reports within 30 days of an incident.

CHEMTREC
(800) 424-9300

The Chemical Transportation Emergency Center (CHEMTREC) in Washington also has a 24-hour, toll-free line. CHEMTREC was created to provide emergency personnel with technical information about the physical properties of hazardous materials. The National Response Center and CHEMTREC are in close communication. If you call either one, they will tell the other about the problem when appropriate.

Do not leave radioactive yellow-II or yellow-III labeled packages near people, animals or film longer than shown in Figure 9.10.

Classes of Hazardous Materials. Hazardous materials are categorized into nine major hazard classes and additional categories for consumer commodities and combustible liquids. The classes of hazardous materials are listed in Figure 9.11.

Radioactive Separation Table A

TRANSPORT TOTAL INDEX	MINIMUM DISTANCE IN FEET TO NEAREST UNDEVELOPED FILM					TO PEOPLE OR CARGO COMPARTMENT PARTITIONS
	0-2 Hrs.	2-4 Hrs.	4-8 Hrs.	8-12 Hrs.	Over 12 Hrs.	
None	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.1 to 1.0	1	2	3	4	5	1
1.1 to 5.0	3	4	6	8	11	2
5.1 to 10.0	4	6	9	11	15	3
10.1 to 20.0	5	8	12	16	22	4
20.1 to 30.0	7	10	15	20	29	5
30.1 to 40.0	8	11	17	22	33	6
40.1 to 50.0	9	12	19	24	36	

Figure 9.10

Hazard Class Definitions Table B

Class	Class Name	Example
1	Explosives	Ammunition, Dynamite, Fireworks
2	Gases	Propane, Oxygen, Helium
3	Flammable	Gasoline Fuel, Acetone
4	Flammable Solids	Matches, Fuses
5	Oxidizers	Ammonium Nitrate, Hydrogen Peroxide
6	Poisons	Pesticides, Arsenic
7	Radioactive	Uranium, Plutonium
8	Corrosives	Hydrochloric Acid, Battery Acid
9	Miscellaneous Hazardous Materials	Formaldehyde, Asbestos
None	ORM-D (Other Regulated Material- Domestic)	Hair Spray or Charcoal
None	Combustible Liquids	Fuel Oils, Lighter Fluid

Figure 9.11

Subsections 9.6 and 9.7
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. If your placarded trailer has dual tires, how often should you check the tires?
2. What is a safe haven?
3. How close to the traveled part of the roadway can you park with Division 1.2 or 1.3 materials?
4. How close can you park to a bridge, tunnel or building with the same load?
5. What type of fire extinguisher must placarded vehicles carry?
6. You are hauling 100 pounds of Division 4.3 (dangerous when wet) materials. Do you need to stop before a railroad-highway crossing?
7. At a rest area you discover your hazardous materials shipments slowly leaking from the vehicle. There is no phone around. What should you do?
8. What is the Emergency Response Guide (ERG)?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Subsections 9.6 and 9.7.

9.8 – Hazardous Materials Glossary
This glossary presents definitions of certain terms used in this section. A complete glossary of terms can be found in the federal Hazardous Materials Rules (49 CFR 171.8). You should have an up-to-date copy of these rules for your reference.

(**Note:** You will not be tested on this glossary.)

Sec. 171.8 Definitions and abbreviations.
Bulk Packaging — Packaging, other than a vessel or a barge, including a transport vehicle or freight container, in which hazardous materials are loaded with no intermediate form of containment and which has:
1. A maximum capacity greater than 450 L (119 gallons) as a receptacle for a liquid;
2. A maximum net mass greater than 400 kg (882 pounds) or a maximum capacity greater than 450 L (119 gallons) as a receptacle for a solid; or
3. A water capacity greater than 454 kg (1000 pounds) as a receptacle for a gas as defined in Sec. 173.115.

Cargo Tank — A bulk packaging that:
1. Is a tank intended primarily for the carriage of liquids or gases and includes appurtenances, reinforcements, fittings and closures (for "tank", see 49 CFR 178.3451(c), 178.3371 or 178.3381, as applicable);
2. Is permanently attached to or forms a part of a motor vehicle, or is not permanently attached to a motor vehicle, but which, by reason of its size, construction or attachment to a motor vehicle is loaded or unloaded without being removed from the motor vehicle; and
3. Is not fabricated under a specification for cylinders, portable tanks, tank cars or multiunit tank car tanks.

Carrier — A person engaged in the transportation of passengers or property by:
1. Land or water as a common, contract or private carrier, or
2. Civil aircraft.

Consignee — The business or person to whom a shipment is delivered.

Division — A subdivision of a hazard class.

EPA — U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

FMCSR — The Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations.

Freight Container — A reusable container having a volume of 64-cubic feet or more, designed and constructed to permit being lifted with its contents intact and intended primarily for containment of packages (in unit form) during transportation.

Fuel Tank — A tank, other than a cargo tank, used to transport flammable or combustible liquid or compressed gas for the purpose of supplying fuel for propulsion of the transport vehicle to which it is attached, or for the operation of other equipment on the transport vehicle.

Gross Weight or Gross Mass – The weight of the packaging plus the weight of its contents.

Hazard Class — The category of hazard assigned to a hazardous material under the definitional criteria of Part 173 and the provisions of the Sec. 172.101 Table. A material may meet the defining criteria for more than one hazard class but is assigned to only one hazard class.

Hazardous Materials — A substance or material that has been determined by the Secretary of Transportation to be capable of posing an unreasonable risk to health, safety and property when transported in commerce and which has been so designated. The term includes hazardous substances, hazardous wastes, marine pollutants, elevated

temperature materials and materials designated as hazardous in the hazardous materials table of Sec.172.101 and materials that meet the defining criteria for hazard classes and Divisions in Sec.173, Subchapter C of this chapter.

Hazardous Substance Concentrations		
RQ Pounds (Kilograms	Concentration by Weight	
	Percent	PPM
5,000 (2,270)	10	100,000
1,000 (454)	2	20,000
100 (45.4)	.2	2,000
10 (4.54)	.02	200
1 (0.454)	.002	20

Figure 9.12

Hazardous Substance — A material, including its mixtures and solutions, that:

1. Is listed in Appendix A to Sec. 172.101;
2. Is in a quantity, in one package, which equals or exceeds the reportable quantity (RQ) listed in Appendix A to Sec. 172.101; and
3. When in a mixture or solution:
   (i) For radionuclides, conforms to Paragraph 7 of Appendix A to Sec. 172.101.
   (ii) For other than radionuclides, is in a concentration by weight which equals or exceeds the concentration corresponding to the RQ of the material, as shown in Figure 9.12.

This definition does not apply to petroleum products that are lubricants or fuels (see 40 CFR 300.6).

Hazardous Waste — For the purposes of this chapter, means any material that is subject to the Hazardous Waste Manifest Requirements of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency specified in 40 CFR Part 262.

Intermediate Bulk Container (IBC) — A rigid or flexible portable packaging, other than a cylinder or portable tank, which is designed for mechanical handling. Standards for IBCs manufactured in the United States are set forth in subparts N and O Sec. 178.

Limited Quantity — The maximum amount of a hazardous material for which there may be specific labeling or packaging exception.

Marking — The descriptive name, identification number, instructions, cautions, weight, specification or UN marks or combinations thereof, required by this subchapter on outer packaging of hazardous materials.

Mixture — A material composed of more than one chemical compound or element.

Name of Contents — The proper shipping name as specified in Sec. 172.101.

Non-bulk Packaging — A packaging that has:

1. A maximum capacity of 450 L (119 gallons) as a receptacle for a liquid;
2. A maximum net mass less than 400 kg (882 pounds) and a maximum capacity of 450 L (119 gallons) or less as a receptacle for a solid; or
3. A water capacity greater than 454 kg (1,000 pounds) or less as a receptacle for a gas as defined in Sec. 173.115.

N.O.S. — Not otherwise specified.

Outage or Ullage — The amount by which a packaging falls short of being liquid full, usually expressed in percent by volume.

Portable Tank — Bulk packaging (except a cylinder having a water capacity of 1,000 pounds or less) designed primarily to be loaded onto, or on or temporarily attached to a transport vehicle or ship and equipped with skids, mountings or accessories to facilitate handling of the tank by mechanical means. It does not include a cargo tank, tank car, multiunit tank car tank or trailer carrying 3AX, 3AAX or 3T cylinders.

Proper Shipping Name — The name of the hazardous materials shown in Roman print (not italics) in Sec. 172.101.

P.s.i. or psi — Pounds per square inch.

P.s.i.a. or psia — Pounds per square inch absolute.

Reportable Quantity (RQ) — The quantity specified in Column 2 of the Appendix to Sec. 172.101 for any material identified in Column 1 of the Appendix.

RSPA — now PHMSA — The Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, DC 20590.

Shipper's Certification — A statement on a shipping paper, signed by the shipper, saying he/she prepared the shipment properly according to law. For example: “This is to certify that the above named materials are properly classified, described, packaged, marked and labeled, and are in proper condition for transportation according to the applicable regulations or the Department of Transportation.” or “I hereby declare that the contents of this consignment are fully and accurately described above by the proper shipping name and are classified, packaged, marked and labeled/placarded, and are in all respects in proper condition for transport by * according to applicable international and national government regulations.”

* Words may be inserted here to indicate mode of transportation (rail, aircraft, motor vehicle, vessel).

SECTION 10
SCHOOL BUS

This Section Covers:

- Danger Zones and Use of Mirrors
- Loading and Unloading
- Emergency Exit and Evacuation
- Railroad-highway Grade Crossings
- Student Management
- Antilock Braking Systems
- Special Safety Considerations
- How to Obtain the S Endorsement and SBP
- Illinois School Bus Safety Information

Because state and local laws and regulations regulate so much of school transportation and school bus operations, many of the procedures in this section may differ from state to state. You should be thoroughly familiar with the laws and regulations in your state and local school district.

This section is designated primarily as an information and study guide for all individuals who are interested in obtaining the federal School Bus endorsement (S) for their CDL to drive a yellow school bus nationwide. The state of Illinois also requires all drivers who transport school age children to and from school or for curriculum activities regardless of the size of vehicle utilized to obtain a School Bus Permit (SBP).

10.1 – Danger Zones and Use of Mirrors

10.1.1 – *Danger Zones*

The danger zone is the area on all sides of the bus where children are in the most danger of being hit, either by another vehicle or their own bus. The danger zones may extend as much as 30 feet from the front bumper with the first 10 feet being the most dangerous, 10 feet from the left and right sides of the bus and 10 feet behind the rear bumper of the school bus. In addition, the area to the left of the bus is always considered dangerous because of passing cars. Figure 10.1 illustrates these danger zones.

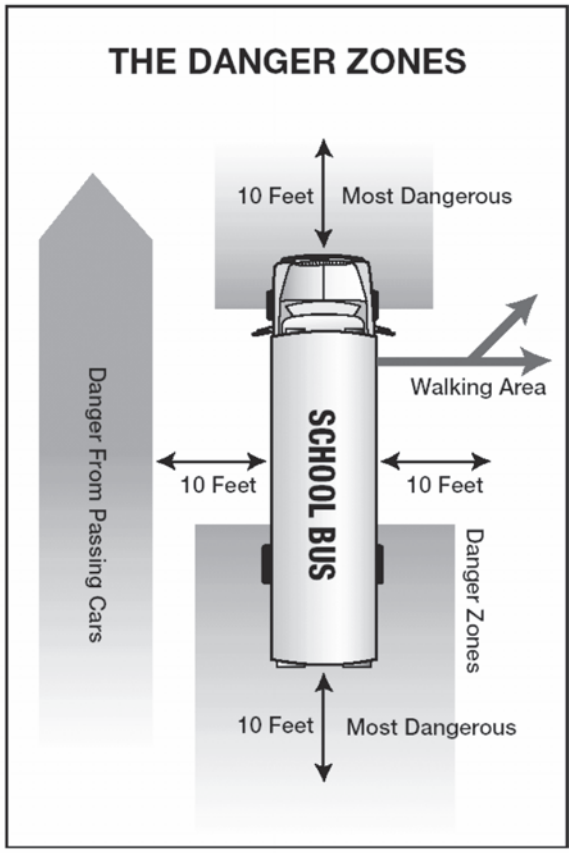


Figure 10.1

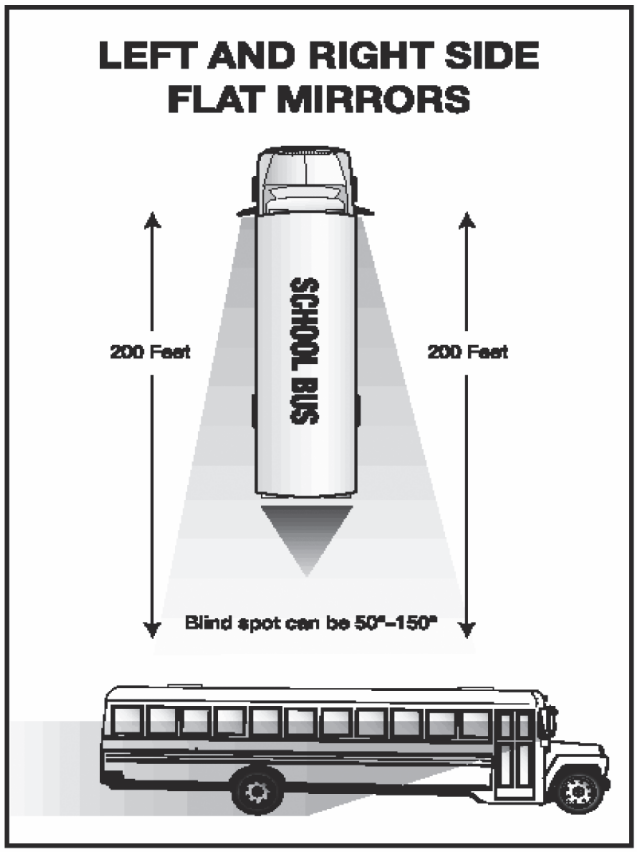


Figure 10.2

10.1.2 – *Correct Mirror Adjustment*

Proper adjustment and use of all mirrors is vital to the safe operation of the school bus in order to observe the danger zone around the bus and look for students, traffic and other objects in this area. You should always check each mirror before operating the school bus to obtain maximum viewing area. If necessary, have the mirrors adjusted.

10.1.3 – *Outside Left and Right Side Flat Mirrors*

These mirrors are mounted at the left and right front corners of the bus at the side or front of the windshield. They are used to monitor traffic and to check clearances and students on the sides and to the rear of the bus. There is a blind spot immediately below and in front of each mirror and directly in back of the rear bumper. The blind spot behind the bus extends 50 to 150 feet and could extend up to 400 feet depending on the length and width of the bus.

Ensure that the mirrors are properly adjusted so you can see:

- 200 feet or four bus lengths behind the bus.
- Along the sides of the bus.
- The rear tires touching the ground.

Figure 10.2 shows how both the outside left and right side flat mirrors should be adjusted.

10.1.4 – *Outside Left and Right Side Convex Mirrors*

The convex mirrors are located below the outside flat mirrors. They are used to monitor the left and right sides at a wide angle. They provide a view of traffic, clearances and students at the side of the bus. These mirrors present a view of people and objects that does not accurately reflect their size and distance from the bus.

You should position these mirrors to see:

- The entire side of the bus up to the mirror mounts.
- The front of the rear tires touching the ground.
- At least one traffic lane on either side of the bus.

Figure 10.3 shows how both the outside left and right side convex mirrors should be adjusted.

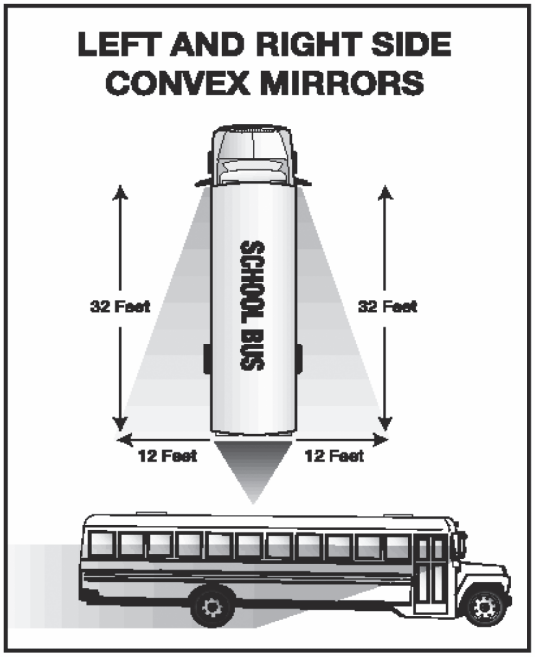


Figure 10.3

10.1.5 – *Outside Left and Right Side Crossover Mirrors*

These mirrors are mounted on both left and right front corners of the bus. They are used to see the front bumper “danger zone” area directly in front of the bus that is not visible by direct vision, and to view the “danger zone” area to the left side and right side of the bus, including the service door and front wheel area. The mirror presents a view of people and objects that does not accurately reflect their size and distance from the bus. The driver must ensure that these mirrors are properly adjusted.

Ensure that the mirrors are properly adjusted so you can see:

- The entire area in front of the bus from the front bumper at ground level to a point where direct vision is possible. Direct vision and mirror view vision should overlap.
- The right and left front tires touching the ground.
- The area from the front of the bus to the service door.

The driver should look at these mirrors, along with the convex and flat mirrors, in a logical sequence to ensure that a child or object is not in any of the danger zones.

Figure 10.4 illustrates how the left and right side crossover mirrors should be adjusted.

10.1.6 – *Overhead Inside Rearview Mirror*

This mirror is mounted directly above the windshield on the driver's side area of the bus. This mirror is used to monitor passenger activity inside the bus. It may provide limited visibility directly in back of the bus if the bus is equipped with a glass-bottomed rear emergency door. There is a blind spot area directly behind the driver's seat, as well as a large blind spot area that begins at the rear bumper and that could extend up to 400 feet or more behind the bus. You must use the exterior side mirrors to monitor traffic that approaches and enters this area.

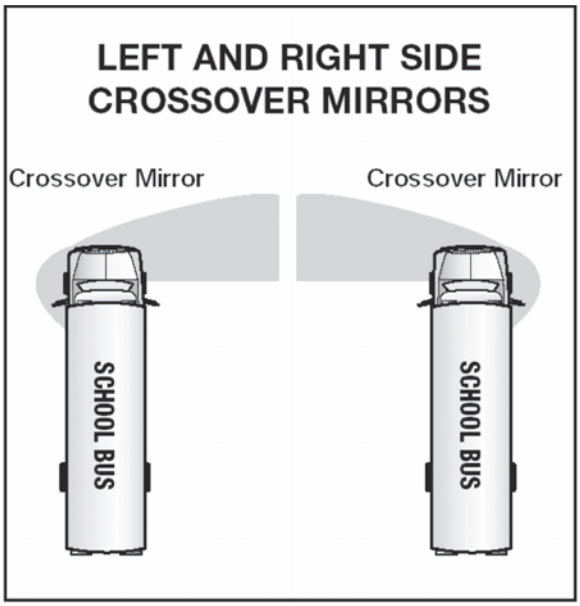


Figure 10.4

You should position the mirror to see:

- The top of the rear window in the top of the mirror.
- All of the students, including the heads of the students right behind you.

10.2 – Loading and Unloading

More students are killed while getting on or off a school bus each year than are killed as passengers inside of a school bus. As a result, knowing what to do before, during and after loading or unloading students is critical. This section will give you specific procedures to help you avoid unsafe conditions that could result in injuries and fatalities during and after loading and unloading students.

The information in this section is intended to provide a broad overview, but is not a definitive set of actions. It is imperative that you learn and obey the state laws and regulations governing loading/unloading operations in your state.

10.2.1 – *Approaching the Stop*

Each school district establishes official routes and official school bus stops. All stops should be approved by the school district prior to making the stop. You should never change the location of a bus stop without written approval from the appropriate school district official.

You must use extreme caution when approaching a school bus stop. You are in a very demanding situation when entering these areas. It is critical that you understand and follow all state and local laws and regulations regarding approaching a school bus stop. This would involve the proper use of mirrors, alternating flashing lights and, when equipped, the moveable stop signal arm and crossing control arm.

When approaching the stop, you should:

- Approach cautiously at a slow rate of speed.
- Look for pedestrians, traffic or other objects before, during and after coming to a stop.
- Continuously check all mirrors.
- If the school bus is so equipped, activate alternating flashing amber warning lights at least 200 feet (100 in an urban area) or approximately five to 10 seconds before the school bus stop or in accordance with state law.
- Turn on right-turn signal indicator about 100-300 feet or approximately three to five seconds before pulling over.
- Continuously check mirrors to monitor the danger zones for students, traffic and other objects.
- Move as far as possible to the right on the traveled portion of the roadway.

When stopping, you should:

- Bring school bus to a full stop with the front bumper at least 10 feet away from students at the designated stop. This forces the students to walk to the bus so you have a better view of their movements.
- Place transmission in "Park" (if there is no "Park" shift point, place in "Neutral" and set the parking brake at each stop.
- Activate alternating red lights when traffic is a safe distance from the school bus and ensure stop arm is extended.
- Make a final check to see that all traffic has stopped before completely opening the door and signaling students to approach.

10.2.2 – *Loading Procedures*

- Perform a safe stop as described in Subsection 10.2.1.
- Students should wait in a designated location for the school bus, facing the bus as it approaches.
- Students should board the bus only when signaled to do so by the driver.
- Monitor all mirrors continuously.
- Count the number of students at the bus stop and be sure all board the bus. If possible, know names of students at each stop. If there is a student missing, ask the other students where the student is.
- Have the students board the school bus slowly, in single file, and use the handrail. The dome light should be on while loading in the dark.
- Wait until students are seated and facing forward before moving the bus.
- Check all mirrors. Make certain no one is running to catch the bus.
- If you cannot account for a student outside, secure the bus, take the key and check around and underneath the bus.
- When all students are accounted for, prepare to leave by:
  —Closing the door.
  —Engaging the transmission.
  —Releasing the parking brake.
  —Turning off alternating flashing red lights.
  —Turning on left-turn signal.
  —Checking all mirrors again.
  —Allowing congested traffic to disperse.
- When it is safe, move the bus and continue the route.

The loading procedure is essentially the same wherever you load students, but there are slight differences. When students are loading at the school campus, you should:

- Turn off the ignition switch.
- Remove key if leaving driver's compartment.
- Position yourself to supervise loading as required or recommended by your state or local regulations.

10.2.3 – *Unloading Procedures on the Route*

- Perform a safe stop at designated unloading areas as described in Subsection 10.2.1.
- Have the students remain seated until told to exit.
- Check all mirrors.
- Count the number of students while unloading to confirm the location of all students before pulling away from the stop.
- Tell students to exit the bus and walk at least 10 feet away from the side of the bus to a position where you can plainly see all students.
- Check all mirrors again. Make sure no students are around or returning to the bus.
- If you cannot account for a student outside the bus, secure the bus and check around and underneath the bus.
- When all students are accounted for, prepare to leave by:
  —Closing the door.
  —Engaging transmission.
  —Releasing parking brake.
  —Turning off alternating flashing red lights.
  —Turning on left turn signal.
  —Checking all mirrors again.
  —Allowing congested traffic to disperse.
- When it is safe, move the bus and continue the route.

Note: If you have missed a student's unloading stop, do not back up. Be sure to follow local procedures.

Additional Procedures for Students Who Must Cross the Roadway. You should understand what students should do when exiting a school bus and crossing the street in front of the bus. In addition, the school bus driver should understand that students might not always do what they are supposed to do.

If a student or students must cross the roadway, they should follow these procedures:

- Walk approximately 10 feet away from the side of the school bus to a position where you can see them.
- Walk to a location at least 10 feet in front of the right corner of the bumper, but still remaining away from the front of the school bus.
- Stop at the right edge of the roadway. You should be able to see the student's feet.

When students reach the edge of the roadway, they should:

- Stop and look in all directions, making sure the roadway is clear and is safe.
- Check to see if the red flashing lights on the bus are still flashing.
- Wait for your signal before crossing the roadway.

Upon your signal, the students should:

- Cross far enough in front of the school bus to be in your view.
- Walk to the left edge of the school bus, stop and look again for your signal to continue to cross the roadway.
- Look for traffic in both directions, making sure roadway is clear.
- Proceed across the roadway, continuing to look in all directions.

Note: The school bus driver should enforce any state or local regulations or recommendations concerning student actions outside the school bus.

10.2.4 – *Unloading Procedures at School*

State and local laws and regulations regarding unloading students at schools, particularly in situations where such activities take place in the school parking lot or other location that is off the traveled roadway, are often different than unloading along the school bus route. It is important that the school bus driver understands and obeys state and local laws and regulations. The following procedures are meant to be general guidelines.

When unloading at the school, you should follow these procedures:

- Perform a safe stop at designated unloading areas as described in Subsection 10.2.1.
- Secure the bus by:
  - —Turning off the ignition switch.
  - —Removing key if leaving driver's compartment.
- Have the students remain seated until told to exit.
- Position yourself to supervise unloading as required or recommended by your state or local regulations.
- Have students exit in orderly fashion.
- Observe students as they step from bus to see that all move promptly away from the unloading area.
- Walk through the bus and check for hiding/sleeping students and items left by students.
- Check all mirrors. Make certain no students are returning to the bus.
- If you cannot account for a student outside the bus and the bus is secure, check around and underneath the bus.
- When all students are accounted for, prepare to leave by:
  - —Closing the door.
  - —Fastening safety belt.
  - —Starting engine.
  - —Engaging the transmission.
  - —Releasing the parking brake.
  - —Turning off alternating flashing red lights.
  - —Turning on left-turn signal.
  - —Checking all mirrors again.
  - —Allowing congested traffic to disperse.
- When it is safe, pull away from the unloading area.

10.2.5 – *Special Dangers of Loading and Unloading*

Dropped or Forgotten Objects. Always focus on students as they approach the bus and watch for any who disappear from sight.

Students may drop an object near the bus during loading and unloading. Stopping to pick up the object or returning to pick up the object may cause the student to disappear from the driver's sight at a very dangerous moment.

Students should be told to leave any dropped object and move to a point of safety out of the danger zones and then attempt to get the driver's attention to retrieve the object.

Handrail Hang-ups. Students have been injured or killed when clothing, accessories or even parts of their body get caught in the handrail or door as they exited the bus. You should closely observe all students exiting the bus to confirm that they are in a safe location prior to moving the bus.

10.2.6 – *Post-trip Inspection*

When your route or school activity trip is finished, you should conduct a post-trip inspection of the bus. You should walk through the bus and around the bus looking for the following:

- Articles left on the bus.
- Sleeping students.
- Open windows and doors.
- Mechanical/operational problems with the bus, with special attention to items that are unique to school buses, such as mirror systems, flashing warning lamps and stop signal arms.
- Damage or vandalism.

Any problems or special situations should be reported immediately to your supervisor or school authorities.

10.3 – Emergency Exit and Evacuation

An emergency situation can happen to anyone, anytime or anywhere. It could be a crash, a stalled school bus on a railroad-highway crossing or in a high-speed intersection, an electrical fire in the engine compartment, a medical emergency to a student on the school bus, etc. Knowing what to do in an emergency — before, during and after an evacuation — can mean the difference between life and death.

10.3.1 – *Planning for Emergencies*

Determine Need to Evacuate Bus. The first and most important consideration is for you to recognize the hazard. If time permits, school bus drivers should contact their dispatcher to explain the situation before making a decision to evacuate the school bus.

As a general rule, student safety and control are best maintained by keeping students on the bus during an emergency and/or impending crisis situation, if so doing does not expose them to unnecessary risk or injury. Remember: The decision to evacuate the bus must be a timely one.

A decision to evacuate should include consideration of the following conditions:

- Is there a fire or danger of fire?
- Is there a smell of raw or leaking fuel?
- Is there a chance the bus could be hit by other vehicles?
- Is the bus in the path of a sighted tornado or rising waters?
- Are there downed power lines?
- Would removing students expose them to speeding traffic, severe weather or a dangerous environment, such as downed power lines?
- Would moving students complicate injuries such as neck and back injuries and fractures?
- Is there a hazardous spill involved? Sometimes, it may be safer to remain on the bus and not come in contact with the material.

Mandatory Evacuations. The driver must evacuate the bus when:

- The bus is on fire or there is a threat of a fire.
- The bus is stalled on or adjacent to a railroad-highway crossing.
- The position of the bus may change and increase the danger.
- There is an imminent danger of collision.
- There is a need to quickly evacuate because of a hazardous materials spill.

10.3.2 – *Evacuation Procedures*

Be Prepared and Plan Ahead. When possible, assign two responsible, older student assistants to each emergency exit. Teach them how to assist the other students off the bus. Assign another student assistant to lead the students to a "safe place" after evacuation. However, you must recognize that there may not be older, responsible students on the bus at the time of the emergency. Therefore, emergency evacuation procedures must be explained to all students. This includes knowing how to operate the various emergency exits and the importance of listening to and following all instructions given by you.

Some tips to determine a safe place:

- A safe place will be at least 100 feet off the road in the direction of oncoming traffic. This will keep the students from being hit by debris if another vehicle collides with the bus.
- Lead students upwind of the bus if fire is present.
- Lead students as far away from railroad tracks as possible and in the direction of any oncoming train.
- Lead students upwind of the bus at least 300 feet if there is a risk from spilled hazardous materials.
- If the bus is in the direct path of a sighted tornado and evacuation is ordered, escort students to a nearby ditch or culvert if shelter in a building is not readily available and direct them to lie face down, hands covering their head. They should be far enough away so the bus cannot topple on them. Avoid areas that are subject to flash floods.

General Procedures. Determine if evacuation is in the best interest of safety.

- Determine the best type of evacuation:
  - —Front, rear or side door evacuation, or some combination of doors.
  - —Roof or window evacuation.
- Secure the bus by:
  - —Placing transmission in "Park"; if there is no shift point, use "Neutral."
  - —Setting parking brakes.
  - —Shutting off the engine.
  - —Removing ignition key.
  - —Activating hazard-warning lights.
- If time allows, notify dispatch office of evacuation location, conditions and type of assistance needed.
- Dangle radio microphone or telephone out of driver's window for later use, if operable.
- If no radio or the radio is inoperable, dispatch a passing motorist or area resident to call for help. As a last resort, dispatch two older, responsible students to go for help.
- Order the evacuation.
- Evacuate students from the bus.
  - —Do not move a student you believe may have suffered a neck or spinal injury unless his or her life is in immediate danger.
  - —Special procedures must be used to move neck spinal injury victims to prevent further injury.
- Direct a student assistant to lead students to the nearest safe place.
- Walk through the bus to ensure no students remain on the bus. Retrieve emergency equipment.
- Join waiting students. Account for all students and check for their safety.
- Protect the scene. Set out emergency warning devices as necessary and appropriate.
- Prepare information for emergency responders.

10.4 – Railroad-highway Crossings

10.4.1 – *Types of Crossings*

Passive Crossings. This type of crossing does not have any type of traffic control device. You must stop at these crossings and follow proper procedures. However, the decision to proceed rests entirely in your hands. Passive crossings require you to recognize the crossing, search for any train using the tracks and decide if there is sufficient clear space to cross safely. Passive crossings have yellow-circular advance warning signs, pavement markings and crossbucks to assist you in recognizing a crossing.

Active Crossings. This type of crossing has a traffic control device installed at the crossing to regulate traffic at the crossing. These active devices include flashing red lights with or without bells and flashing red lights with bells and gates.

10.4.2 – *Warning Signs and Devices*

Advance Warning Signs. The round, black-on-yellow warning sign is placed ahead of a public railroad-highway crossing. The advance warning sign tells you to slow down, look and listen for the train, and be prepared to stop at the tracks if a train is coming. (See Figure 10.5.)

Pavement Markings. Pavement markings mean the same as the advance warning sign. They consist of an "X" with the letters "RR" and a no-passing marking on two-lane roads. There is also a "No Passing Zone" sign on two-lane roads. There may be a white stop line painted on the pavement before the railroad tracks. The front of the school bus must remain behind this line while stopped at the crossing. (See Figure 10.6.)

Crossbuck Signs. This sign marks the crossing. It requires you to yield the right of way to the train. If there is no white line painted on the pavement, you must stop the bus before the crossbuck sign. When the road crosses over more than one set of tracks, a sign below the crossbuck indicates the number of tracks. (See Figure 10.7.)

Flashing Red Light Signals. At many highway-rail grade crossings, the crossbuck sign has flashing red lights and bells. When the lights begin to flash, stop! A train is approaching. You are required to yield the right of way to the train. If there is more than one track, make sure all tracks are clear before crossing. (See Figure 10.8.)

Gates. Many railroad-highway crossings have gates with flashing red lights and bells. Stop when the lights begin to flash and before the gate lowers across the road lane. Remain stopped until the gates go up and the lights have stopped flashing. Proceed when it is safe. If the gate stays down after the train passes, do not drive around the gate. Instead, call your dispatcher. (See Figure 10.8.)

10.4.3 – *Recommended Procedures*

Each state has laws and regulations governing how school buses must operate at railroad-highway crossings. It is important for you to understand and obey these state laws and regulations. In general, school buses must stop at all crossings, and ensure it is safe before proceeding across the tracks. The specific procedures required in each state vary.

A school bus is one of the safest vehicles on the highway. However, a school bus does not have the slightest edge when involved in a crash with a train. Because of a train's size and weight, it cannot stop quickly. An emergency escape route does not exist for a train. You can prevent school bus/train crashes by following these recommended procedures:

- Approaching the Crossing:
  - —Slow down, including shifting to a lower gear in a manual transmission bus, and test your brakes.
  - —Activate hazard lights approximately 200 feet before the crossing. Make sure your intentions are known.
  - —Scan your surroundings and check for traffic behind you.
  - —Stay to the right of the roadway, if possible.
  - —Choose an escape route in the event of a brake failure or problems behind you.

Figure 10.5

Figure 10.6

Figure 10.7

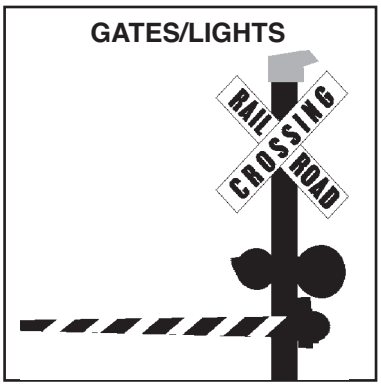


Figure 10.8

- At the Crossing:
  - —Stop no closer than 15 feet and no farther than 50 feet from the nearest rail, where you have the best view of the tracks.
  - —Place the transmission in “Park” (if there is no “Park” shift point, use “Neutral”) and set the parking brake.
  - —Turn off all radios and noisy equipment and silence the passengers.
  - —Open the service door and driver’s window. Look and listen for an approaching train.
  - —After you have determined that no train is approaching, close the service door and proceed with caution.
- Crossing the Track:
  - —Check the crossing signals again before proceeding.
  - —At a multiple-track crossing, stop only before the first set of tracks. When you are sure no train is approaching on any track, proceed across all of the tracks until you have completely cleared them.
  - —Cross the tracks in a low gear. Do not change gears while crossing.
  - —If the gate comes down after you have started across, drive through it even if it means you will break the gate.

10.4.4 – *Special Situations*

Bus Stalls or Trapped on Tracks. If your bus stalls or is trapped on the tracks, get everyone out of the bus and off the tracks immediately. Move everyone far from the bus at an angle, both away from the tracks and toward the train.

Law Enforcement Officer at the Crossing. If a law enforcement officer is at the crossing, obey the officer’s directions. If there is no officer and you believe the signal is malfunctioning, call your dispatcher to report the situation and ask for instructions on how to proceed.

Obstructed View of Tracks. Plan your route so it provides maximum sight distance at highway-rail grade crossings. Do not attempt to cross the tracks unless you can see far enough down the track to know for certain that no trains are approaching. Be especially careful at “passive” crossings, which do not have any type of traffic control device. Even if there are active railroad signals that indicate the tracks are clear, you must look and listen to be sure it is safe to proceed.

Containment or Storage Areas. If it will not fit, do not commit! Know the length of your bus and the size of the containment area at highway-rail crossings on the school bus route, as well as any crossing you encounter in the course of a school activity trip. When approaching a crossing with a signal or stop sign on the opposite side, pay attention to how much room there is. Be certain the bus has enough containment or storage area to completely clear the railroad tracks on the other side if there is a need to stop. As a general rule, add 15 feet to the length of the school bus to determine an acceptable amount of containment or storage area.

10.5 – Student Management

10.5.1 – *Do Not Deal with On-bus Problems When Loading and Unloading*

In order to get students to and from school safely and on time, you need to be able to concentrate on the driving task. Loading and unloading requires all your concentration. Do not take your eyes off what is happening outside the bus.

If there is a behavior problem on the bus, wait until the students unloading are safely off the bus and have moved away. If necessary, pull the bus over to handle the problem.

10.5.2 – *Handling Serious Problems*

Tips on handling serious problems:

- Follow your school’s procedures for discipline or refusal of rights to ride the bus.
- Stop the bus. Park in a safe location off the road, perhaps a parking lot or a driveway.
- Secure the bus. Take the ignition key with you if you leave your seat.
- Stand up and speak respectfully to the offender or offenders. Speak in a courteous manner with a firm voice. Remind the offender of the expected behavior. Do not show anger but do show that you mean business.
- If a change of seating is needed, request that the student move to a seat near you.

- Never put a student off the bus except at school or at his or her designated school bus stop. If you believe that the offense is serious enough that you cannot safely drive the bus, call for a school administrator or the police to come and remove the student. Always follow your state or local procedures for requesting assistance.

10.6 – Antilock Braking Systems

10.6.1 – *Vehicles Required to Have Antilock Braking Systems*

The Department of Transportation requires that antilock braking systems be on:

- Air brakes vehicles (trucks, buses, trailers and converter dollies) built on or after March 1, 1999.
- Hydraulically braked trucks and buses with a gross vehicle weight rating of 10,000 lbs or more built on or after March 1, 1999.

Many buses built before these dates have been voluntarily equipped with ABS. Your school bus will have a yellow ABS malfunction lamp on the instrument panel if it is equipped with ABS.

10.6.2 – *How ABS Helps You*

When you brake hard on slippery surfaces in a vehicle without ABS, your wheels may lock up. When your steering wheels lock up, you lose steering control. When your other wheels lock up, you may skid or even spin the vehicle.

ABS helps you avoid wheel lock up and maintain control. You may or may not be able to stop faster with ABS, but you should be able to steer around an obstacle while braking, and avoid skids caused by over braking.

10.6.3 – *Braking with ABS*

When you drive a vehicle with ABS, you should brake as you always have. In other words:

- Use only the braking force necessary to stop safely and stay in control.
- Brake the same way, regardless of whether you have ABS on the bus. However, in emergency braking, do not pump the brakes on a bus with ABS.
- As you slow down, monitor your bus and back off the brakes (if it is safe to do so) to stay in control.

10.6.4 – *Braking if ABS Is Not Working*

Without ABS, you still have normal brake functions. Drive and brake as you always have.

Vehicles with ABS have yellow malfunction lamps to tell you if something is not working. The yellow ABS malfunction lamp is on the bus's instrument panel.

As a system check on newer vehicles, the malfunction lamp comes on at start-up for a bulb check and then goes out quickly. On older systems, the lamp could stay on until you are driving over 5 mph.

If the lamp stays on after the bulb check or goes on once you are under way, you may have lost ABS control at one or more wheels.

Remember: If your ABS malfunctions, you still have regular brakes. Drive normally, but get the system serviced soon.

10.6.5 – *Safety Reminders*

- ABS will not allow you to drive faster, follow more closely or drive less carefully.
- ABS will not prevent power or turning skids — ABS should prevent brake-induced skids but not those caused by spinning the drive wheels or going too fast in a turn.
- ABS will not necessarily shorten stopping distance. ABS will help maintain vehicle control but not always shorten stopping distance.
- ABS will not increase or decrease ultimate stopping power — ABS is an "add-on" to your normal brakes, not a replacement for them.

- ABS will not change the way you normally brake. Under normal brake conditions, your vehicle will stop as it always stopped. ABS only comes into play when a wheel would normally have locked up because of over braking.
- ABS will not compensate for bad brakes or poor brake maintenance.
- **Remember:** The best vehicle safety feature is still a safe driver.
- **Remember:** Drive so you never need to use your ABS.
- **Remember:** If you need it, ABS could help to prevent a serious crash.

10.7 – Special Safety Considerations

10.7.1 – *Strobe Lights*

Some school buses are equipped with roof-mounted, white strobe lights. If your bus is so equipped, the overhead strobe light should be used when you have limited visibility (that is, if you cannot easily see around you — in front, behind or beside the school bus). Your visibility could be only slightly limited or it could be so bad that you can see nothing at all. In all instances, understand and obey your state or local regulations concerning the use of these lights.

10.7.2 – *Driving in High Winds*

Strong winds affect the handling of the school bus. The side of a school bus acts like a sail on a sailboat. Strong winds can push the school bus sideways. They can even move the school bus off the road or, in extreme conditions, tip it over.

If you are caught in strong winds:

- Keep a strong grip on the steering wheel. Try to anticipate gusts.
- You should slow down to lessen the effect of the wind or pull off the roadway and wait.
- Contact your dispatcher to get more information on how to proceed.

10.7.3 – *Backing*

Backing a school bus is strongly discouraged. You should back your bus only when you have no other safe way to move the vehicle. You should never back a school bus when students are outside of the bus. Backing is dangerous and increases your risk of a collision. If you have no choice and you must back your bus, follow these procedures:

- Post a lookout. The purpose of the lookout is to warn you about obstacles, approaching persons and other vehicles. The lookout should not give directions on how to back the bus.
- Signal for quiet on the bus.
- Constantly check all mirrors and rear windows.
- Back slowly and smoothly.
- If no lookout is available:
  —Set the parking brake.
  —Turn off the motor and take the keys with you.
  —Walk to the rear of the bus to determine if the way is clear.
- If you must back up at a student pickup point, be sure to pick up students before backing and watch for late comers at all times.
- Be sure that all students are in the bus before backing.
- If you must back up at a student drop-off point, be sure to unload students after backing.

10.7.4 – *Tail Swing*

A school bus can have up to a 3-foot tail swing. You need to check your mirrors before and during any turning movements to monitor the tail swing.

Section 10
TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE

1. Define the danger zone. How far does the danger zone extend around the bus?
2. What should you be able to see if the outside flat mirrors are adjusted properly? The outside convex mirrors? The crossover mirrors?
3. You are loading students along the route. When should you activate your alternating flashing amber warning lights?
4. You are unloading students along your route. Where should students walk to after exiting the bus?
5. After unloading at school, why should you walk through the bus?
6. What position should students be in front of the bus before they cross the roadway?
7. Under what conditions must you evacuate the bus?
8. How far from the nearest rail should you stop at a highway-rail crossing?
9. What is a passive highway-rail crossing? Why should you be extra cautious at this type of crossing?
10. How should you use your brakes if your vehicle is equipped with antilock brakes (ABS)?

These questions may be on the test. If you cannot answer them all, re-study Section 10.

How to obtain the School Bus Endorsement (S) and Illinois School Bus Permit (SBP)

To obtain the S endorsement to drive a yellow school bus designed to transport 16 or more people for students 12th grade and under for school-related activities, drivers must first pass the general (core) knowledge and Passenger endorsement tests based on Sections 2 and 4 of this manual. If the bus has air brakes, you also must pass the air brakes test based on Section 5.

In addition drivers must pass the pre-trip, skills and driving tests in the school bus of the license class for which they are applying.

The School Bus endorsement (S) and an Illinois School Bus Permit (SBP) are required when children are being transported to and from school or for any curriculum-based activity in a yellow school bus. An Illinois SBP also is required when children are being transported for the same activities in any vehicle other than a yellow school bus, regardless of size. Driver transporting students for these activities in a first division vehicle (cab, SUV, Minivan) must have the proper class of Illinois SBP indicated on their driver's license.

The Secretary of State takes the safety and transportation of school children seriously, and there are strict initial and on-going requirements to obtain or maintain an Illinois SBP.

A SBP applicant/driver must:

- Be age 21 or older.
- Possess a valid and properly classified driver's license issued by the Secretary of State.
- Possess a current medical card when required.
- Successfully pass a written School Bus endorsement/School Bus Permit exam administered by the Secretary of State.
- Successfully pass a pre-trip, skills and driving tests, if applicable, in a representative vehicle of the license class for the passenger and S endorsement/SBP.
- Not have been repeatedly involved as a driver in motor vehicle accidents or repeatedly convicted of traffic offenses.
- In Illinois, prior to issuance of the first permit and annually thereafter, a school bus driver must meet the physical requirements as defined in 92 Ill. Adm. Code, Section 1035.20.

To start the process of obtaining an Illinois SBP, a driver must work directly with the school district or school bus company in which whom he/she will be operating the school bus. To conduct the written testing, the driver will need a "letter of intent" from the district or company. To conduct the pre-trip, skills and drive portion of the testing, the applicant will need a fully completed official Illinois "SB2" form from the district or company.

Prior to being issued the initial SBP, the driver will also be required to complete a school bus driver training/safety course outlined by the Illinois State Board of Education, successfully passing a background check and a physical.

After initially obtaining the SBP, there are annual requirements to maintain the permit to transport Illinois students.

If an applicant or driver has any questions or would like more information about the Illinois school bus permit program, he/she can contact the local school district office, a local school bus company or the Illinois Secretary of State's Safe Ride section at 217-782-7674.

Illinois School Bus Safety Information

Pre-trip Inspection. Each day that a school bus is operated, the driver must conduct a pre-trip inspection of the mechanical and safety equipment on the bus. A person other than the driver may perform the pre-trip inspection as prescribed by administrative rule. The driver is required to complete a School Bus Driver's Pre-Trip Inspection form each time an inspection is performed. Any defects found on the bus must be recorded on the form.

Speed Limits. The legal speed limit for a school bus is the same as that for an automobile. However, because of its size and weight, the bus requires a greater stopping distance than a regular passenger vehicle. Adjust your speed for the time of day, weather and road conditions.

Entering or Exiting an Expressway. When entering or exiting an expressway, do so as quickly and as safely as possible. Unless absolutely necessary, never bring your vehicle to a complete stop immediately before entering any high-speed expressway. Enter and merge as safely as possible with the flow of traffic.

Get Them There Safely. Proper use of safety devices on the school bus will help you control traffic when stopped to load and unload students.

- The amber lights of the eight-lamp flashing signal system must be activated when approaching a stop at least:
    1. 100 feet within an urban area.
    2. 200 feet outside an urban area.
- When loading or unloading passengers, come to a complete stop, put the transmission in the "neutral park" position and set the parking brake.
- No child may cross any highway with four or more lanes of traffic where at least one or more lanes travel in the opposite direction. The school bus stop must be situated so that the student's residence and/or school (attendance center) is on the right side of the highway.
- The driver must let students off the school bus only at their assigned stops. While this practice is designed to provide the highest level of protection for you and your passengers, restricting additional stops also will save fuel.
- Do not change routes or pickups without authorization from the proper school official.
- The service door must be closed at all times when the bus is in motion.
- The emergency door must be unlocked (if lock-equipped) but securely latched when the school bus is in operation.
- The manufacturer's capacity for a bus must not be exceeded.
- Students may not be asked to leave the bus along the route for breach of discipline nor may they be asked to sit anywhere other than a seat for breach of discipline.
- The driver may not back a bus at the school while students are in the vicinity unless a responsible person is present to guide the bus driver.
- When unloading at school, the bus may be driven onto the school grounds to discharge pupils, or they should be discharged so they will not have to cross a street. At all discharge points where it is necessary for pupils to cross a roadway, the driver must direct students to walk at least 10 feet in front of the bus on the shoulder of the highway and to remain there until a signal is given by the bus driver for the student to cross.
- The driver must not allow a student to get off the bus at any place other than the student's designated discharge point unless written permission is granted by the proper school official.

- The driver must stop between 15 and 50 feet of the first rail of a railroad crossing. While stopped put the transmission in the “neutral park” position and set the parking brake. The driver must open the service door and driver’s window, listen and look in both directions for any approaching train. When the driver determines that no train is approaching, he/she must close the door and proceed completely across the grade crossing in low gear.
- The driver’s safety belt must always be properly fastened before putting the bus in motion.
- After parking the bus for the day, the driver and/or monitor must walk through the bus to ensure that no child is left behind.

SECTION 11
CHARTER BUS

This Section Covers:

- Charter Bus Endorsement Requirements

General Information

The Charter Bus (C) endorsement is an Illinois only endorsement. Any person who drives a bus, other than a school bus, chartered by a school for the sole purpose of transporting students in 12th grade and under to or from any school-sponsored activity must apply for a Charter Bus endorsement.

This endorsement is not required if the driver already possess a CDL with Passenger (P) and School Bus (S) endorsements, along with an Illinois SBP of the same class as the charter bus he or she will be operating.

This endorsement is not required to transport other types of passengers in a charter bus.

Testing Information

If a driver currently holds the proper class CDL with at least P endorsement, he or she will be only required to pass the charter bus knowledge test to obtain the C endorsement. A Charter Bus endorsement form (CB1), obtained from a registered bus company, is required to be submitted prior to testing.

If a driver does not currently hold the proper class CDL with at least a P endorsement, he or she will be required to pass the General (core) Knowledge test, the Passenger Knowledge endorsement test and the Air Brakes Knowledge test (if the vehicle is equipped with air brakes). In addition to the written testing, the driver will have to successfully perform the pre-trip inspection, skills and drive testing in a class representative passenger vehicle. A Charter Bus endorsement form (CB1), obtained from a registered bus company, is required to be submitted prior to testing.

Driver Requirements

To obtain a Charter Bus endorsement, the driver must:

- Be age 21 or older.
- Possess a valid and properly classified driver's license issued by the Secretary of State.
- Submit to and successfully pass an Illinois specific criminal background check through an approved vendor.
- Complete a medical examination, including chemical testing for drugs. A current IDOT medical card is acceptable.
- Submit a completed Charter Bus endorsement form (CB1) prior to testing.
- Successfully pass a written Charter Bus endorsement exam administered by the Secretary of State.
- Successfully pass a driving exam, if applicable, in a representative vehicle of the class of the driver's license for Passenger and Charter Bus endorsements.
- Affirm under penalties of perjury that you have not made a false statement or knowingly concealed a material fact in any application for a Charter Bus endorsement.

Driving Safety Information

- When entering or exiting an expressway, do so as quickly and as safely as possible.
- Unless absolutely necessary, never bring your vehicle to a complete stop immediately before entering any high-speed expressway. Enter and merge as safely as possible with the flow of traffic.
- The emergency door must be unlocked (if lock-equipped) but securely latched when the school bus is in operation.
- The driver must not back a bus at the school while students are in the vicinity unless a responsible person is present to guide the bus driver.

SECTION 12
PRE-TRIP VEHICLE INSPECTION TEST

This Section Covers:
- Internal Inspection
- External Inspection

During the pre-trip inspection, you must show that the vehicle is safe to drive. You may have to walk around the vehicle and point to or touch each item and explain to the examiner what you are checking and why. At the time of your test, the examiner will direct you to the areas of the vehicle to inspect for the test. In addition to this section, you should also review Section 2 prior to conducting the pre-trip inspection.

Any Tank vehicle that will be used for the skills/drive testing must be purged of hazardous materials 48 hours prior to testing with documentation verifying the purge. When using a Tank vehicle for the skills tests, the applicant must have passed the Tank Knowledge test, and the tank must be empty.

Engine/Cab Inspection (All Vehicles)
Study the following vehicle parts for the type of vehicle you will be using during the CDL skills/drive testing. You should be able to identify each part and tell the examiner what you are looking for or inspecting.

Engine Compartment (Engine Off)
Leaks/Hoses
- Look for puddles on the ground.
- Look for dripping fluids on underside of engine and transmission.
- Inspect hoses for condition and leaks.

Oil Level
- Indicate where dipstick is located.
- See that oil level is within safe operating range. Level must be above refill mark.

Coolant Level
- Inspect reservoir sight glass, or
- If engine is not hot, remove radiator cap and check for visible coolant level.

Power Steering Fluid
- Indicate where power steering fluid dipstick is located.
- Check for adequate power steering fluid level. Level must be above refill mark.

Engine Compartment Belts
- Check the following belts for snugness (up to 1/4-inch play at center of belt), cracks or frays:
  —Power steering belt.
  —Water pump belt.
  —Alternator belt.
  —Air compressor belt.

Note: If any of the components listed above are not belt driven, you must:
- Tell the examiner which component(s) are not belt driven.
- Make sure component(s) are operating properly, are not damaged or leaking and are mounted securely.

Safe Start

- Depress clutch.
- Place gearshift lever in “Neutral” (or “Park,” for automatic transmissions).
- Start engine and then release clutch slowly.

Cab Check/Engine Start

Oil Pressure Gauge

- Make sure oil pressure gauge is working.
- Check that pressure gauge shows increasing or normal oil pressure or that the warning light goes off.
- If equipped, oil temperature gauge should begin a gradual rise to the normal operating range.

Temperature Gauge

- Make sure the temperature gauge is working.
- Temperature should begin to climb to the normal operating range or temperature light should be off.

Air Gauge

- Make sure the air gauge is working properly.
- Build air pressure to governor cut-out, roughly 120-140 psi.

Ammeter/Voltmeter

- Check that gauges show alternator and/or generator is charging or that warning light is off.

Mirrors and Windshield

- Mirrors should be clean and adjusted properly from the inside.
- Windshield should be clean with no illegal stickers, no obstructions or no damage to the glass.

Emergency Equipment

- Check for spare electrical fuses, unless circuit breaker equipped vehicle.
- Check for three red reflective triangles, six fuses or three liquid burning flares.
- Check for a properly charged and rated fire extinguisher.

Note: If the vehicle is not equipped with electrical fuses, you must mention this to the examiner.

Steering Play

- Non-power steering: Check for excessive play by turning steering wheel back and forth. Play should not exceed 10 degrees (or about 2 inches on a 20-inch wheel).
- Power steering: With the engine running, check for excessive play by turning the steering wheel back and forth. Play should not exceed 10 degrees (or about 2 inches on a 20-inch wheel) before front left wheel barely moves.

Wipers/Washers

- Check that wiper arms and blades are secure, not damaged and operate smoothly.
- If equipped, windshield washers must operate correctly.

Lights/Reflectors/Reflector Tape Condition (Sides and Rear)

- Test that dash indicators work when corresponding lights are turned on:
  - —Left-turn signal.
  - —Right-turn signal.
  - —Four-way emergency flashers.
  - —High-beam headlight.
  - —Antilock Braking System (ABS) indicator.
- Check that all external lights and reflective equipment are clean and functional. Light and reflector checks include:
  - —Clearance lights (red on rear, amber elsewhere).
  - —Headlights (high and low beams).

—Taillights.
—Backing lights.
—Turn signals.
—Four-way flashers.
—Brake lights.
—Red reflectors (on rear) and amber reflectors (elsewhere).
—Reflector tape condition.

Note: Checks of brake, turn signal and four-way flasher functions must be done separately.

Pedals

- Check for obstructions under or around the floor pedals.
- Check for good pedal pad or grooved surface.
- Check for proper pedal working order.

Horn

- Check that air horn and/or electric horn work.

Heater/Defroster

- Test that the heater and defroster work.

Parking Brake Check

- Pulling Unit: With the parking brake engaged (trailer brakes released on combination vehicles), check that the parking brake will hold vehicle by gently trying to pull forward with parking brake on.
- Trailer (if applicable): With the parking brake released and the trailer parking brake engaged (combination vehicles only), check that the trailer parking brake will hold vehicle by gently trying to pull forward with the trailer parking brake on.

Hydraulic Brake Check (if equipped)

- Pump the brake pedal three times and then hold it down for five seconds. The brake pedal should not move (depress) during the five seconds.
- If equipped with a hydraulic brake reserve (back-up) system, with the key off, depress the brake pedal and listen for the sound of the reserve system electric motor.
- Check that the warning buzzer or light is off.

Air Brake Check (Air Brake Equipped Vehicles Only)

Failure to perform all areas of the air brake check will result in an automatic failure of the pre-trip inspection test. Air brake safety devices vary. However, this procedure is designed to see that any safety device operates correctly as air pressure drops from normal to a low air condition. For safety purposes, in areas where an incline is present, you will use wheel chocks during the air brake check. The proper procedures for inspecting the air brake system are as follows.

- **System Leak Check.** With the air pressure built up the governor cut-off (120-140 psi), shut off the engine, chock your wheels, (if necessary), release the tractor protection valve and trailer protection valve (combination vehicles), fully apply the foot brake and hold it for one minute. Check the air gauge to see if the air pressure drops more than 3 pounds in one minute (single vehicle) or 4 pounds in one minute (combination vehicle).
- **Emergency System Check/Fan Down.** Turn electrical power on and begin fanning off the air pressure by rapidly applying and releasing the foot brake. Low air warning devices (buzzer, light, other) should activate before air pressure drops below 60 psi. Continue to fan off the air pressure. Normally within the range of 20-40 psi on a tractor-trailer combination vehicle, the tractor protection valve and parking brake valve should close (pop out). On other combination vehicle types and single vehicle types, the parking brake valve should close (pop out).

Service Brake Check

- You will be required to check the application of air or hydraulic service brakes. This procedure is designed to determine that the brakes are working correctly and that the vehicle does not pull to one side or the other.
- Pull forward at 5 mph, apply the service brake and stop. Check to see that the vehicle does not pull to either side and that it stops when brake is applied.

Safety Belt

Check that the safety belt is securely mounted, adjusts and latches properly, and is not ripped or frayed.

External Inspection (All Vehicles)

Steering

Steering Box/Hoses

- Check that the steering box is securely mounted and not leaking. Look for any missing nuts, bolts and cotter keys.
- Check for power steering fluid leaks or damage to power steering hoses.

Steering Linkage

- See that connecting links, arms and rods from the steering box to the wheel are not worn or cracked.
- Check that joints and sockets are not worn or loose and that there are no missing nuts, bolts or cotter keys.

Suspension

Springs/Air/Torque

- Look for missing, shifted, cracked or broken leaf springs.
- Look for broken or distorted coil springs.
- If vehicle is equipped with torsion bars, torque arms or other types of suspension components, check that they are not damaged and are mounted securely.
- Air ride suspension should be checked for damage and leaks.

Mounts

- Look for cracked or broken spring hangers; missing or damaged bushings; and broken, loose or missing bolts, u-bolts or other axle mounting parts. (The mounts should be checked at each point where they are secured to the vehicle frame and axle[s]).

Shock Absorbers

- See that shock absorbers are secure and that there are no leaks.

Note: Be prepared to perform the same suspension components inspection on every axle (power unit and trailer, if equipped).

Brakes

Slack Adjustors and Pushrods

- Look for broken, loose or missing parts.
- For manual slack adjustors, the brake pushrod should not move more than 1 inch (with the brakes released) when pulled by hand.

Brake Chambers

- See that brake chambers are not leaking, cracked or dented and are mounted securely.

Brake Hoses/Lines

- Look for cracked, worn or leaking hoses, lines and couplings.

Drum Brake

- Check for cracks, dents or holes. Also check for loose or missing bolts.
- Check for contaminates, such as debris or oil/grease.
- Brake linings (where visible) should not be worn dangerously thin.

Brake Linings

- On some brake drums, there are openings where the brake linings can be seen from outside the drum. For this type of drum, check that a visible amount of brake lining is showing.

Note: Be prepared to perform the same brake components inspection on every axle (power unit and trailer, if equipped).

Wheels

Rims

- Check for damaged or bent rims. Rims cannot have welding repairs.

Tires

The following items must be inspected on every tire:

- Tread depth: Check for minimum tread depth (4/32 on steering axle tires and 2/32 on all other tires).
- Tire condition: Check that tread is evenly worn and look for cuts or other damage to tread or sidewalls. Also, make sure that valve caps and stems are not missing, broken or damaged.
- Tire inflation: Check for proper inflation by using a tire gauge or a mallet. Note: You will not get credit if you simply kick the tires to check for proper inflation.
- That there is no mismatch tires (size and construction).
- Re-grooved or re-capped tires are not permitted on bus steer tires.

Hub Oil Seals/Axle Seals

- See that hub oil/grease seals and axle seals are not leaking and, if wheel has a sight glass, oil level is adequate.

Lug Nuts

- Check that all lug nuts are present, free of cracks and distortions and show no signs of looseness such as rust trails or shiny threads.
- Make sure all bolt holes are not cracked or distorted.

Spacers or Budd Spacing

- If equipped, check that spacers are not bent, damaged or rusted through.
- Spacers should be evenly centered, with the dual wheels and tires evenly separated.

Note: Be prepared to perform the same wheel inspection on every axle (power unit and trailer, if equipped).

Side of Vehicle

Door(s)/Mirror(s)

- Check that door(s) are not damaged and that they open and close properly from the outside.
- Hinges should be secure with seals intact.
- Check that mirror(s) and mirror brackets are not damaged and are mounted securely with no loose fittings.

Fuel Tank

- Check that tank(s) are secure, cap(s) are tight and that there are no leaks from tank(s) or lines.

Battery/Box

- Wherever located, see that battery(s) are secure, connections are tight and cell caps are present.
- Battery connections should not show signs of excessive corrosion.
- Battery box and cover or door must be secure.

Drive Shaft

- See that drive shaft is not bent or cracked.
- Couplings should be secure and free of foreign objects.

Exhaust System

- Check system for damage and signs of leaks, such as rust or carbon soot.
- System should be connected tightly and mounted securely.

Frame

- Look for cracks, broken welds, holes or other damage to the longitudinal frame members, cross members, box and floor.

Rear of Vehicle

Splash Guards

- If equipped, check that splash guards or mud flaps are not damaged and are mounted securely.

Doors/Ties/Lifts

- Check that doors and hinges are not damaged and that they open, close and latch properly from the outside, if equipped.
- Ties, straps, chains and binders must also be secure.
- If equipped with a cargo lift, look for leaking, damaged or missing parts and explain how it should be checked for correct operation.
- Lift must be fully retracted and latched securely.

Tractor/Coupling

Air/Electric Lines

- Listen for air leaks. Check that air hoses and electrical lines are not cut, chafed, spliced or worn (steel braid should not show through).
- Make sure air and electrical lines are not tangled, pinched or dragging against tractor parts.

Catwalk/Steps

- Check that the steps leading to the cab and the catwalk are solid, clear of objects and securely bolted to tractor frame.

Mounting Bolts

- Look for loose or missing mounting brackets, clamps, bolts or nuts. Both the fifth wheel and the slide mounting must be solidly attached.
- On other types of coupling systems (i.e., ball hitch, pintle hook, etc.), inspect all coupling components and mounting brackets for missing or broken parts.

Hitch Release Lever

- Check to see that the hitch release lever is in place and is secure.

Locking Jaws

- Look into fifth-wheel gap and check that locking jaws are fully closed around the kingpin.
- On other types of coupling systems (i.e., ball hitch, pintle hook, etc.), inspect the locking mechanism for missing or broken parts and make sure it is locked securely. If present, safety cables or chains must be secure and free of kinks and excessive slack.

Fifth-Wheel Skid Plate

- Check for proper lubrication and that fifth-wheel skid plate is securely mounted to the platform, and that all bolts and pins are secure and not missing.

Platform (Fifth Wheel)

- Check for cracks or breaks in the platform structure that supports the fifth-wheel skid plate.

Release Arm (Fifth Wheel)

- If equipped, make sure the release arm is in the engaged position and the safety latch is in place.

Kingpin/Apron/Gap

- Check that the kingpin is not bent.
- Make sure the visible part of the apron is not bent, cracked or broken.
- Check that the trailer is laying flat on the fifth wheel skid plate (no gap).

Locking Pins (Fifth Wheel)

- If equipped, look for loose or missing pins in the slide mechanism of the sliding fifth wheel. If air powered, check for leaks.
- Make sure locking pins are fully engaged.
- Check that the fifth wheel is positioned properly so that the tractor frame will clear the landing gear during turns.

Sliding Pintle

- Check that the sliding pintle is secured with no loose or missing nuts or bolts and cotter pin is in place.

Tongue or Draw-bar

- Check that the tongue/draw-bar is not bent or twisted and check for broken welds and stress cracks.
- Check that the tongue/draw-bar is not worn excessively.

Tongue Storage Area

- Check that the storage area is solid and secured to the tongue.
- Check that cargo in the storage area (i.e., chains, binders, etc.) are secure.

School Bus Only

Emergency Equipment

In addition to checking for spare electrical fuses (if equipped), three red reflective triangles and a properly charged and rated fire extinguisher, school bus drivers must also inspect the following emergency equipment:

- First Aid Emergency Kit
- Body Fluid Cleanup Kit

Lighting Indicators

In addition to checking the lighting indicators listed in Section 10.2 of this manual, school bus drivers must also check the following lighting indicators (internal panel lights):

- Alternately flashing amber lights indicator, if equipped.
- Alternately flashing red lights indicator.
- Strobe light indicator, if equipped.

Lights/Reflectors

In addition to checking the lights and reflective devices listed in Section 10.2 of this manual, school bus drivers must also check the following (external) lights and reflectors:

- Strobe light, if equipped.
- Stop arm light, if equipped.
- Alternately flashing amber lights, if equipped.
- Alternately flashing red lights.

Student Mirrors

In addition to checking the external mirrors, school bus drivers must also check the internal and external mirrors used for observing students:

- Check for proper adjustment.
- Check that all internal and external mirrors and mirror brackets are not damaged and are mounted securely with no loose fittings.
- Check that visibility is not impaired due to dirty mirrors.

Stop Arm

- If equipped, check the stop arm to see that it is mounted securely to the frame of the vehicle. Also, check for loose fittings and damage.

Passenger Entry/Lift

- Check that the entry door is not damaged, operates smoothly and closes securely from the inside.
- Check that entry door glass is clean, not cracked or missing.
- Hand rails are secure and the step light is working, if equipped.
- The entry steps must be clear of debris/snow/ice and the treads cannot be loose or worn excessively.
- If equipped with a handicap lift, look for leaking, damaged or missing parts and explain how lift should be checked for correct operation. Lift must be fully retracted and latched securely.

Emergency Exit

- Make sure that all emergency exits are not damaged, operate smoothly and close securely from the inside.
- Check that any emergency exit warning devices are working.

Seating

- Look for broken seat frames and check that seat frames are firmly attached to the floor.
- Check that all seat cushions are attached securely to the seat frames.

Trailer

Trailer Front

Air/Electrical Connections

- Check that trailer air connectors are sealed and in good condition.
- Make sure glad hands are locked in place, free of damage and oil/grease that can cause air leaks.
- Make sure the trailer electrical plug is firmly seated and locked in place.

Header Board

- If equipped, check the header board to see that it is secure, free of damage and strong enough to contain cargo.
- If equipped, the canvas or tarp carrier must be mounted and fastened securely.
- On enclosed trailers, check the front area for signs of damage, such as cracks, bulges or holes.

Side of Trailer

Landing Gear

- Check that the landing gear is fully raised, has no missing parts, crank handle is secure and the support frame is not damaged.
- If power operated, check for air or hydraulic leaks.

Doors/Ties/Lifts

- If equipped, check that doors are not damaged. Check that doors open, close and latch properly from the outside.
- Check that ties, straps, chains and binders are secure.
- If equipped with a cargo lift, look for leaking, damaged or missing parts, and explain how it should be checked for correct operation.
- Lift should be fully retracted and latched securely.

Frame

- Look for cracks, broken welds, holes or other damage to the frame, cross members, box and floor.

Tandem Release Arm/Locking Pins

- If equipped, make sure the locking pins are locked in place and release arm is secured.

Remainder of Trailer

Remainder of Trailer

Please refer to previous parts of this section for detailed inspection procedures regarding the following components:

- Wheels.
- Suspension system.

- Brakes.
- Doors/ties/lift.
- Splash guards.

Coach/Transit Bus

Passenger Items

Passenger Entry/Lift

- Check that entry doors operate smoothly and close securely from the inside.
- Check that hand rails are secure and, if equipped, that the step light(s) are working.
- Check that the entry steps are clear, with the treads not loose or worn excessively.
- If equipped with a handicap lift, look for any leaking, damaged or missing part, and explain how it should be checked for correct operation.
- Lift should be fully retracted and latched securely.

Emergency Exits

- Make sure that all emergency exits are not damaged, operate smoothly and close securely from the inside.
- Check that any emergency exit warning devices are working.

Passenger Seating

- Look for broken seat frames and check that seat frames are firmly attached to the floor.
- Check that seat cushions are attached securely to the seat frames.

Entry/Exit

Doors/Mirrors

- Check that entry/exit doors are not damaged and operate smoothly from the outside. Hinges should be secure with seals intact.
- Make sure that the passenger exit mirrors and all external mirrors and mirror brackets are not damaged and are mounted securely with no loose fittings.

External Inspection of Coach/Transit Bus

Level/Air Leaks

- See that the vehicle is sitting level (front and rear) and, if air-equipped, check for audible air leaks from the suspension system.

Fuel Tank(s)

- See that fuel tank(s) are secure with no leaks from tank(s) or lines.

Baggage Compartments

- Check that baggage and all other exterior compartment doors are not damaged, operate properly and latch securely.

Battery/Box

- Wherever located, see that battery(s) are secure, connections are tight and cell caps are present.
- Battery connections should not show signs of excessive corrosion.
- Check that battery box and cover or door is not damaged and is secure.

Remainder of Coach/Transit Bus

Remainder of Vehicle

Please refer to previous parts of this section for detailed inspection procedures for the remainder of the vehicle.
Remember: The pre-trip vehicle inspection must be passed before you can proceed to the basic vehicle control test.

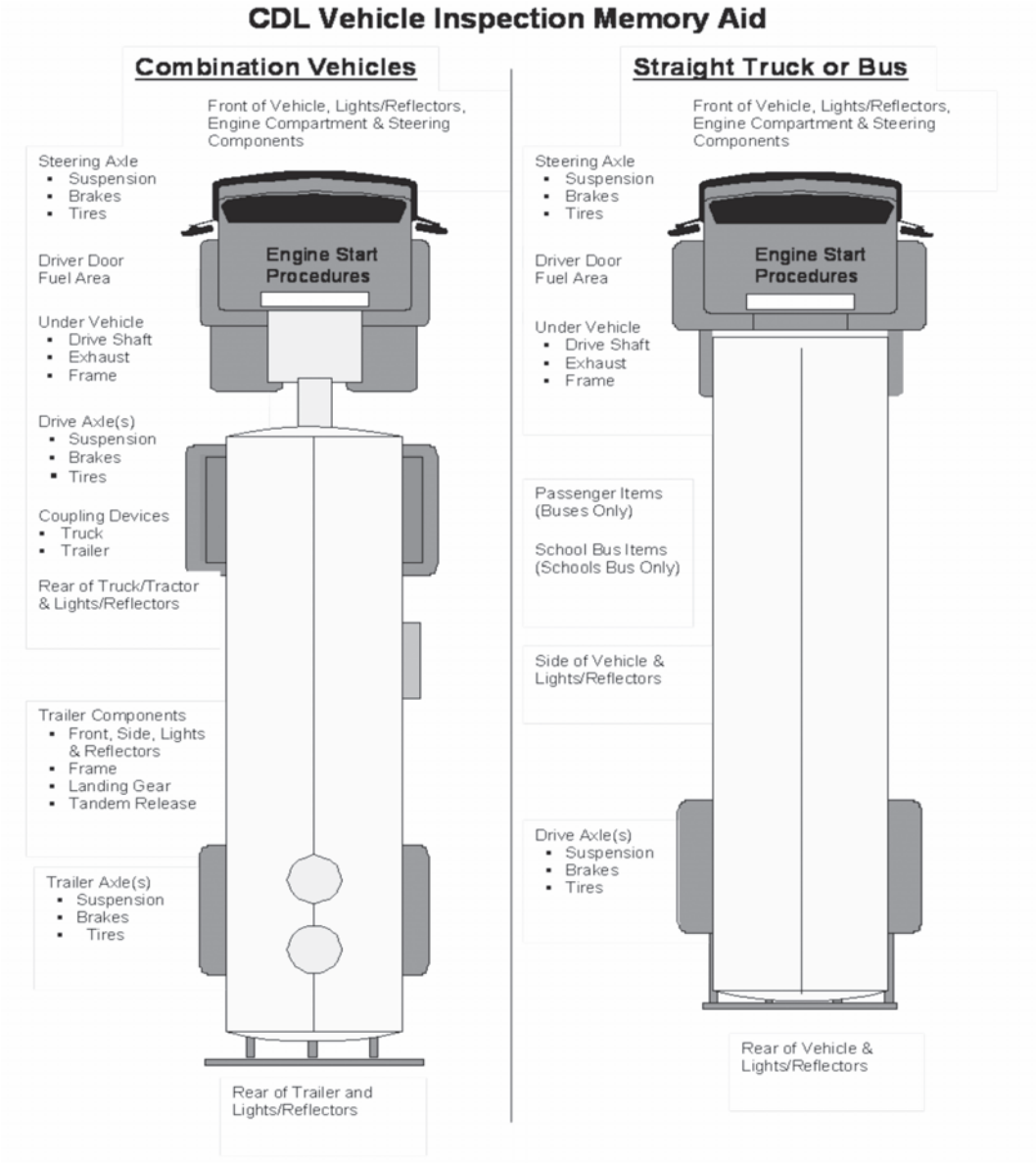
Taking the CDL Pre-trip Inspection Test

Class A Pre-trip Inspection Test

If you are applying for a Class A CDL, you will be required to perform a pre-trip inspection in the vehicle you have brought with you for testing. The vehicle must be a combination vehicle, representative of the unit you will be driving and must meet the class weight requirements. If the vehicle is an air brake vehicle, you must first pass the Air Brake Knowledge test. You also must have passed all applicable endorsement knowledge tests that pertain to the vehicle you bring in for testing. You will be required to perform one of the four versions of the inspection; you will not know which version until just before testing begins. All of the tests include an engine start, in-cab-inspection and inspection of the coupling system. In addition, your test may include an inspection of the entire vehicle or only a portion of the vehicle which your CDL examiner will explain to you.

Class B and C Pre-trip Inspection Test

If you are applying for a Class B or C CDL, you will be required to perform a pre-trip inspection in the vehicle you have brought with you for testing. The vehicle must be a representative of the unit you will be driving and must meet the class weight requirements. If the vehicle is an air brake vehicle, you must first pass the Air Brake Knowledge test. You also must have passed all applicable endorsement knowledge tests that pertain to the vehicle you bring in for testing. You will be required to perform one of the three versions of the inspection; you will not know which version until just before testing begins. All of the tests include an engine start and in-cab-inspection. In addition, your test may include an inspection of the entire vehicle or only a portion of the vehicle which your CDL examiner will explain to you. You will have to inspect any special vehicle features, if applicable.



SECTION 13
BASIC VEHICLE CONTROL SKILLS TEST

This Section Covers:
- Skills Test Scoring
- Skills Test Exercises

Your basic control skills could be tested using one or more of the following exercises:
- Straight line backing.
- Offset back/right.
- Offset back/left.
- Parallel park (driver side).
- Parallel park (conventional).
- Alley dock.

These exercises are shown in Figures 13.1 through 13.6.

SCORING
- Encroachments.
- Pull-ups.
- Outside Vehicle Observations (Looks).
- Final Position.

Encroachments. The examiner will score the number of times you touch or cross over an exercise boundary line with any portion of your vehicle. Each encroachment will count as an error and will acquire points. Using more than three encroachments on a particular exercise will be scored as an automatic basic vehicle control skills test failure.

Pull-ups. When a driver stops and reverses direction to get a better position, it is scored as a "pull-up." Stopping without changing direction does not count as a pull-up. The maximum number of pull-ups you may use, without penalty, is two for all exercises except for the Straight Line Backing exercise, which allows only one pull-up. Using more than the alloted pull-ups on any particular exercise will be scored as an automatic basic vehicle control skills test failure.

Outside Vehicle Observations (Looks). You may be permitted to safely stop and exit the vehicle to check the external position of the vehicle (look). When doing so, you must place the vehicle in neutral and set the parking brake(s). Then, when exiting the vehicle, you must do so safely by facing the vehicle and maintaining three points of contact with the vehicle at all times. If you do not safely secure the vehicle or safely exit the vehicle it may result in an automatic failure of the basic vehicle control skills test.

Each time you open the door, move from a seated position where in physical control of the vehicle or, on a bus, walk to the back of a bus to get a better view, it is scored as a look. The maximum number of looks you may use is two for all exercises except for the Straight Line Backing exercise, which allows only one look. There will be no points assigned to these looks, but exiting the vehicle or using any looks over this allotted amount will be scored as an automatic basic vehicle control skills test failure.

Final Position. It is important that you finish each exercise exactly as the examiner has instructed you. If you do not maneuver the vehicle into its final position as described by the examiner, you will be penalized and could fail the basic vehicle control skills test.

Total Points. The maximum total number of points for the basic vehicle control skills overall (all exercises combined) is 12 points. **If you accumulate more than 12 points, the basic vehicle control skills test will be an overall failure.**

EXERCISES

Straight Line Backing

You may be asked to back your vehicle in a straight line between two rows of cones without touching or crossing over the exercise boundaries. (See Figure 13.1.)

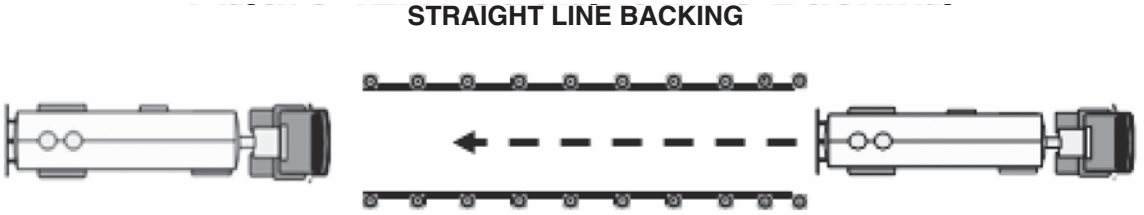


Figure 13.1

Offset Back/Right

You may be asked to back into a space that is to the right rear of your vehicle. You will drive straight forward and back your vehicle into that space without striking the side or rear boundaries marked by cones. You must place your vehicle completely into the space. (See Figure 13.2.)

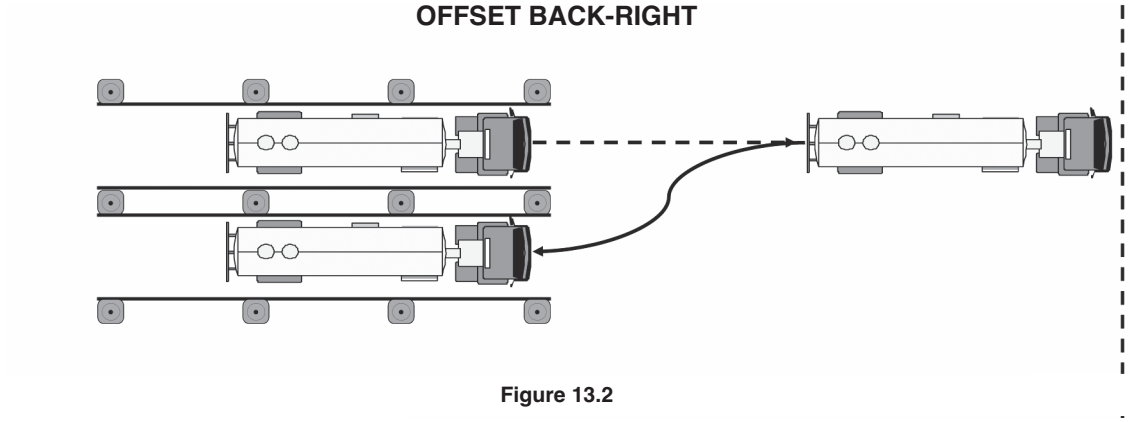


Figure 13.2

Offset Back/Left

You may be asked to back into a space that is to the left rear of your vehicle. You will drive straight forward and back your vehicle into that space without striking the side or rear boundaries marked by cones. You must place your vehicle completely into the space. (See Figure 13.3.)

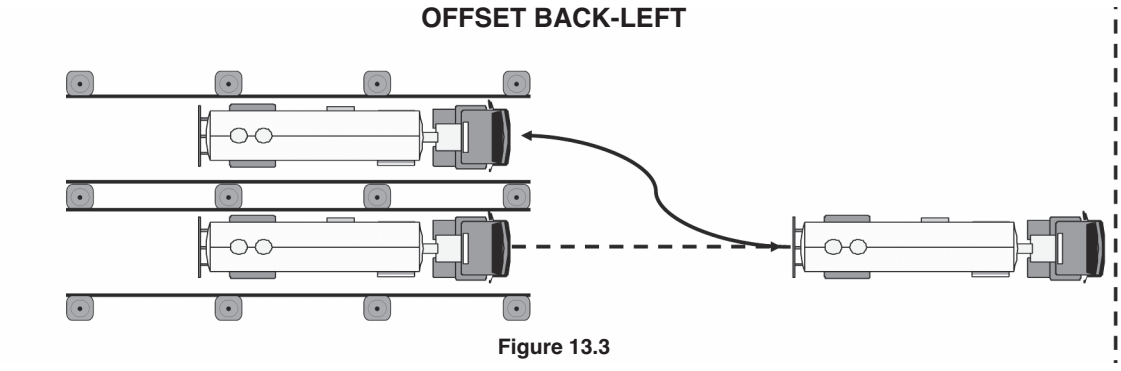


Figure 13.3

Parallel Park (Driver Side)
You may be asked to park in a parallel parking space that is on your left. You are to drive past the parking space and back into it bringing the rear of your vehicle as close as possible to the rear of the space without crossing side or rear boundaries marked by cones. You are required to get your vehicle completely into the space. (See Figure 13.4.)

PARALLEL PARK DRIVER'S SIDE

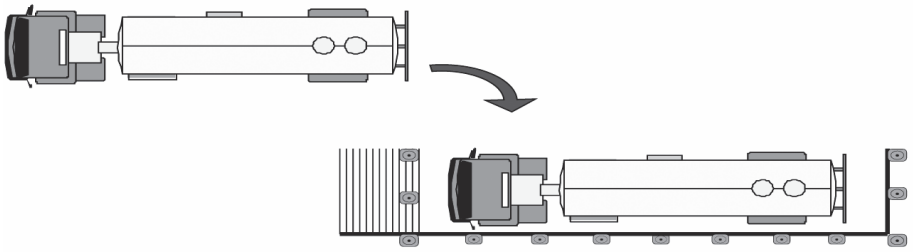


Figure 13.4

Parallel Park (Conventional)
You may be asked to park in a parallel parking space that is on your right. You are to drive past the parking space and back into it bringing the rear of your vehicle as close as possible to the rear of the space without crossing side or rear boundaries marked by cones. You are required to get your vehicle completely into the space. (See Figure 13.5.)

PARALLEL PARK CONVENTIONAL

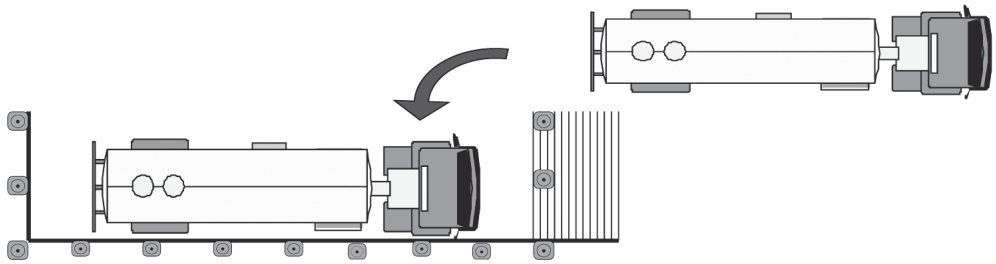


Figure 13.5

Alley Dock
You may be asked to sight-side back your vehicle into an alley. You will drive past the alley and position your vehicle parallel to the outer boundary. From that position, back into the alley bringing the rear of your vehicle within 3 feet of the rear of the alley without touching boundary lines or cones. Your vehicle must be straight within the alley/lane when you have completed the maneuver. (See Figure 13.6.)

90° ALLEY DOCK

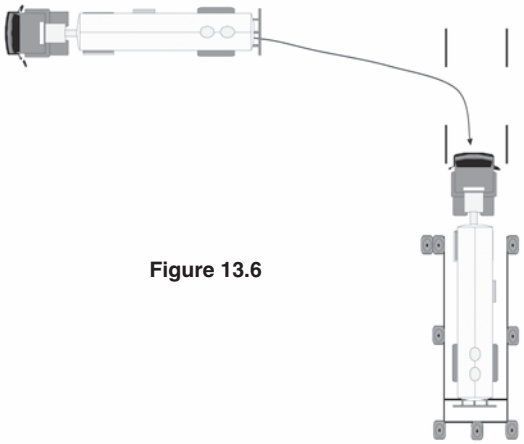


Figure 13.6

SECTION 14
ON-ROAD DRIVING TEST

This Section Covers:

- How You Will Be Tested
- General Driving Behaviors
- Electronic Device Law

You will drive over a test route that has a variety of traffic situations. At all times during the test, you must drive in a safe and responsible manner. You must wear your safety belt; obey all traffic signs, signals and laws; and complete the test without an accident or violation. No radios, electronic devices or phones may be on during the test.

During the driving test, the examiner will be scoring you on specific driving maneuvers as well as on your general driving behavior. You will follow the directions of the examiner. Directions will be given to you so you will have plenty of time to do what the examiner has asked. You will not be asked to drive in an unsafe manner.

If your test route does not have certain traffic situations, you may be asked to simulate a traffic situation. You will do this by telling the examiner what you are or would be doing if you were in that traffic situation.

How You Will Be Tested

Turns

You have been asked to make a turn:

- Check traffic in all directions.
- Use turn signals and safely get into the lane needed for the turn.

As you approach the turn:

- Use turn signals to warn others of your turn.
- Slow down smoothly, change gears as needed to keep power, but do not coast unsafely. Unsafe coasting occurs when your vehicle is out of gear (clutch depressed or gearshift in neutral) for more than the length of your vehicle.

If you must stop before making the turn:

- Come to a smooth stop without skidding.
- Come to a complete stop behind the stop line, crosswalk or stop sign.
- If stopping behind another vehicle, stop where you can see the rear tires on the vehicle ahead of you (safe gap).
- Do not let your vehicle roll.
- Keep the front wheels aimed straight ahead.

When ready to turn:

- Check traffic in all directions.
- Keep both hands on the steering wheel during the turn.
- Keep checking your mirror to make sure the vehicle does not hit anything on the inside of the turn.
- Vehicle should not move into oncoming traffic.
- Vehicle should finish turn in correct lane.

After turn:

- Make sure turn signal is off.
- Get up to speed of traffic, use turn signal and move into right-most lane when safe to do so (if not already there).
- Check mirrors and traffic.

Intersections

As you approach an intersection:

- Check traffic thoroughly in all directions.
- Decelerate gently.
- Brake smoothly and, if necessary, change gears.
- If necessary, come to a complete stop (no coasting) behind any stop signs, signals, sidewalks or stop lines maintaining a safe gap behind any vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle must not roll forward or backward.

When driving through an intersection:

- Check traffic thoroughly in all directions.
- Decelerate and yield to any pedestrians and traffic in the intersection.
- Do not change lanes while proceeding through the intersection.
- Keep your hands on the wheel.

Once through the intersection:

- Continue checking mirrors and traffic.
- Accelerate smoothly and change gears as necessary.

Urban/Rural Straight

During this part of the test, you are expected to make regular traffic checks and maintain a safe following distance. Your vehicle should be centered in the proper lane (right-most lane), and you should keep up with the flow of traffic but not exceed the posted speed limit.

Lane Changes

During multiple lane portions of the test, you will be asked to change lanes to the left and then back to the right. You should make the necessary traffic checks first and then use proper signals and smoothly change lanes when it is safe to do so.

Expressway

Before entering the expressway:

- Check traffic.
- Use proper signals.
- Merge smoothly into the proper lane of traffic.

Once on the expressway:

- Maintain proper lane positioning, vehicle spacing and vehicle speed.
- Continue to check traffic thoroughly in all directions.

When exiting the expressway:

- Make necessary traffic checks.
- Use proper signals.
- Decelerate smoothly in the exit lane.
- Once on the exit ramp, you must continue to decelerate within the lane markings and maintain adequate spacing between your vehicle and other vehicles.

Stop/Start

For this maneuver, you will be asked to pull your vehicle over to the side of the road and stop as if you were going to get out and check something on your vehicle. You must check traffic thoroughly in all directions and move to the right-most lane or shoulder of road.

As you prepare for the stop:

- Check traffic.
- Activate your right-turn signal.
- Decelerate smoothly, brake evenly and change gears as necessary.
- Bring your vehicle to a full stop without coasting.

Once stopped:

- Vehicle must be parallel to the curb or shoulder of the road and safely out of the traffic flow.
- Vehicle should not be blocking driveways, fire hydrants, intersections, signs, etc.
- Cancel your turn signal.
- Activate your four-way emergency flashers.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Move the gear shift to “neutral” or “park.”
- Remove your feet from the brake and clutch pedals.

When instructed to resume:

- Check traffic and your mirrors thoroughly in all directions.
- Turn off your four-way flashers.
- Activate the left-turn signal.
- When traffic permits, you should release the parking brake and pull straight ahead.
- Do not turn the wheel before your vehicle moves.
- Check traffic from all directions, especially to the left.
- Steer and accelerate smoothly into the proper lane when safe to do so.
- Once your vehicle is back into the flow of traffic, cancel your left-turn signal.

Curve

- When approaching a curve:
- Check traffic thoroughly in all directions.
- Before entering the curve, reduce speed so further braking or shifting is not required in the curve.
- Keep vehicle in the lane.
- Continue checking traffic in all directions.

Railroad Crossing

Before reaching the crossing, all commercial drivers should:

- Decelerate, brake smoothly and shift gears as necessary.
- Look and listen for the presence of trains.
- Check traffic in all directions.

Do not stop, change gears, pass another vehicle or change lanes while any part of your vehicle is in the crossing.

If you are driving a bus, school bus or vehicle displaying placards, you should be prepared to observe the following procedures at every railroad crossing (unless the crossing is exempt):

- As the vehicle approaches a railroad crossing, activate the four-way flashers.
- Stop the vehicle within 50 feet but not less than 15 feet from the nearest rail, place the bus in park/neutral and set the parking brake.
- Listen and look in both directions along the track for an approaching train and for signals indicating the approach of a train. If operating a bus, you may also be required to open the window and door prior to crossing tracks.
- Keep hands on the steering wheel as the vehicle crosses the tracks.
- Do not stop, change gears or change lanes while any part of your vehicle is proceeding across the tracks.
- Four-way flashers should be deactivated after the vehicle crosses the tracks.
- Continue to check mirrors and traffic.

Not all driving road test routes will have a railroad crossing. You may be asked to explain and demonstrate the proper railroad crossing procedures to the examiner at a simulated location.

Bridge/Overpass/Sign

After driving under an overpass, you may be asked to tell the examiner what the posted clearance or height was. After going over a bridge, you may be asked to tell the examiner what the posted weight limit was. If your test route does not have a bridge or overpass, you may be asked about another traffic sign. When asked, be prepared to identify and explain to the examiner any traffic sign which may appear on the route.

Student Discharge (School Bus)

If you are applying for a School Bus endorsement, you will be required to demonstrate loading and unloading students. Please refer to Section 10 of this manual for procedures on loading and unloading school students.

General Driving Behaviors

You will be scored on your overall performance in the following general driving behavior categories:

Clutch Usage (for Manual Transmission)

- Always use clutch to shift.
- Double-clutch when shifting. Do not rev or lug the engine.
- Do not ride clutch to control speed. Do not coast with the clutch depressed or “pop” the clutch.

Gear Usage (for Manual Transmission)

- Do not grind or clash gears.
- Select gear that does not rev or lug engine.
- Do not shift in turns and intersections.

Brake Usage

- Do not ride or pump brake.
- Do not brake harshly. Brake smoothly using steady pressure.

Lane Usage

- Do not put vehicle over curbs, sidewalks or lane markings.
- Stop behind stop lines, crosswalks or stop signs.
- Complete a turn in the proper lane on a multiple lane road (vehicle should finish a left turn in the lane directly to the right of the center line).
- Finish a right turn in the right-most (curb) lane.
- Move to or remain in right-most lane unless lane is blocked.

Steering

- Do not over or under steer the vehicle.
- Keep both hands on the steering wheel at all times unless shifting. Once you have completed the shift, return both hands to the steering wheel.

Regular Traffic Checks

- Check traffic regularly.
- Check mirrors regularly.
- Check mirrors and traffic before, while in and after an intersection.
- Scan and check traffic in high-volume areas and areas where pedestrians are expected to be present.

Use of Turn Signals

- Use turn signals properly.
- Activate turn signals when required.
- Activate turn signals at appropriate times.
- Cancel turn signals upon completion of a turn or lane change.

Upgrade and Downgrade

- Select the proper gear to maintain speed and not lug the engine.
- Check traffic thoroughly in all directions and move to the right-most or curb lane.
- If legal to do so, use the four-way flashers if traveling too slowly for the flow of traffic.

Before Starting Down the Grade. Downshift as needed to help control engine speed and test brakes by gently applying the foot brake to ensure they are functioning properly. As your vehicle moves down the grade, continue checking traffic in all directions, stay in the right-most or curb lane and, if legal to do so, use the four-way flashers if your vehicle is moving too slowly for traffic. Increase following distance and observe the following downhill braking procedures:

- Select a "safe" speed, one that is not too fast for the weight of the vehicle, length and steepness of the grade, weather and road conditions.
- Once a "safe" speed has been reached, apply the brake hard enough to feel a definite slowdown.
- When speed has been reduced to 5 mph below the "safe" speed, release the brakes. (This application should last for about three seconds.)
- Once speed has increased to the "safe" speed, repeat the procedure.

Example: If your "safe" speed is 40 mph, you should apply the brakes once your vehicle speed reaches 40 mph. Your brakes should be applied hard enough to reduce your speed to 35 mph. Once your vehicle speed reaches 35 mph, release the brakes. Repeat this procedure as often as necessary until you have reached the end of the downgrade. This braking technique is called "snubbing."

When operating any commercial vehicle, do not ride the clutch, race the engine, change gears or coast while driving down the grade. At the bottom of the grade, be sure to cancel the four-way flashers. Not all test routes will contain an area of sufficient grade to test your skills adequately. Therefore, you may be asked to simulate (verbally) driving up and down a steep hill. You must be familiar with the upgrade/downgrade procedures so that you can explain and/or demonstrate them to the examiner at any time during the driving exam.

Electronic Device Law

Effective January 1, 2014, Illinois law prohibits the use of hand-held cellphones, texting or using other communication devices while operating a motor vehicle.

Hands-free devices or Blue Tooth technology is allowed for persons over age 18. Even using a hands-free device is considered a distraction while driving and can be dangerous. If you must make a phone call, even with hands-free technology, it is recommended that you pull off to the side of the road before making the call.

Illinois drivers are exempt from using a cellphone or text messaging while driving only when:

- Reporting an emergency situation.
- Using the device hands-free or in voice-activated mode.
- Parked on the shoulder of a highway.
- Stopped due to normal traffic being obstructed and the vehicle is in neutral or park.

SECTION 15
SPECIAL CDL/CLP INFORMATION & PROGRAMS

- 15.1: Military Waiver Program
- 15.2: CDL/CLP Medical Certification Program
- 15.3: Table C – Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations
- 15.4: Railroad Crossing Safety Information

15.1 – Military Waiver Program

Qualified, eligible active military service members and those who have been discharged within the past 12 months who wish to obtain an Illinois Commercial Driver's License (CDL) and can fulfill the necessary requirements will have the opportunity to have some or all of their CDL testing waived, due to their extensive training and experience. This program is only available to those service members who are obtaining their initial CDL and not for upgrades or restriction changes to an existing CDL.

There are two options under the Military Waiver program, the Even Exchange and the Skills Waiver. For either option, the applicant and their Commanding Officer (CO) must provide a fully completed and acceptable application for the appropriate option. After submitting the application with required documentation, via email to the CDL Division at CDLSafeRideIllinois@ilsos.net, the CDL Division will review and verify the application and contact the CO and the applicant. Each option will be required to pay the appropriate CDL fee and satisfy all the CDL and other licensing requirements.

- **Even Exchange option**: The Even Exchange option is available to service members who have certain military MOS/Rating's in the Armed Services as noted on the application for this option, along with the proper military commercial driving training and experience. After an acceptable Even Exchange application is received and verified, these service members are permitted to have their CDL knowledge and skills testing waived. This also could include certain endorsement tests, if applicable to the applicant's experience.

- **Skills Waiver option**: The Skills Waiver option is available to all service members who have the proper military commercial driving training and experience but do not have the certain MOS/Rating's for the Even Exchange option. After an acceptable Skills Waiver application is received and verified, these service members are permitted to have their CDL skills testing waived. This does not include the CDL knowledge testing required and does not apply to any endorsements requiring skills testing.

Both waiver applications are displayed on the following pages. For further information, please contact the CDL Division at 217-524-5971 or 217-785-3108 or visit cyberdriveillinois.com.

STATE OF ILLINOIS APPLICATION TO WAIVE COMMERCIAL DRIVER'S LICENSE (CDL) SKILLS TESTING FOR MILITARY COMMERCIAL DRIVING EXPERIENCE

Qualified and eligible military service members may use this application to apply for a waiver of the CDL skills testing due to their military Commercial Motor Vehicle (CMV) training and experience. This application applies to the issuance of an **initial CDL only** and cannot be used for upgrades or restriction changes. These members must be active service members or be within 12 months of discharge and provide the proper documentation to support any information certified in this application. A completed, acceptable and verified application/documentation will permit the applicant to be waived from the CDL skills testing. The appropriate CDL knowledge testing and fee will apply. The applicant must meet all the CDL and other licensing requirements. **This Skills Testing Waiver application does not apply to any endorsements.**

APPLICANT INFORMATION (PLEASE PRINT)

NAME (Last, First, Middle)	STATE DRIVER'S LICENSE NUMBER	EMAIL

BRANCH OF SERVICE	DATE OF DISCHARGE	MOS/RATING

RESIDENCE ADDRESS (STREET)	CITY	STATE	ZIP CODE	TELEPHONE NUMBER

DRIVER RECORD CERTIFICATION

During the two-year period immediately preceding this date:

- Have you had more than one driver's license (except for a military license)? ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Has your license been suspended, revoked, canceled or disqualified in this or any state? ☐ YES ☐ NO

Have you been convicted of any violations described below in any type of motor vehicle?

- Being under the influence of alcohol as prescribed by state law ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Being under the influence of a controlled substance ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Having an alcohol concentration of .04 percent or greater while operating a CMV ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Refusing to take an alcohol test as required by a state under its implied consent laws or regulations in 49 CFR 383.72 ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Leaving the scene of an accident ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Using the vehicle to commit a felony (other than manufacturing, distributing or dispensing a controlled substance) ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Driving a CMV while your CDL is revoked, suspended or canceled; or you are disqualified from operating a CMV ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Causing a fatality through the negligent operation of a CMV (including motor vehicle manslaughter, homicide by motor vehicle, or negligent homicide) ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Using the vehicle in the commission of a felony involving manufacturing, distributing or dispensing a controlled substance ☐ YES ☐ NO

Have you had more than one conviction for any of the violations described below in any type of motor vehicle?

- Speeding in excess of 15 mph or more above the posted speed limit ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Driving recklessly, as defined by state or local law or regulation (including offenses of driving a motor vehicle in willful or wanton disregard for the safety of persons or property) ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Making improper or erratic lane changes ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Following the vehicle ahead too closely ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Violating state or local law relating to motor vehicle traffic control (other than a parking violation) arising in connection with a fatal accident ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Driving a CMV without obtaining a CDL ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Driving a CMV without a CDL in the driver's possession ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Driving a CMV without the proper class of CDL and/or endorsements for a specific vehicle group being operated or for the passengers or type of cargo being transported ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Violating a state or local law or ordinance on motor vehicle traffic control prohibiting texting while driving ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Violating a state or local law or ordinance on motor vehicle traffic control restricting or prohibiting the use of a hand-held mobile telephone while driving ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Have you had any conviction for a violation of military, state or local law relating to motor vehicle traffic control (other than parking violation) arising in connection with any traffic accident and have no record of an accident in which you were at fault ☐ YES ☐ NO

Do you certify that you have the following military Commercial Motor Vehicle (CMV) driving experience:

- Have you been regularly employed or were you regularly employed within the last 12 months in a military position requiring the operation of a military motor vehicle that was representative of a CMV? ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Were you exempted from the CDL licensing requirements for driving a military vehicle on state roads and highways in accordance with 49 CFR §383.3 (c)? ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Have you operated a military motor vehicle representative of the CMV that you operate or expect to operate, for at least the two years immediately preceding discharge from the military? ☐ YES ☐ NO

I certify under penalty of perjury that the information on this form is true and correct to the best of my knowledge, information and belief. I understand that any misrepresentation of the answers above will lead to immediate cancellation of my CDL driving privileges.

APPLICANT'S SIGNATURE	DATE

Printed by authority of the State of Illinois. September 2017 — 1 — DSD CDL 26.1

COMMANDING OFFICER'S CERTIFICATION OF MEMBER'S COMMERCIAL DRIVING EXPERIENCE (PLEASE PRINT)

COMMANDING OFFICER'S NAME (LAST, FIRST, MIDDLE)		TELEPHONE NUMBER	
EMAIL			
STREET ADDRESS			
CITY	STATE	ZIP CODE	COUNTY
COMMANDING OFFICER UNIT	UNIT ADDRESS IF DIFFERENT FROM ABOVE		
SERVICE MEMBER'S DATES OF DRIVING EXPERIENCE	EXPIRATION DATE (US Gov't Motor Vehicle Operator Identification Card/License)		

CIRCLE THE HIGHEST CLASS OF VEHICLES THE SERVICE MEMBER IS QUALIFIED AND IS LICENSED TO OPERATE:

Class	Vehicle Description	EXAMPLE OF VEHICLES IN GROUP
A	**Truck-Tractor/Semitrailer Combination** Any combination of vehicles with a GCWR of 26,001 or more pounds, provided the GVWR of the vehicle(s) being towed is **in excess** of 10,000 pounds.	
A	**Non-Truck-Tractor/Semitrailer Combination** Any combination of vehicles with a GCWR of 26,001 or more pounds, provided the GVWR of the vehicle(s) being towed is **in excess** of 10,000 pounds **(O restriction will apply)**.	
B	Any single vehicle with a GVWR of 26,001 or more pounds, including buses.	

The service member is qualified to operate vehicles equipped with a **full air brake system**: (L restriction may apply) ☐ YES ☐ NO

The service member is qualified to operate vehicles equipped with an **air-over-hydraulic** braking system: (Z restriction will apply) ☐ YES ☐ NO

The service member is qualified to operate vehicles with the following **transmission**: ☐ MANUAL ☐ AUTOMATIC (If automatic, E restriction will apply)

I certify that the service member named on the front of this document is qualified for this waiver/exchange due to him or her being assigned to a job/assignment requiring the operation of a commercial motor vehicle and that the service member's driving experience has been verified; and the information provided herein is true and correct to my knowledge, information and belief. I also certify that I am an officer of the Armed Forces.

PRINT COMMANDING OFFICER'S NAME/RANK	DATE

SIGNATURE	DATE

Authority of Article 136, Uniform Code of Military Justice or 10 U.S.C. 1044a

The Commanding Officer (CO) must email the completed/signed application along with the member's Military ID/License or documentation to verify his or her training and experience to the Office of the Illinois Secretary of State's CDL Division at CDLSafeRideIllinois@ilsos.net.
The application will be verified by the CDL Division and a corresponding/confirmation email will be sent to the CO and the applicant.
After the application is confirmed, the applicant must present the original application to an Illinois CDL facility within the approval time period.

Illinois SOS Use only: Required documentation verified, Application Reviewed and Approved, Waiver Applied.

CDL Section Staff Member Name: _____ Signature: _____ Issue Date: _____ Exp Date: _____

SKILLS WAIVER/Illinois CDL Division

STATE OF ILLINOIS APPLICATION FOR EXCHANGE OF U.S. MILITARY COMMERCIAL DRIVING EXPERIENCE FOR COMMERCIAL DRIVER'S LICENSE (CDL)

Qualified and eligible military service members with certain MOS/Rating may use this application to apply to exchange their military Commercial Motor Vehicle (CMV) training and experience for an Illinois CDL. This application applies to the issuance of an **initial CDL only** and cannot be used for upgrades or restriction changes. These members must be active service members or be within 12 months of discharge and provide the proper documentation to support any information certified in this application. A completed, acceptable and verified application/documentation will be exchanged for a CDL, with the appropriate endorsements, without CDL knowledge or skills testing. The appropriate CDL fee will apply. The applicant must meet all the CDL and other licensing requirements. **This Exchange program does not apply to the School Bus (S) endorsement.**

APPLICANT INFORMATION (PLEASE PRINT)

NAME (Last, First, Middle)	STATE DRIVER'S LICENSE NUMBER	EMAIL

BRANCH OF SERVICE	DATE OF DISCHARGE	MOS/RATING

RESIDENCE ADDRESS (STREET)	CITY	STATE	ZIP CODE	TELEPHONE NUMBER

DRIVER RECORD CERTIFICATION

During the two-year period immediately preceding this date:

- Have you had more than one driver's license (except for a military license)? ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Has your license been suspended, revoked, canceled or disqualified in this or any state? ☐ YES ☐ NO

Have you been convicted of any violations described below in any type of motor vehicle?

- Being under the influence of alcohol as prescribed by state law ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Being under the influence of a controlled substance ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Having an alcohol concentration of .04 percent or greater while operating a CMV ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Refusing to take an alcohol test as required by a state under its implied consent laws or regulations in 49 CFR 383.72 ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Leaving the scene of an accident ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Using the vehicle to commit a felony (other than manufacturing, distributing or dispensing a controlled substance) ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Driving a CMV while your CDL is revoked, suspended or canceled; or you are disqualified from operating a CMV ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Causing a fatality through the negligent operation of a CMV (including motor vehicle manslaughter, homicide by vehicle, or negligent homicide) ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Using the vehicle in the commission of a felony involving manufacturing, distributing, or dispensing a controlled substance ☐ YES ☐ NO

Have you had more than one conviction for any of the violations described below in any type of motor vehicle?

- Speeding in excess of 15 mph or more above the posted speed limit ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Driving recklessly, as defined by state or local law or regulation (including offenses of driving a motor vehicle in willful wanton disregard for the safety of persons or property) ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Making improper or erratic lane changes ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Following the vehicle ahead too closely ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Violating state or local law relating to motor vehicle traffic control (other than a parking violation) arising in connection with a fatal accident ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Driving a CMV without obtaining a CDL ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Driving a CMV without a CDL in the driver's possession ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Driving a CMV without the proper class of CDL and/or endorsements for a specific vehicle group being operated or for the passengers or type of cargo being transported ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Violating a state or local law or ordinance on motor vehicle traffic control prohibiting texting while driving ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Violating a state or local law or ordinance on motor vehicle traffic control restricting or prohibiting the use of a hand-held mobile telephone while driving ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Have you had any conviction for a violation of military, state or local law relating to motor vehicle traffic control (other than parking violation) arising in connection with any traffic accident and have no record of an accident in which you were at fault? ☐ YES ☐ NO

Do you certify that you have the following military Commercial Motor Vehicle (CMV) driving experience:

- Have you been regularly employed or were you regularly employed within the last 12 months in a military position requiring the operation of a military motor vehicle that was representative of a CMV? ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Were you exempted from the CDL licensing requirements for driving a military vehicle on state roads and highways in accordance with 49 CFR §383.3 (c)? ☐ YES ☐ NO
- Have you operated a military motor vehicle representative of the CMV that you operate or expect to operate, for at least the two years immediately preceding discharge from the military? ☐ YES ☐ NO

I certify under penalty of perjury that the information on this form is true and correct to the best of my knowledge, information and belief. I understand that any misrepresentation of the answers above will lead to immediate cancellation of my CDL driving privileges.

APPLICANT'S SIGNATURE	DATE

Printed by authority of the State of Illinois. September 2017 — 1 — DSD CDL 27.1

COMMANDING OFFICER'S CERTIFICATION OF MEMBER'S COMMERCIAL DRIVING EXPERIENCE (PLEASE PRINT)

COMMANDING OFFICER'S NAME (LAST, FIRST, MIDDLE)		TELEPHONE NUMBER	
EMAIL			
STREET ADDRESS			
CITY	STATE	ZIP CODE	COUNTY
COMMANDING OFFICER UNIT	UNIT ADDRESS IF DIFFERENT FROM ABOVE		
SERVICE MEMBER'S DATES OF DRIVING EXPERIENCE	EXPIRATION DATE (US Gov't Motor Vehicle Operator Identification Card/License)		

COMMANDING OFFICER'S VERIFICATION OF SERVICE MEMBER'S MOS/RATING (SERVICE MEMBERS MUST HAVE ONE OF THESE MOS/RATINGS TO QUALIFY) CIRCLE ONE

U.S. ARMY **88M** **92F** U.S. AIR FORCE **2T1** **2F0** **3E2** **3531** **EO**

CIRCLE THE HIGHEST CLASS OF VEHICLES THE SERVICE MEMBER IS QUALIFIED AND IS LICENSED TO OPERATE:

Class	Vehicle Description	EXAMPLE OF VEHICLES IN GROUP
A	**Truck-Tractor/Semitrailer Combination** Any combination of vehicles with a GCWR of 26,001 or more pounds provided the GVWR of the vehicle(s) being towed is **in excess** of 10,000 pounds.	
A	**Non-Truck-Tractor/Semitrailer Combination** Any combination of vehicles with a GCWR of 26,001 or more pounds provided the GVWR of the vehicle(s) being towed is **in excess** of 10,000 pounds **(O restriction will apply)**.	
B	Any single vehicle with a GVWR of 26,001 or more pounds, including buses.	

The service member is qualified to operate vehicles equipped with a **full air brake system**: (L restriction may apply) ☐ YES ☐ NO

The service member is qualified to operate vehicles equipped with an **air-over-hydraulic** braking system: (Z restriction will apply) ☐ YES ☐ NO

The service member is qualified to operate vehicles with the following **transmission**: ☐ MANUAL ☐ AUTOMATIC (If automatic, E restriction will apply)

The service member is qualified to operate **a Passenger Vehicle (P)** designed to transport 16+ passengers: ☐ YES ☐ NO

The service member is qualified to operate **a Tank Vehicle (N)** designed to transport 1000+ gallons of liquid or gaseous material: ☐ YES ☐ NO

The service member is qualified to operate **a Vehicle carrying Hazardous Materials (H)**: (*Valid TSA approval is required) ☐ YES ☐ NO

I certify that the service member named on the front of this document is qualified for this waiver/exchange due to him or her being assigned to a job/assignment requiring the operation of a commercial motor vehicle and that the service member's driving experience has been verified; and the information provided herein is true and correct to my knowledge, information and belief. I also certify that I am an officer of the Armed Forces.

PRINT COMMANDING OFFICER'S NAME/RANK	DATE
SIGNATURE	DATE

Authority of Article 136, Uniform Code of Military Justice or 10 U.S.C. 1044a

The Commanding Officer (CO) must email the completed/signed application along with the member's Military ID/License or documentation to verify his or her training and experience to the Illinois Office of the Secretary of State's CDL Division at CDLSafeRideIllinois@ilsos.net.
The application will be verified by the CDL Division and a corresponding/confirmation email will be sent to the CO and the applicant.
After the application is confirmed, the applicant must present the original application to an Illinois CDL facility within the approval time period.

Illinois SOS Use only: Required documentation verified, Application Reviewed and Approved, Waiver Applied.

CDL Section Staff Member Name: _____ Signature: _____ Issue Date: _____ Exp Date: _____

Even Exchange/Illinois CDL Division

MEDICAL CERTIFICATION AS PART OF OBTAINING A CDL UNDER TITLE 49, U.S.D.O.T., CFR PART 383, 384, 390, 391:

Any person applying for a CDL for the first time or transferring from another state after January 30, 2014, must certify with the Illinois Secretary of State's office one of the following four (4) categories:

1. **Non-excepted interstate (NI):** I certify that I operate or expect to operate in interstate commerce, and I am both subject to and meet the qualification requirements under 49 CFR Part 391, and I am required to obtain a medical examiner's certificate by 49 CFR 391.45.
2. **Excepted interstate (EI):** I certify that I operate or expect to operate in interstate commerce, but engage exclusively in transportation or operations excepted under 49 CFR 390.3(f), 391.2, 391.68 or 398.3 from all or parts of the qualification requirements of 49 CFR Part 391, and I am, therefore, not required to obtain a medical examiner's certificate by 49 CFR 391.45.
3. **Non-excepted intrastate (NA):** I certify that I operate only in intrastate commerce and, therefore, I am subject to the current state's medical requirements.
4. **Excepted intrastate (EA):** I certify that I operate in intrastate commerce, but engage exclusively in transportation or operations excepted from all or parts of the state's medical requirements.

Upon the effective date of this regulation, CDL holders who certify to category 1 (non-excepted interstate) must provide the original copy of the Medical Examiner's Certificate to a Secretary of State Driver Services facility prior to the issuance, renewal, upgrade or replacement of a CDL no later than January 30, 2014, whichever occurs first. Failure to do so will result in downgrading your CDL to a non-CDL license. When a driver is certifying to non-excepted interstate requirements, downgrading the CDL to a non-CDL status will occur automatically whenever the CDL holder's medical certificate expires and a new one has not been given to the Secretary of State's office.

The Illinois Secretary of State's office is not responsible for determining a self-certification classification — **this is the sole responsibility of the driver.**

- For a complete list of these rules and regulations, refer to Title 49 CFR 383.71(a).
- Initial certification with the Secretary of State's office can only be done at a CDL Driver Services facility. After your original certification in person (01/30/12-01/30/14) you may visit the facility again in person or mail the certification to the Medical Review Unit in Springfield. (If mailing, please allow 30 days prior to expiration of you current medical certification). At anytime, if your medical certificate expires and you have not notified the Secretary of State's office, your CDL will be canceled.

All Non-Excepted Interstate (NI) drivers must maintain a valid, current DOT medical certificate and must keep it on file with the Illinois Secretary of State's Office.

All NI drivers must obtain their medical certificate from a medical examiner registered with the National Registry. For more information on the National registry visit: https://nationalregistry.fmcsa.dot.gov/NRPublicUI/Drivers.seam

Most other CDL/CLP drivers and Commercial Motor Vehicle (CMV) operators are also required to maintain a medical certificate but do not have to provide it to our office. They must keep it with them while driving a CMV.

For more information on the CDL Medical program visit:
http://www.cyberdriveillinois.com/departments/drivers/drivers_license/CDL/cdl.html#medical

All medical examinations conducted on or after 4/20/2016 must be certified by using the medical examiner's certificate form number MCSA-5876.

MEDICAL CERTIFICATION INFORMATION FOR CDL HOLDERS/CLP APPLICANTS

As of January 30, 2014,

ALL CDL HOLDERS AND CLP APPLICANTS MUST PERSONALLY CERTIFY OR RECERTIFY THEIR CDL MEDICAL STATUS WITH EACH VISIT.

All CDL holders and CLP applicants who choose to declare the NI category (see below) must also provide a valid, acceptable DOT medical certificate/card. Drivers/applicants who are required to have a federal waiver/exemption or SPE authorization accompanying their medical certificate/card must also present this/these document(s).

Drivers/applicants who declare NI must maintain the validity of their medical certificate and any accompanying documents with the Secretary of State CDL Medical Unit. Updated medical certificates can be submitted at an Illinois CDL facility or sent directly to the CDL Medical Unit. Any driver who no longer wishes be an NI driver or maintain a medical certificate must visit a CDL facility and declare another category.

CDL Self-Certification Categories

There are four CDL self-certification categories (All CDL Holders must certify one of these categories):

1. **NON-EXCEPTED INTERSTATE (NI)** – Engaged in interstate commerce and meet 49 CFR Part 391 requirements (must have medical certificate; must provide the Secretary of State's office with an original or copy of driver's medical certificate). *This is the **only category** where the SOS will collect DOT MEDICAL information and must have driver's DOT medical certificate.* (Category covers multi-state drivers, who are not in excepted (exempt) category, as noted in #2 below.)
   *Also, this category covers any CDL holder **who does not** fall under one of the categories below or ANY CDL holder who is **granted a federal vision or diabetes exemption/waiver or SPE-limb impairment (Skill Performance Evaluation).***

2. **EXCEPTED INTERSTATE (EI)** – Engaged in interstate commerce and excepted (exempt) from 49 CFR Part 391 requirements (not required by Federal (FMCSA) guidelines to hold a medical certificate to drive interstate):
   a) School bus operations. Use Category 2 if crossing state lines, or Category 4 if **NOT** crossing state lines. **A School Bus Permit (SBP) holder is required to be medically certified annually to drive a school bus**. *(The SOS will not need any detailed medical information, if you certify EI or EA. The SOS has received confirmation through the Illinois SBP program.) **All CDL holders still must certify.***
   b) **Transportation performed by the federal government, a state, or any political subdivision of a state.**
   c) Occasional transportation of personal property by individuals neither for compensation nor in the furtherance of a commercial enterprise.
   d) The transportation of human corpses or sick and injured persons.
   e) The operation of fire trucks and rescue vehicles while involved in emergency and related operations.
   f) A 9 to 15 passenger van, including the driver, which is less than 26,001 GVWR, not for compensation. If for compensation, must stay within a 75 air-mile radius of the driver's normal work reporting location.
   g) Apiarian industries (Beekeepers).
   h) Farm custom operations (Custom Harvesters).
   i) Farm vehicle drivers operating **straight trucks** in interstate commerce that meet the definition of a commercial motor vehicle (CMV) as defined in 49 CFR Part 390.5 **within 150 miles of their farm** are exempt from the medical certification requirements.
   j) Private motor carrier of passengers (non-business). For example, organizations exempt from the Internal Revenue Code that provide transportation for their members.
   k) Emergency delivery of propane winter heating fuel and pipeline response.
   l) Drivers of migrant workers (must meet minimum standards only; 49 CFR 398.3).

3. **NON-EXCEPTED INTRASTATE (NA)** – Engaged in intrastate commerce and subject to state requirements as in law today. (Covers **most** drivers who drive within a single state, but check with your employer or trade association for clarification.)

4. **EXCEPTED INTRASTATE (EA)** – Motor carriers while engaged in intrastate commerce and excepted from all or part of State safety requirements. (Same as above excepted categories in #2, but driving within a single state.)

It is the CDL holder's responsibility to determine his/her RESPECTIVE CATEGORY above and certify with the Secretary of State's office. This certification must be conducted at an Illinois CDL facility. For additional information, contact 217-785-3002, www.cyberdriveillinois.com or www.fmcsa.dot.gov.

Revised 03-26-2016

§391.11: General qualifications of drivers.

(a) A person shall not drive a commercial motor vehicle unless he/she is qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle. Except as provided in § 391.63, a motor carrier shall not require or permit a person to drive a commercial motor vehicle unless that person is qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle.

(b) Except as provided in subpart G of this part, a person is qualified to drive a motor vehicle if he/she—

(1) Is at least 21 years old;

(2) Can read and speak the English language sufficiently to converse with the general public, to understand highway traffic signs and signals in the English language, to respond to official inquiries, and to make entries on reports and records;

(3) Can, by reason of experience, training, or both, safely operate the type of commercial motor vehicle he/she drives;

(4) Is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle in accordance with subpart E—Physical Qualifications and Examinations of this part;

(5) Has a currently valid commercial motor vehicle operator's license issued only by one State or jurisdiction;

(6) Has prepared and furnished the motor carrier that employs him/her with the list of violations or the certificate as required by § 391.27;

(7) Is not disqualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle under the rules in § 391.15; and

(8) Has successfully completed a driver's road test and has been issued a certificate of driver's road test in accordance with § 391.31, or has presented an operator's license or a certificate of road test which the motor carrier that employs him/her has accepted as equivalent to a road test in accordance with § 391.33.

Citation: [35 FR 6460, Apr. 22, 1970, as amended at 35 FR 17420, Nov. 13, 1970; 35 FR 19181, Dec. 18, 1970; 36 FR 222, Jan. 7, 1971, 36 FR 24220, Dec. 22, 1971; 45 FR 46424, July 10, 1980; 52 FR 20589, June 1, 1987; 59 FR 60323, Nov. 23, 1994; 60 FR 38744, 38745, July 28, 1995; 63 FR 33276, June 18, 1998]

§ 391.41: Physical qualifications for drivers.

(a)(1)(i) A person subject to this part must not operate a commercial motor vehicle unless he or she is medically certified as physically qualified to do so, and, except as provided in paragraph (a)(2) of this section, when on-duty has on his or her person the original, or a copy, of a current medical examiner's certificate that he or she is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle. NOTE: Effective December 29, 1991, the FMCSA Administrator determined that the new Licencia Federal de Conductor issued by the United Mexican States is recognized as proof of medical fitness to drive a CMV. The United States and Canada entered into a Reciprocity Agreement, effective March 30, 1999, recognizing that a Canadian commercial driver's license is proof of medical fitness to drive a CMV. Therefore, Canadian and Mexican CMV drivers are not required to have in their possession a medical examiner's certificate if the driver has been issued, and possesses, a valid commercial driver license issued by the United Mexican States, or a Canadian Province or Territory and whose license and medical status, including any waiver or exemption, can be electronically verified. Drivers from any of the countries who have received a medical authorization that deviates from the mutually accepted compatible medical standards of the resident country are not qualified to drive a CMV in the other countries. For example, Canadian drivers who do not meet the medical fitness provisions of the Canadian National Safety Code for Motor Carriers, but are issued a waiver by one of the Canadian Provinces or Territories, are not qualified to drive a CMV in the United States. In addition, U.S. drivers who received a medical variance from FMCSA are not qualified to drive a CMV in Canada.
(ii) A person who qualifies for the medical examiner's certificate by virtue exemption letter or a skill performance evaluation certificate, must have on his or her person a copy of the variance documentation when on-duty.

(2) CDL exception. (i) Beginning January 30, 2014, a driver required to have a commercial driver's license under part 383 of this chapter, and who submitted a current medical examiner's certificate to the State in accordance with § 383.71(h) of this chapter documenting that he or she meets the physical qualification requirements of this part, no longer needs to carry on his or her person the medical examiner's certificate specified at § 391.43(h), or a copy for more than 15 days after the date it was issued as valid proof of medical certification.
(ii) A CDL holder required by § 383.71(h) to obtain a medical examiner's certificate, who obtained such by virtue of having obtained a medical variance from FMCSA, must continue to have in his or her possession the original or copy of that medical variance documentation at all times when on-duty.

(3) A person is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle if:
(i) That person meets the physical qualification standards in paragraph (b) of this section and has complied with the medical examination requirements in § 391.43; or
(ii) That person obtained from FMCSA a medical variance from the physical qualification standards in paragraph (b) of this section and has complied with the medical examination requirement in § 391.43.

(b) A person is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle if that person—

(1) Has no loss of a foot, a leg, a hand, or an arm, or has been granted a skill performance evaluation certificate pursuant to § 391.49;

(2) Has no impairment of:
(i) A hand or finger which interferes with prehension or power grasping; or
(ii) An arm, foot, or leg which interferes with the ability to perform normal tasks associated with operating a commercial motor vehicle; or any other significant limb defect or limitation which interferes with the ability to perform normal tasks associated with operating a commercial motor vehicle; or has been granted a skill performance evaluation certificate pursuant to § 391.49.

(3) Has no established medical history or clinical diagnosis of diabetes mellitus currently requiring insulin for control;

(4) Has no current clinical diagnosis of myocardial infarction, angina pectoris, coronary insufficiency, thrombosis, or any other cardiovascular disease of a variety known to be accompanied by syncope, dyspnea, collapse, or congestive cardiac failure;

(5) Has no established medical history or clinical diagnosis of a respiratory dysfunction likely to interfere with his/her ability to control and drive a commercial motor vehicle safely;

(6) Has no current clinical diagnosis of high blood pressure likely to interfere with his/her ability to operate a commercial motor vehicle safely;

(7) Has no established medical history or clinical diagnosis of rheumatic, arthritic, orthopedic, muscular, neuromuscular, or vascular disease which interferes with his/her ability to control and operate a commercial motor vehicle safely;

(8) Has no established medical history or clinical diagnosis of epilepsy or any other condition which is likely to cause loss of consciousness or any loss of ability to control a commercial motor vehicle;

(9) Has no mental, nervous, organic, or functional disease or psychiatric disorder likely to interfere with his/her ability to drive a commercial motor vehicle safely;

(10) Has distant visual acuity of at least 20/40 (Snellen) in each eye without corrective lenses or visual acuity separately corrected to 20/40

least 20/40 (Snellen) in both eyes with or without corrective lenses, field of vision of at least 70° in the horizontal Meridian in each eye, and the ability to recognize the colors of traffic signals and devices showing standard red, green, and amber;

(11) First perceives a forced whispered voice in the better ear at not less than 5 feet with or without the use of a hearing aid or, if tested by use of an audiometric device, does not have an average hearing loss in the better ear greater than 40 decibels at 500 Hz, 1,000 Hz, and 2,000 Hz with or without a hearing aid when the audiometric device is calibrated to American National Standard (formerly ASA Standard) Z24.5—1951.

(12)(i) Does not use any drug or substance identified in 21 CFR 1308.11 Schedule I, an amphetamine, a narcotic, or other habit-forming drug.
(ii) Does not use any non-Schedule I drug or substance that is identified in the other Schedules in 21 part 1308 except when the use is prescribed by a licensed medical practitioner, as defined in § 382.107, who is familiar with the driver's medical history and has advised the driver that the substance will not adversely affect the driver's ability to safely operate a commercial motor vehicle.

(13) Has no current clinical diagnosis of alcoholism.

Citation: [35 FR 6460, Apr. 22, 1970, as amended at 35 FR 17420, Nov. 13, 1970; 36 FR 223, Jan. 7, 1971; 36 FR 12857, July 8, 1971; 43 FR 56900, Dec. 5, 1978; 55 FR 3554, Feb. 1, 1990; 60 FR 38744, July 28, 1995; 62 FR 37152, July 11, 1997; 65 FR 59369, Oct. 5, 2000; 67 FR 61824, Oct. 2, 2002; 73 FR 73127, Dec. 1, 2008, 75 FR 28502, May 21, 2010; 76 FR 70663, Nov. 15, 2011; 77 FR 4483, Jan. 30, 2012]

§383.45 Persons who must be medically examined and certified.

Except as provided in §391.67, the following persons must be medically examined and certified in accordance with §391.43 as physically qualified to operate a commercial motor vehicle:

(a) Any person who has not been medically examined and certified as physically qualified to operate a commercial motor vehicle;

(b)(1) Any driver who has not been medically examined and certified as qualified to operate a commercial motor vehicle during the preceding 24 months; or

(b)(2) Any driver authorized to operate a commercial motor vehicle only with an exempt intracity zone pursuant to §391.62, or only by operation of the exemption in §391.64, if such driver has not been medically examined and certified as qualified to drive in such zone during the preceding 12 months; and

(c) Any driver whose ability to perform his/her normal duties has been impaired by a physical or mental injury or disease.

Citation: [35 FR 6460, Apr. 22, 1970, as amended at 36 FR 223, Jan. 7, 1971; 54 FR 12202, Mar. 24, 1989; 61 FR 13347, Mar. 26, 1996]

Table 1 to §383.51

If a driver operates a motor vehicle and is convicted of:	For a first conviction or refusal to be tested while operating a CMV, a person required to have a CLP or CDL and a CLP or CDL holder must be disqualified from operating a CMV for	For a first conviction or refusal to be tested while operating a non-CMV, a CLP or CDL holder must be disqualified from operating a CMV for	For a first conviction or refusal to be tested while operating a CMV transporting hazardous materials as defined in §383.5, a person required to have a CLP or CDL and a CLP or CDL holder must be disqualified from operating a CMV for	For a second conviction or refusal to be tested in a separate incident of any combination of offenses in this Table while operating a CMV, a person required to have a CLP or CDL and a CLP or CDL holder must be disqualified from operating a CMV for	For a second conviction or refusal to be tested in a separate incident of any combination of offenses in this Table while operating a non-CMV, a CLP or CDL holder must be disqualified from operating a CMV for
(1) Being under the influence of alcohol as prescribed by State law.	1 year	1 year	3 years	Life	Life
(2) Being under the influence of a controlled substance.	1 year	1 year	3 years	Life	Life
(3) Having an alcohol concentration of .04 percent or greater while operating a CMV.	1 year	Not applicable	3 years	Life	Not applicable
(4) Refusing to take an alcohol test as required by a State or jurisdiction under its implied consent laws or regulations as defined in §383.72 of this part.	1 year	1 year	3 years	Life	Life
(5) Leaving the scene of an accident.	1 year	1 year	3 years	Life	Life
(6) Using the vehicle to commit a felony other than a felony described in paragraph (b)(9) of this table.	1 year	1 year	3 years	Life	Life

(7) Driving a CMV when, as a result of prior violations committed operating a CMV, the driver's CLP or CDL is revoked, suspended, or canceled, or the driver is disqualified from operating a CMV	1 year	Not applicable	3 years	Life	Not applicable
(8) Causing a fatality through the negligent operation of a CMV, including but not limited to the crimes of motor vehicle manslaughter, homicide by motor vehicle and negligent homicide.	1 year	Not applicable	3 years	Life	Not applicable
(9) Using the vehicle in the commission of a felony involving manufacturing, distributing, or dispensing a controlled substance.	Life-not eligible for 10-year reinstatement	Life-not eligible for 10-year reinstatement	Life-not eligible for 10-year reinstatement	Life-not eligible for 10-year reinstatement	Life-not eligible for 10-year reinstatement

(c) **Disqualification for serious traffic violations**. Table 2 to §383.51 contains a list of the offenses and the periods for which a person who is required to have a CLP or CDL is disqualified, depending upon the type of vehicle the driver is operating at the time of the violation, as follows:

Table 2 to §383.51 If a driver operates a motor vehicle and is convicted of:	For a second conviction of any combination of offenses in this Table in a separate incident within a 3-year period while operating a CMV, a person required to have a CDL and a CDL holder must be disqualified from operating a CMV for:	For a second conviction of any combination of offenses in this Table in a separate incident within a 3-year period while operating a non-CMV, a CLP or CDL holder must be disqualified from operating a CMV, if the conviction results in the revocation, cancellation, or suspension of the CLP or CDL holder's license or non-CMV driving privileges, for:	For a third or subsequent conviction of any combination of offenses in this Table in a separate incident within a 3-year period while operating a CMV, a person required to have a CDL and a CDL holder must be disqualified from operating a CMV for:	For a third or subsequent conviction of any combination of offenses in this Table in a separate incident within a 3-year period while operating a non-CMV, a CLP or CDL holder must be disqualified from operating a CMV, if the conviction results in the revocation, cancellation, or suspension of the CLP or CDL holder's license or non-CMV driving privileges, for:
(1) Speeding excessively, involving any speed of 24.1 kmph (15 mph) or more above the regulated or posted speed limit.	60 days	60 days	120 days	120 days
(2) Driving recklessly, as defined by State or local law or regulation, including but not limited to, offenses of driving a motor vehicle in willful or wanton disregard for the safety of persons or property.	60 days	60 days	120 days	120 days
(3) Making improper or erratic traffic lane changes.	60 days	60 days	120 days	120 days
(4) Following the vehicle ahead too closely.	60 days	60 days	120 days	120 days
(5) Violating State or local law relating to motor vehicle traffic control (other than a parking violation) arising in connection with a fatal accident.	60 days	60 days	120 days	120 days
(6) Driving a CMV without obtaining a CDL.	60 days	Not applicable	120 days	Not applicable

(7) Driving a CMV without a CDL in the driver's possession.[1]	60 days	Not applicable	120 days	Not applicable
(8) Driving a CMV without the proper class of CDL and/or endorsements for the specific vehicle group being operated or for the passengers or type of cargo being transported.	60 days	Not applicable	120 days	Not applicable
(9) Violating a State or local law or ordinance on motor vehicle traffic control prohibiting texting while driving a CMV.2	60 days	Not applicable	120 days	Not applicable
(10) Violating a State or local law or ordinance on motor vehicle traffic control restricting or prohibiting the use of a hand-held mobile telephone while driving a CMV.2	60 days	Not applicable	120 days	Not applicable

[1]Any individual who provides proof to the enforcement authority that issued the citation, by the date the individual must appear in court or pay any fine for such a violation, that the individual held a valid CLP or CDL on the date the citation was issued, shall not be guilty of this offense.

[2]Driving, for the purpose of this disqualification, means operating a commercial motor vehicle on a highway, including while temporarily stationary because of traffic, a traffic control device, or other momentary delays. Driving does not include operating a commercial motor vehicle when the driver has moved the vehicle to the side of, or off, a highway and has halted in a location where the vehicle can safely remain stationary.

(d) **Disqualification for railroad-highway grade crossing offenses.** Table 3 to §383.51 contains a list of the offenses and the periods for which a person who is required to have a CLP or CDL is disqualified, when the driver is operating a CMV at the time of the violation, as follows:

Table 3 to §383.51

If the driver is convicted of operating a CMV in violation of a Federal, State or local law because:	For a first conviction a person required to have a CLP or CDL and a CLP or CDL holder must be disqualified from operating a CMV for:	For a second conviction of any combination of offenses in this Table in a separate incident within a 3-year period, a person required to have a CLP or CDL and a CLP or CDL holder must be disqualified from operating a CMV for :	For a third or subsequent conviction of any combination of offenses in this Table in a separate incident within a 3-year period, a person required to have a CLP or CDL and a CLP or CDL holder must be disqualified from operating a CMV for:
(1) The driver is not required to always stop, but fails to slow down and check that tracks are clear of an approaching train.	No less than 60 days	No less than 120 days	No less than 1 year.
(2) The driver is not required to always stop, but fails to stop before reaching the crossing, if the tracks are not clear.	No less than 60 days	No less than 120 days	No less than 1 year.
(3) The driver is always required to stop, but fails to stop before driving onto the crossing.	No less than 60 days	No less than 120 days	No less than 1 year.
(4) The driver fails to have sufficient space to drive completely through the crossing without stopping.	No less than 60 days	No less than 120 days	No less than 1 year.
(5) The driver fails to obey a traffic control device or the directions of an enforcement official at the crossing.	No less than 60 days	No less than 120 days	No less than 1 year.
(6) The driver fails to negotiate a crossing because of insufficient undercarriage clearance.	No less than 60 days	No less than 120 days	No less than 1 year.

(e) **Disqualification for violating out-of-service orders.** Table 4 to §383.51 contains a list of the offenses and periods for which a person who is required to have a CLP or CDL is disqualified when the driver is operating a CMV at the time of the violation, as follows:

Table 4 to § 383.51

If a driver operates a CMV and is convicted of:	For a first conviction while operating a CMV, a person required to have a CLP or CDL and a CLP or CDL holder must be disqualified from operating a CMV for :	For a second conviction in a separate incident within a 10-year period while operating a CMV, a person required to have a CLP or CDL and a CLP or CDL holder must be disqualified from operating a CMV for :	For a third or subsequent conviction in a separate incident within a 10-year period while operating a CMV, a person required to have a CLP or CDL and a CLP or CDL holder must be disqualified from operating a CMV for:
(1) Violating a driver or vehicle out-of-service order while transporting nonhazardous materials.	No less than 180 days or more than 1 year.	No less than 2 year or more than 5 years.	No less than 3 years or more than 5 years.
(2) Violating a driver or vehicle out-of-service order while transporting hazardous materials required to be placarded under part 172, subpart F of this title, or while operating a vehicle designed to transport 16 or more passengers, including the driver.	No less than 180 days or more than 2 years.	No less than 3 years or more than 5 years.	No less than 3 years or more than 5 years.

[67 FR 49756, July 31, 2002, as amended at 68 FR 4396, Jan. 29, 2003; 72 FR 36787, July 5, 2007; 75 FR 59134, Sept. 27, 2010; 76 FR 26879, May 9, 2011; 76 FR 75486, Dec. 2, 2011; 77 FR 59825, Oct. 1, 2012; 78 FR 58479, Sept. 24, 2013; 78 FR 60231, Oct. 1, 2013]

Highway-Rail Grade Crossings: 7 Steps for Safety

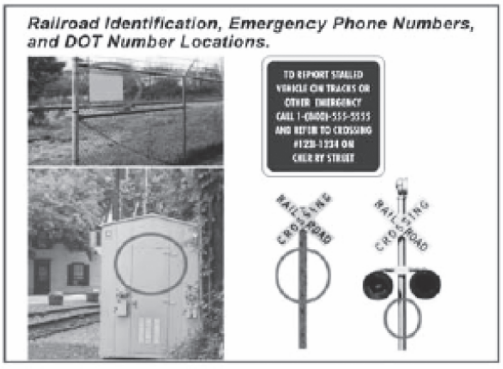
1. **Approach with care.**
   Warn others that you are slowing down. Turn on 4-way flashers. Use pull-out lane if available.
2. **Prepare to stop.**
   Turn off fans and radio and roll down windows. Locate your cell phone for use in emergency.
   Stop at least 15 feet, but not more than 50 feet, from nearest rail.
3. **Look and listen both ways, carefully.**
   Bend forward to see around mirrors and A-pillars.
4. **If it won't fit, don't commit.**
   Trains extend beyond the width of the rails at least 3 feet on each side. Remember your vehicle – and cargo – overhang.
5. **Look again.**
   Before you move, look again in both directions.
6. **Cross tracks with care.**
   Signal, watch for a safe gap, pull back onto the road if you used a pull-out lane.
   Use highest gear that will let you cross without shifting.
7. **Keep going once you start, even if lights start to flash or gates come down.**

www.fmcsa.dot.gov

U.S. Department of Transportation
Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration
Federal Railroad Administration
Federal Highway Administration
FMCSA–ESO–06–0014 October 2006

WHAT TO DO IF YOUR VEHICLE STALLS OR HANGS UP ON THE TRACKS

1. **GET OUT IMMEDIATELY.**
   Evacuate your vehicle. (Trains traveling at 60 mph may take a mile or more to stop.)
2. **Move away.**
   Walk **toward the oncoming train, and away from the tracks** at a 45-degree angle. (If your vehicle is hit, debris will spread out from the tracks in the same direction the train is moving.)
3. **Locate the emergency phone number.**
   When you are safely away from the tracks, find the railroad's emergency phone number and the DOT crossing identification number posted near the crossing. (See sample locations below.)



4. **Call for help!**
   Call the railroad's emergency phone number, the local police, or 911. **Tell them a vehicle is on the tracks.** Provide the location, crossing number (if posted), and the name of the road or highway that crosses the tracks.

Railroads' Emergency Phone Numbers

Amtrak: 1-800-331-0008
BNSF Railway: 1-800-832-5452
CSX: 1-800-232-0144
Canadian National: 1-800-465-9239
Canadian Pacific: 1-800-716-9132
Kansas City Southern: 1-877-527-9464 or 1-800-892-6295
Norfolk Southern: 1-800-453-2530
Union Pacific: 1-888-877-7267

Call the local police or 911 if you cannot locate the railroad emergency phone number at the site.

Hazardous Materials Warning Labels

Actual label size: 100 mm (3.9 inches) on all sides

CLASS 1 Explosives: Divisions 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5, 1.6

§172.411

* Include compatibility group letter.

** Include division number and compatibility group letter.

CLASS 2 Gases: Divisions 2.1, 2.2, 2.3

§172.415, §172.416, §172.417, §172.405(b)

CLASS 3 Flammable Liquid

§172.419

CLASS 4 Flammable Solid, Spontaneously Combustible, and Dangerous When Wet: Divisions 4.1, 4.2, 4.3

§172.420, §172.422, §172.423

CLASS 5 Oxidizer, Organic Peroxide: Divisions 5.1 and 5.2

§172.426, §172.427

CLASS 6 Poison (Toxic), Poison Inhalation Hazard, Infectious Substance: Divisions 6.1 and 6.2

Infectious Substance Label not required on an outer packaging, if the OSHA Biohazard Marking (29 CFR 1910.103(g)) is used. The CDC Etiologic Agent Label must be used as prescribed in 42 CFR 72.3 and 72.6.

§172.405(c), §172.429, §172.430, §172.432

CLASS 7 Radioactive

Empty Label

§172.436, §172.438, §172.440, §172.450

CLASS 8 Corrosive

§172.442

CLASS 9 Miscellaneous Hazardous Material

§172.446

Subsidiary Risk Label

§172.411

For Aircraft Only

Cargo Aircraft Only

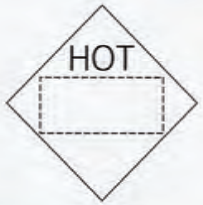
§172.448

HAZARDOUS MATERIALS MARKINGS

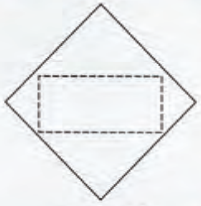
§173.25(a)(4)

§172.312(a)

§172.322



§172.325



§172.332(a)

Fumigant Marking

§172.302(g) and §173.9

§172.313(a)

§172.316(a)

§172.316(a)(1)

Keep a copy of the Emergency Response Guidebook handy!

Hazardous Materials Warning Placards

Actual placard size: 273 mm (10.8 inches) on all sides

CLASS 1 Explosives

§172.522, §172.523, §172.524, §172.525

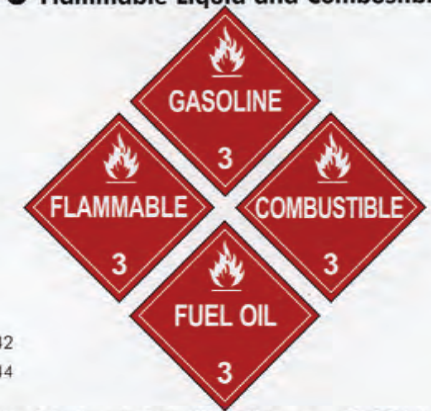
*Enter Division Number 1.1, 1.2, or 1.3, and compatibility group letter, when required; placard any quantity. For Divisions 1.4, 1.5, and 1.6, enter compatibility group letter, when required; placard 454 kg (1,001 lbs) or more.

CLASS 2 Gases

§172.528, §172.530, §172.532, §172.540

For NON-FLAMMABLE GAS, OXYGEN (compressed gas or refrigerated liquid), and FLAMMABLE GAS, placard 454 kg (1,001 lbs) or more gross weight. For POISON GAS (Division 2.3), placard any quantity.

CLASS 3 Flammable Liquid and Combustible Liquid



§172.542
§172.544

For FLAMMABLE, placard 454 kg (1,001 lbs) or more. GASOLINE may be used in place of FLAMMABLE placard displayed on a cargo tank or portable tank transporting gasoline by highway. Placard combustible liquid transported in bulk. See §172.504(f)(2) for use of FLAMMABLE placard in place of COMBUSTIBLE. FUEL OIL may be used in place of COMBUSTIBLE on a cargo or portable tank transporting fuel oil not classed as a flammable liquid by highway.

CLASS 4 Flammable Solid, Spontaneously Combustible, and Dangerous When Wet

§172.546, §172.547, §172.548

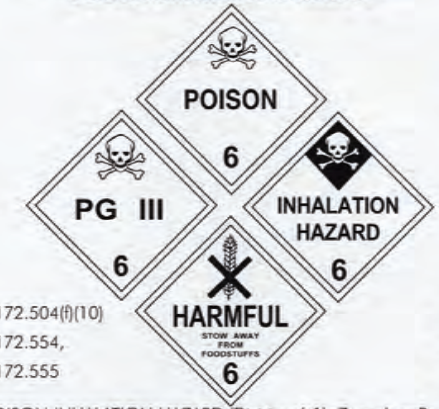
For FLAMMABLE SOLID and SPONTANEOUSLY COMBUSTIBLE, placard 454 kg (1,001 lbs) or more. For DANGEROUS WHEN WET (Division 4.3), placard any quantity.

CLASS 5 Oxidizer & Organic Peroxide

§172.550, §172.552

For OXIDIZER and ORGANIC PEROXIDE (other than TYPE B, temperature controlled), placard 454 kg (1,001 lbs) or more. For ORGANIC PEROXIDE (Division 5.2), Type B, temperature controlled, placard any quantity.

CLASS 6 Poison (Toxic) and Poison Inhalation Hazard



§172.504(f)(10) §172.554, §172.555

POISON-INHALATION HAZARD (Division 6.1), Zone A or B inhalation hazard only, placard any quantity. For POISON, (PGI or PGII, other than Zone A or B inhalation hazard only) and KEEP AWAY FROM FOOD (PGIII), placard 454 kg (1,001 lbs) or more. For Transition 2003, see §171.14(b)(3).

CLASS 7 Radioactive

§172.556

Placard any quantity - packages bearing RADIOACTIVE YELLOW-III labels only. Certain low specific activity radioactive materials in "exclusive use" will not bear the label, but the radioactive placard is required for exclusive use shipments of low specific activity material and surface contaminated objects transported in accordance with §173.427(b)(3) or (c).

CLASS 8 Corrosive

§172.558

Placard 454 kg (1,001 lbs) or more.

CLASS 9 Miscellaneous

§172.560

Not required for domestic transportation. A bulk packaging containing a Class 9 material must be marked with the appropriate ID number displayed on a Class 9 placard, an orange panel, or a white square-on-point display.

Dangerous

§172.521

A freight container, unit load device, transport vehicle, or rail car which contains non-bulk packagings with two or more categories of hazardous materials that require different placards specified in Table 2 may be placarded with DANGEROUS placards instead of the specific placards required for each of the materials in Table 2. However, when 1,000 kg (2,205 lbs) or more of one category of material is loaded at one loading facility, the placard specified in Table 2 must be applied.

§172.527

White square background required for placard for highway route controlled quantity radioactive material and for rail shipment of certain explosives and poisons, and for flammable gas in a DOT 113 tank car (§172.507 and §172.510).

PLACARDS OR ORANGE PANELS

§172.332

and

Appropriate placard must be used.

IDENTIFICATION NUMBER DISPLAYS

MUST BE DISPLAYED ON: (1) Tank Cars, Cargo Tanks, Portable Tanks, and other Bulk Packagings; (2) Vehicles or containers containing 4000 kg (8,820 lbs) in non-bulk packages of only a single hazardous material having the same proper shipping name and identification number; and (3) 1000 kg (2,205 lbs) of materials poisonous by inhalation in Hazard Zone A or B. See §172.301(a)(3) and §172.313(c).

Response begins with identification!